Pictorial index	Search by illustration
1 For safety and security	Make sure to read through them
2 Instrument cluster	How to read the gauges and meters, the variety of warning lights and indicators, etc.
3 Operation of each component	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving, etc.
4 Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving
5 Lexus Display Audio system	Operating the Lexus Display Audio system
6 Interior features	Usage of the interior features, etc.
7 Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures
8 When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction or emergency
9 Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features, etc.
Index	Search by symptom
	Search alphabetically

For your information 8
Reading this manual 10
How to search 11
Pictorial index 12

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 32
For safety drive 34
Seat belts 36
SRS airbags 40
Exhaust gas precautions 50

1-2. Child safety
Airbag manual on-off system 51
Riding with children 53
Child restraint systems 54

1-3. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 77
Double locking system 82
Alarm 83

2 Instrument cluster

2. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 90
Gauges and meters 95
Multi-information display 99
Head-up display 121
Fuel consumption information 127

3 Operation of each component

3-1. Key information
Keys 134

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors 140
Back door 146
Power back door 151
Smart entry & start system 168

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 185
Rear seats 186
Driving position memory 195
Head restraints 200

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 202
Inside rear view mirror 204
Outside rear view mirrors 206

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 210
Moon roof 214
Panoramic moon roof 218

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 226
Cargo and luggage 235
Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package) 237
Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package) 238

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch 245
Automatic transmission 250
Turn signal lever 256
Parking brake 257
Brake Hold 261

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 263
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 267
Automatic High Beam 272
Fog light switch 276
Windshield wipers and washer 277
Rear window wiper and washer 283

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 285

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System+ 289
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 298
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 311
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 322
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 331
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 336
Dynamic radar cruise control 348
Cruise control 360
Stop & Start system 364
Lexus parking assist-sensor 374
Lexus parking assist monitor 383
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 399
- BSM function 405
- RCTA function 409

Driving mode select switch 415
All-wheel drive lock switch 419
Driving assist systems 420

4-6. Driving tips

Winter driving tips 427
Utility vehicle precautions 431

5 Lexus Display Audio system

5-1. Basic Operations

Lexus Display Audio system 436

Steering wheel audio switches 442

USB/AUX ports 443

5-2. Setup

Setup menu 446

General settings 447

Voice settings 450

Display settings 451

5-3. Using the audio system

Selecting the audio source 453

Optimal use of the audio system 454

Audio settings 455

Audio menu screen operation 459

5-4. Using the radio

Radio operation 462

5-5. Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA/AAC discs

CD player operation 464

5-6. Using an external device

Listening to an iPod 470

Using USB memory device 474

Using the AUX port 479

5-7. Connecting Bluetooth®

Steps for using Bluetooth® devices 480

Registering a Bluetooth® device 482

Selecting a Bluetooth® device 483

Connecting a Bluetooth® audio player 484

Connecting a Bluetooth® phone 485

Displaying a Bluetooth® device details 486

Detailed Bluetooth® settings 487

5-8. Bluetooth® Audio

Listening to Bluetooth® Audio 488

5-9. Bluetooth® Phone
Using a Bluetooth® Phone 490
Making a call 492
Receiving a call 495
Speaking on the phone 496
Using a Bluetooth® phone messages 498
Using the steering wheel switches 501
Bluetooth® phone settings 502
5-10. Phonebook
Contact settings 504
Messaging setting 507
5-11. Bluetooth®
What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 508
Bluetooth® 511
5-12. Other function
"Information" screen 517
MirrorLink™ 518
USB photo 522
Speech command system 524

6 Interior features

6-1. Basic operation of the Remote Touch screen
Remote Touch 528
12.3-inch display 531
6-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
Lexus Climate Concierge 533
Automatic air conditioning system 534
Heated steering wheel/ seat heaters/ seat ventilators 547
6-3. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list 550
• Interior lights 551
• Personal lights 552
6-4. Using the storage features
List of storage features 554
• Glove box 555
• Console box 555
• Cup holders 556
• Door pockets 557
• Bottle holders 558
• Coin box 558
• Auxiliary boxes 559
Luggage compartment features 560

6-5. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 565
- Sun visors.....565
- Vanity mirrors 565
- Clock.....566
- Wireless charger 566
- Power outlets 572
- Front passenger footwell hooks 573
- Rear door sunshades.....574
- Armrest 574
- Assist grips..... 575
- Coat hooks 575

7 Maintenance and care

7-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior.....578

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 583

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements..... 586

7-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions..... 589

Hood 591

Positioning a floor jack 592

Engine compartment 593

Tires.....606

Tire inflation pressure..... 623

Wheels 625

Air conditioning filter..... 627

Windshield wiper inserts..... 630

Electronic key battery 632

Checking and replacing fuses 634

Light bulbs..... 637

8 When trouble arises

8-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers..... 650

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 651

8-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 652
If you think something is wrong 658
Fuel pump shut off system 659
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 660
If a warning message is displayed 667
If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire) 673
If you have a flat tire (vehicles without a spare tire) 687
If the engine will not start 701
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 703
If the electronic key does not operate properly 704
If the vehicle battery is discharged 708
If your vehicle overheats 712
If the vehicle becomes stuck 716

9 Vehicle specifications

9-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 720
Fuel information 733

9-2. Customization

Customizable features 734

9-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 746

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 748
Alphabetical index 752

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Audio/visual system
- Lexus parking assist monitor
- Panoramic view monitor

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

Both genuine Lexus and a wide variety of other spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Should it be determined that any of the genuine Lexus parts or accessories supplied with the vehicle need to be replaced, Lexus recommends that genuine Lexus parts or accessories, be used to replace them. Other parts or accessories of matching quality can also be used.

Lexus cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine Lexus spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- Vehicle dynamics integrated management
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional before you scrap your vehicle.



Your vehicle contains batteries and/or accumulators. Do not discard them into the environment but cooperate with separate collection (Directive 2006/66/EC).

⚠ WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof or panoramic moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Reading this manual

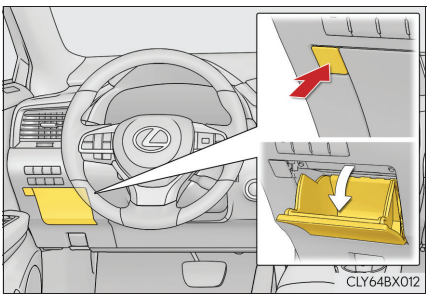
WARNING:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.

NOTICE:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.

1 2 3 ... Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

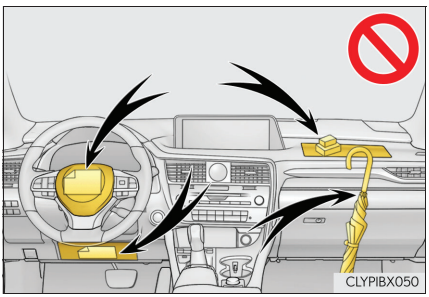
Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).



Indicates the component or position being explained.

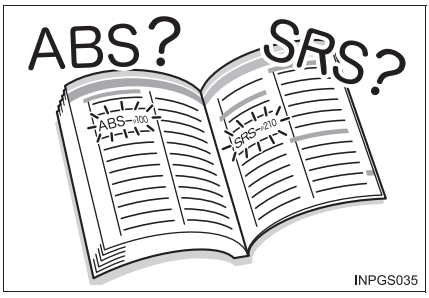
Means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



How to search

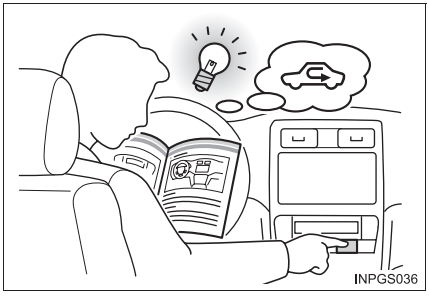
Searching by name

• Alphabetical index ..... P. 752



Searching by installation position

• Pictorial index ..... P. 12



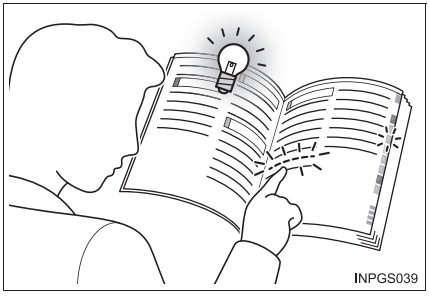
Searching by symptom or sound

• What to do if... (Troubleshooting) ..... P. 748



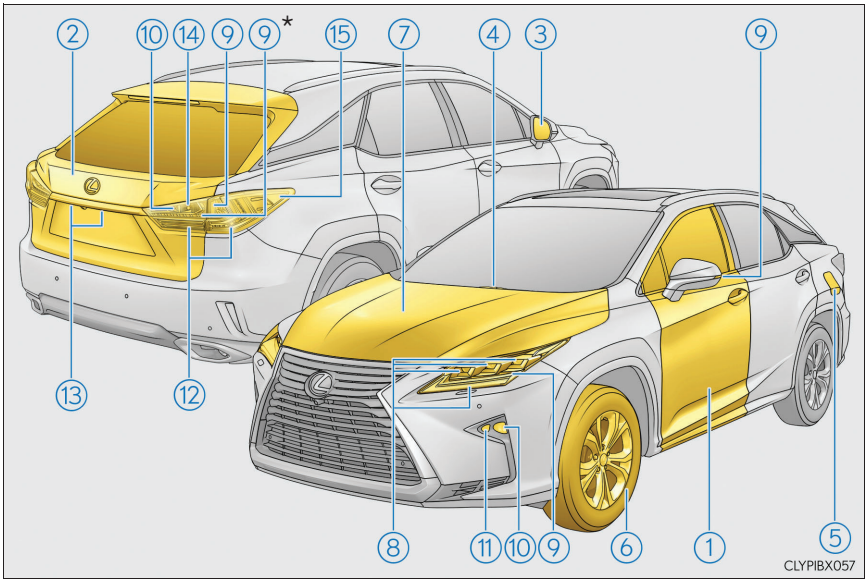
Searching by title

• Table of contents ..... P. 2



Pictorial index

Exterior



The shape of the lights may differ depending on the grade, etc. (→P. 638)

① **Side doors** ..... **P. 140**
Locking/unlocking ..... P. 140
Opening/closing the side windows ..... P. 210
Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key ..... P. 704

② **Back door** ..... **P. 146, 151**
Opening from inside the cabin* ..... P. 152
Opening from outside ..... P. 146, 152

③ **Outside rear view mirrors** ..... **P. 206**
Adjusting the mirror angle ..... P. 206
Folding the mirrors ..... P. 207
Driving position memory* ..... P. 195
Defogging the mirrors ..... P. 540

④ **Windshield wipers** ..... **P. 277**
Precautions against winter season ..... P. 427
To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer)* ..... P. 541
Precautions against car wash ..... P. 580

⑤ **Fuel filler door** ..... **P. 285**
Refueling method ..... P. 287
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity ..... P. 723

⑥ **Tires** ..... **P. 606**
Tire size/inflation pressure ..... P. 731
Winter tires/tire chain ..... P. 427
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system ..... P. 606
Coping with flat tires ..... P. 673, 687

⑦ **Hood** ..... **P. 591**
Opening ..... P. 591
Engine oil ..... P. 723
Coping with overheat ..... P. 712

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P. 637, Watts: P. 732)

⑧ **Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights** ..... **P. 263**

⑨ **Turn signal lights** ..... **P. 256**

⑩ **Front fog lights/rear fog lights** ..... **P. 276**

⑪ **Cornering lights*** ..... **P. 264**

⑫ **Stop/tail lights** ..... **P. 263**
Emergency brake signal ..... P. 421

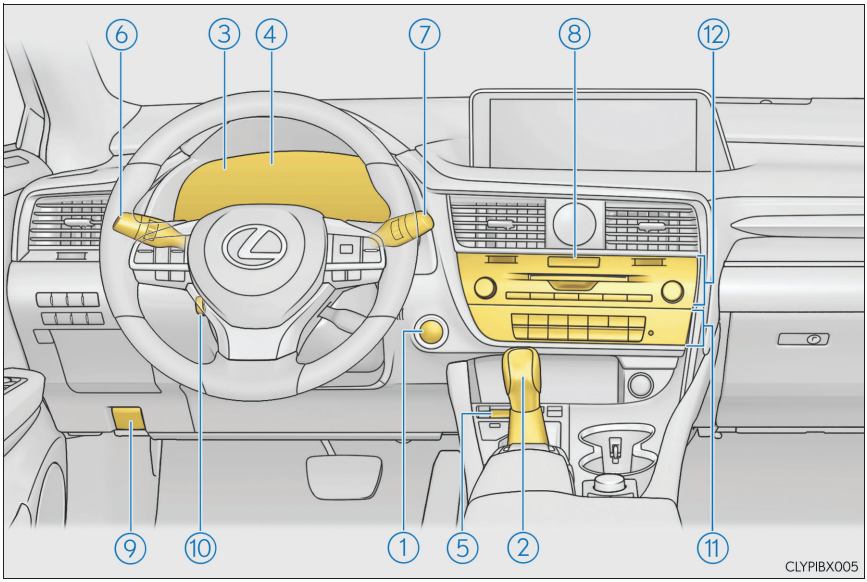
⑬ **License plate lights** ..... **P. 263**

⑭ **Back-up lights**
Shifting the shift lever to R ..... P. 250

⑮ **Rear side marker lights** ..... **P. 263**

*: If equipped

Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)



① **Engine switch** ..... **P. 245**
Starting the engine/changing the modes ..... P. 245
Emergency stop of the engine ..... P. 651
When the engine will not start ..... P. 701

② **Shift lever** ..... **P. 250**
Changing the shift position ..... P. 250
Precautions against towing ..... P. 652
When the shift lever does not move ..... P. 703

③ **Meters** ..... **P. 95**
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel light ..... P. 95, 97
Warning lights/indicator lights ..... P. 90
When the warning lights come on ..... P. 660

④ **Multi-information display** ..... **P. 99**
Display ..... P. 99
When the warning messages are displayed ..... P. 667

⑤ **Parking brake switch** ..... **P. 257**
Applying/releasing ..... P. 257, 258
Precautions against winter season ..... P. 428
Warning buzzer/message ..... P. 259, 667

⑥ **Turn signal lever** ..... **P. 256**
Headlight switch ..... **P. 263**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/rear side marker lights/ license plate lights/daytime running lights ..... P. 263
Front fog lights/rear fog lights ..... P. 276

⑦ **Windshield wiper and washer switch** ..... **P. 277, 283**
Usage ..... P. 277, 283
Adding washer fluid ..... P. 605

⑧ **Emergency flasher switch** ..... **P. 650**

⑨ **Hood lock release lever** ..... **P. 591**

⑩ **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch** ..... **P. 202**
Adjustment ..... P. 202
Driving position memory*1 ..... P. 195

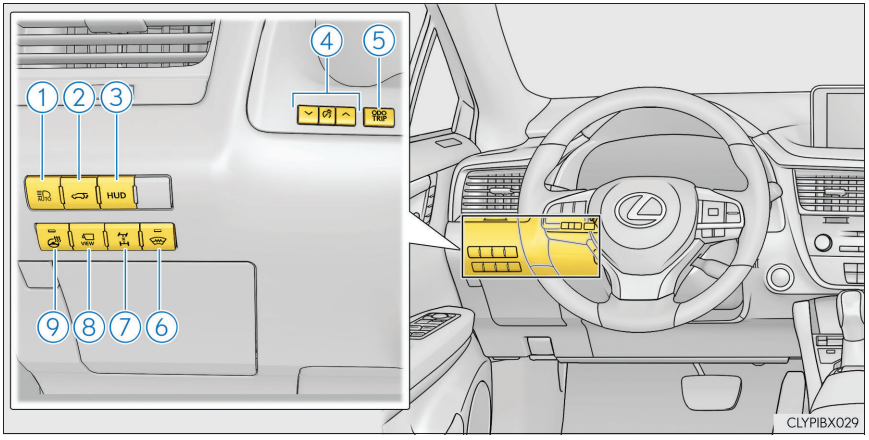
⑪ **Air conditioning system** ..... **P. 534**
Usage ..... P. 534
Rear window defogger ..... P. 540

⑫ **Audio system*2**
Audio system ..... P. 436
Hands-free system ..... P. 490

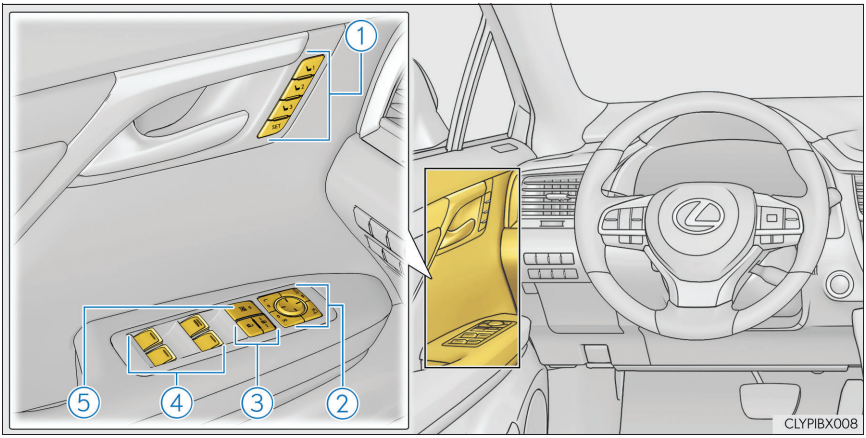
*1: If equipped

*2: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Switches (Left-hand drive vehicles)

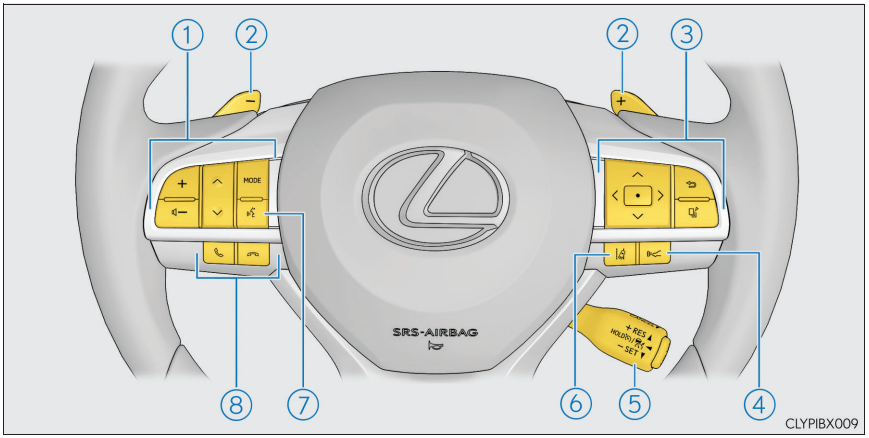


① Adaptive High-beam System switch*1 ..... P. 267
Automatic High Beam switch*1 ..... P. 272
② Power back door switch*1 ..... P. 152
③ HUD (Head-up display) switch*1 ..... P. 121
④ Instrument panel light control switches ..... P. 97
⑤ "ODO/TRIP" switch ..... P. 102
⑥ Heated Windshield Defroster switch*1 ..... P. 541
⑦ All-wheel drive lock switch*1 ..... P. 419
⑧ Camera switch*1, 2
⑨ Heated steering wheel switch*1 ..... P. 548



① Driving position memory switches*1 ..... P. 195
② Outside rear view mirror switches ..... P. 206
③ Door lock switches ..... P. 142
④ Power window switches ..... P. 210
⑤ Window lock switch ..... P. 210

*1: If equipped
*2: Refer to "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".



① Audio remote control switches*1 ..... P. 442, 501

② Paddle shift switches*2 ..... P. 251, 252

③ Meter control switches ..... P. 101

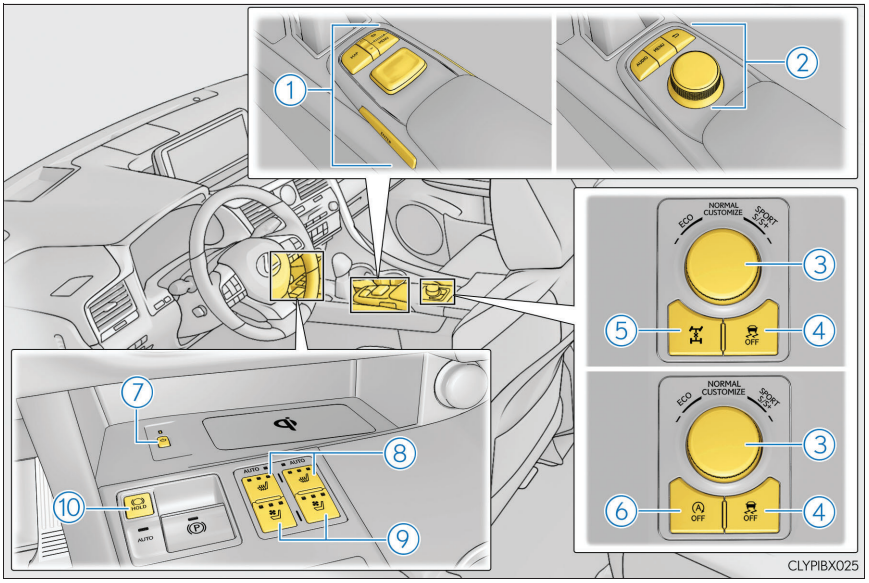
④ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button*2 ..... P. 342, 354

⑤ Cruise control switch
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*2 ..... P. 336
Dynamic radar cruise control*2 ..... P. 348
Cruise control*2 ..... P. 360

⑥ LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch*2 ..... P. 311
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch*2 ..... P. 322

⑦ Talk switch*1 ..... P. 501, 524

⑧ Telephone switches*1 ..... P. 501

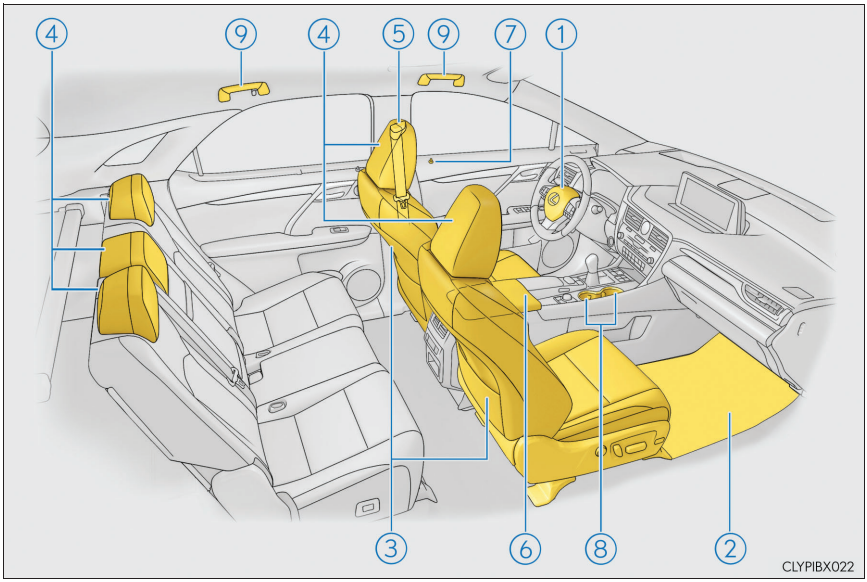


① Remote Touch*1, 2 ..... P. 528
② Lexus Display Audio controller*2 ..... P. 438
③ Driving mode select switch ..... P. 415
④ VSC OFF switch ..... P. 422
⑤ All-wheel drive lock switch*2 ..... P. 419
⑥ Stop & Start cancel switch*2 ..... P. 364
⑦ Wireless charger switch*2 ..... P. 566
⑧ Front seat heater switches*2 ..... P. 548
⑨ Seat ventilator switches*2 ..... P. 549
⑩ Brake hold switch ..... P. 261

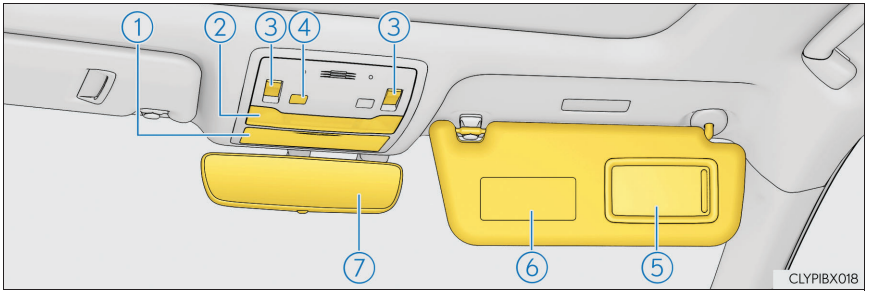
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

*2: If equipped

Interior (Left-hand drive vehicles)



① SRS airbags.....P. 40
② Floor mats .....P. 32
③ Front seats .....P. 185
④ Head restraints .....P. 200
⑤ Seat belts .....P. 36
⑥ Console box ..... P. 555
⑦ Inside lock buttons.....P. 142
⑧ Cup holders ..... P. 556
⑨ Assist grips..... P. 575



① Auxiliary box ..... P. 559

② Interior light*1 ..... P. 551
Personal lights*1 ..... P. 552

③ Moon roof switches*2 ..... P. 214
Panoramic moon roof switches*2 ..... P. 218

④ Intrusion sensor cancel switch*2 ..... P. 85
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch*2 ..... P. 85

⑤ Vanity mirrors ..... P. 565

⑥ Sun visors*3 ..... P. 565

⑦ Inside rear view mirror ..... P. 204

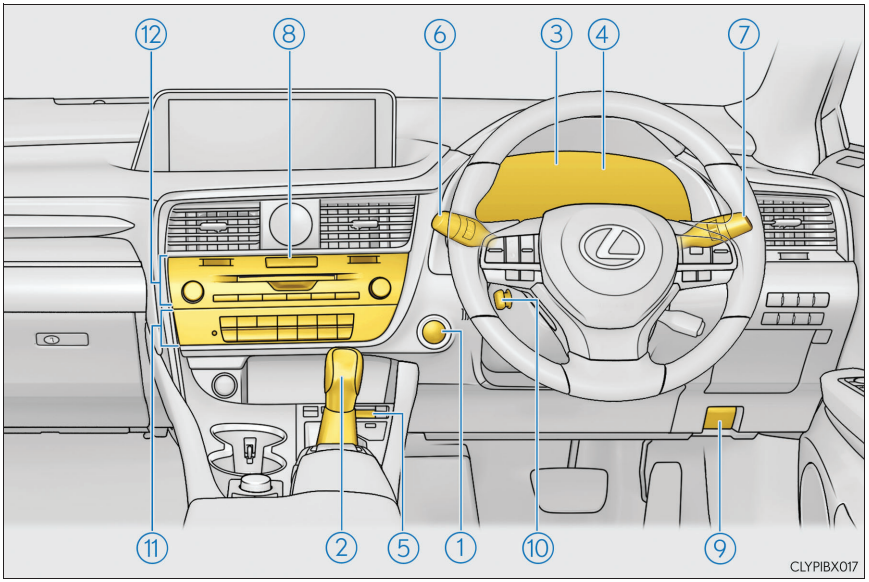
*1: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

*2: If equipped

*3: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 60)



Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)



① **Engine switch** ..... **P. 245**
Starting the engine/changing the modes ..... P. 245
Emergency stop of the engine ..... P. 651
When the engine will not start ..... P. 701

② **Shift lever** ..... **P. 250**
Changing the shift position ..... P. 250
Precautions against towing ..... P. 652
When the shift lever does not move ..... P. 703

③ **Meters** ..... **P. 95**
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel light ..... P. 95, 97
Warning lights/indicator lights ..... P. 90
When the warning lights come on ..... P. 660

④ **Multi-information display** ..... **P. 99**
Display ..... P. 99
When the warning messages are displayed ..... P. 667

⑤ **Parking brake switch** ..... **P. 257**
Applying/releasing ..... P. 257, 258
Precautions against winter season ..... P. 428
Warning buzzer/message ..... P. 259, 667

⑥ **Turn signal lever** ..... **P. 256**
Headlight switch ..... **P. 263**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/rear side marker lights/ license plate lights/daytime running lights ..... P. 263
Front fog lights/rear fog lights ..... P. 276

⑦ **Windshield wiper and washer switch** ..... **P. 277, 283**
Usage ..... P. 277, 283
Adding washer fluid ..... P. 605

⑧ **Emergency flasher switch** ..... **P. 650**

⑨ **Hood lock release lever** ..... **P. 591**

⑩ **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch** ..... **P. 202**
Adjustment ..... P. 202
Driving position memory*1 ..... P. 195

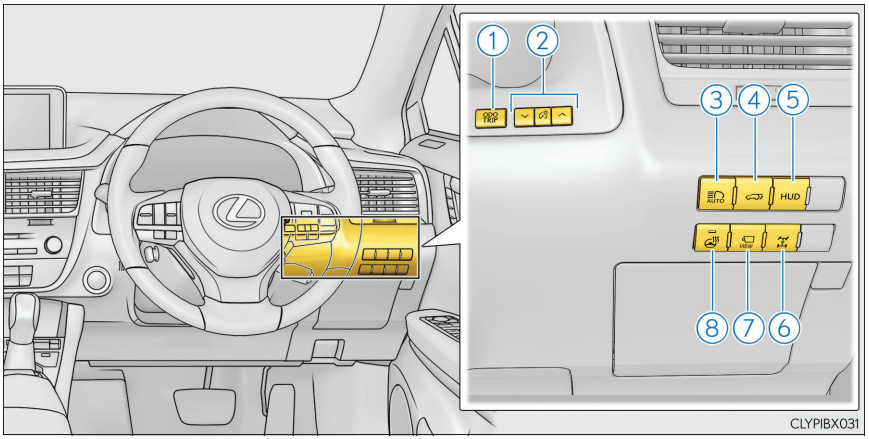
⑪ **Air conditioning system** ..... **P. 534**
Usage ..... P. 534
Rear window defogger ..... P. 540

⑫ **Audio system***2
Audio system ..... P. 436
Hands-free system ..... P. 490

*1: If equipped

*2: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Switches (Right-hand drive vehicles)



① "ODO/TRIP" switch ..... P. 102

② Instrument panel light control switches..... P. 97

③ Adaptive High-beam System switch*1 ..... P. 267
Automatic High Beam switch*1 ..... P. 272

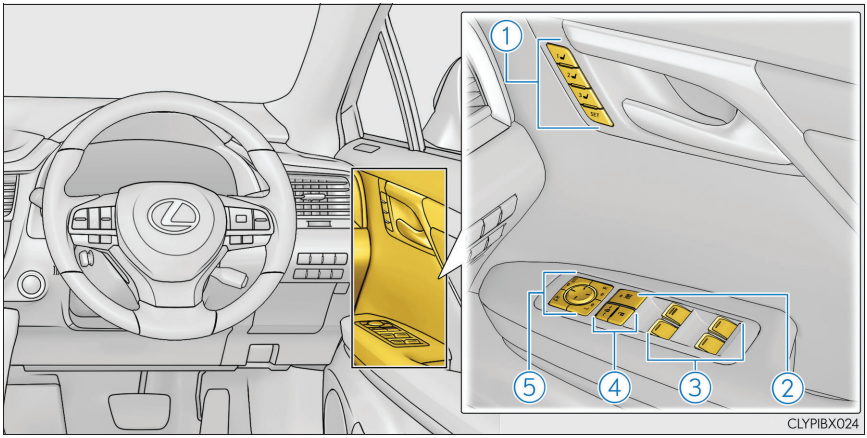
④ Power back door switch*1 ..... P. 152

⑤ HUD (Head-up display) switch*1 ..... P. 121

⑥ All-wheel drive lock switch*1 ..... P. 419

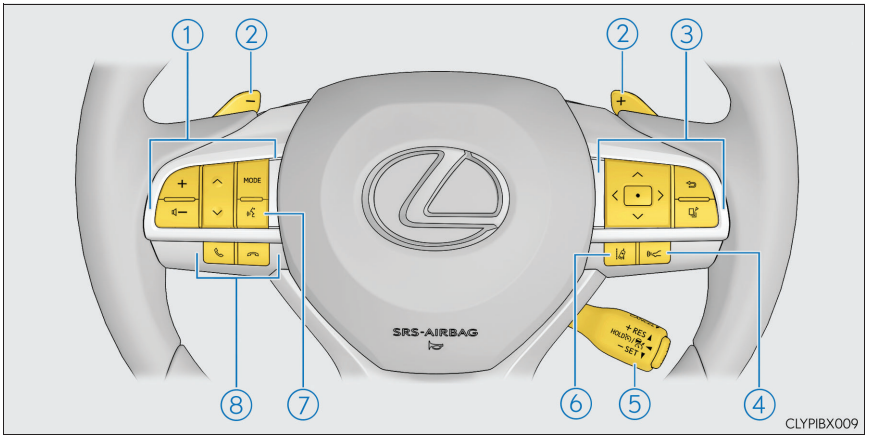
⑦ Camera switch*1, 2

⑧ Heated steering wheel switch*1 ..... P. 548



① Driving position memory switches*1 ..... P. 195
② Window lock switch ..... P. 210
③ Power window switches ..... P. 210
④ Door lock switches ..... P. 142
⑤ Outside rear view mirror switches ..... P. 206

*1: If equipped
*2: Refer to "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".



① Audio remote control switches*1 ..... P. 442, 501

② Paddle shift switches*2 ..... P. 251, 252

③ Meter control switches. ..... P. 101

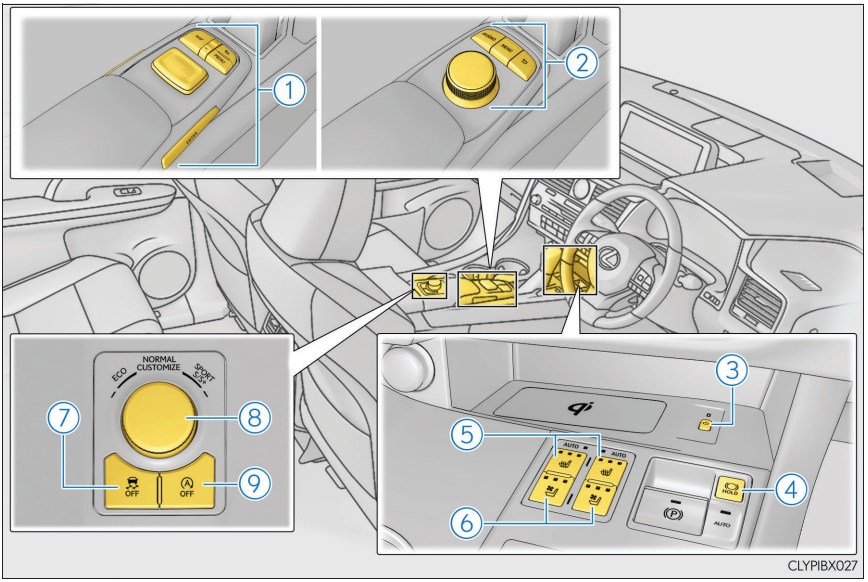
④ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button*2 ..... P. 342, 354

⑤ Cruise control switch
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*2 ..... P. 336
Cruise control*2 ..... P. 360

⑥ LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch*2 ..... P. 311

⑦ Talk switch*1 ..... P. 501, 524

⑧ Telephone switches*1 ..... P. 501

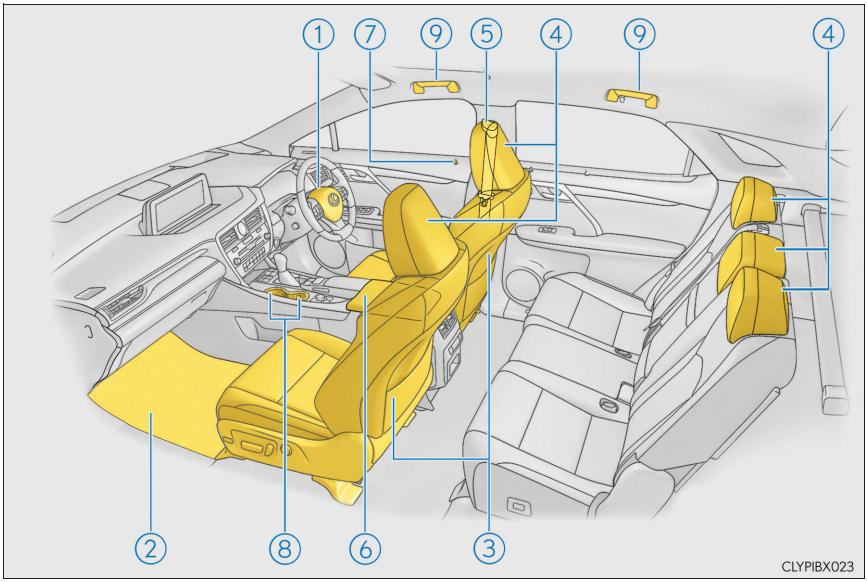


① Remote Touch*1, 2 ..... P. 528
② Lexus Display Audio controller*2 ..... P. 438
③ Wireless charger switch*2 ..... P. 566
④ Brake hold switch ..... P. 261
⑤ Front seat heater switches*2 ..... P. 548
⑥ Seat ventilator switches*2 ..... P. 549
⑦ VSC OFF switch ..... P. 422
⑧ Driving mode select switch ..... P. 415
⑨ Stop & Start cancel switch ..... P. 364

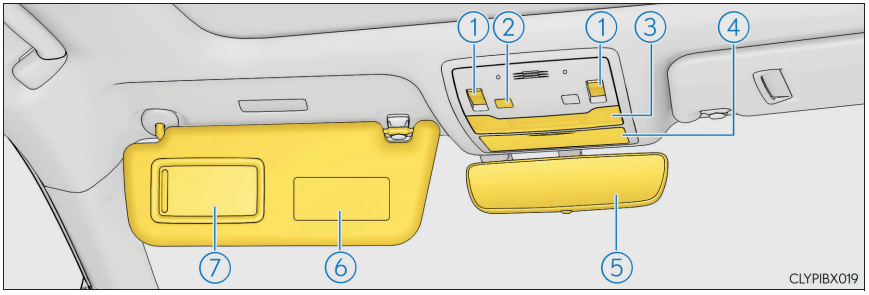
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

*2: If equipped

Interior (Right-hand drive vehicles)



① SRS airbags.....P. 40
② Floor mats .....P. 32
③ Front seats .....P. 185
④ Head restraints .....P. 200
⑤ Seat belts .....P. 36
⑥ Console box ..... P. 555
⑦ Inside lock buttons.....P. 142
⑧ Cup holders ..... P. 556
⑨ Assist grips..... P. 575



① Moon roof switches*1 ..... P. 214
Panoramic moon roof switches*1 ..... P. 218
② Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch ..... P. 85
③ Interior light*2 ..... P. 551
Personal lights*2 ..... P. 552
④ Auxiliary box ..... P. 559
⑤ Inside rear view mirror ..... P. 204
⑥ Sun visors*3 ..... P. 565
⑦ Vanity mirrors ..... P. 565

*1: If equipped

*2: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

*3: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 60)



For safety and security 1

1-1. For safe use

Before driving 32
For safety drive 34
Seat belts 36
SRS airbags 40
Exhaust gas precautions 50

1-2. Child safety

Airbag manual on-off system 51
Riding with children 53
Child restraint systems 54

1-3. Theft deterrent system

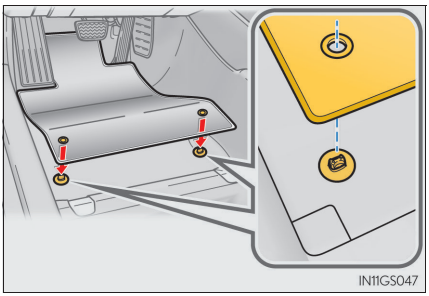
Engine immobilizer system 77
Double locking system 82
Alarm 83

Before driving

Floor mat

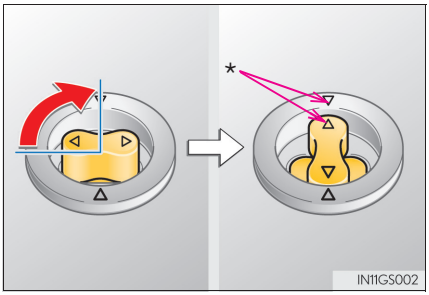
Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the △ marks.



The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

WARNING

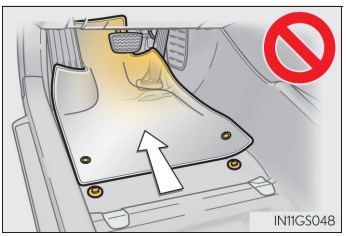
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

Before driving

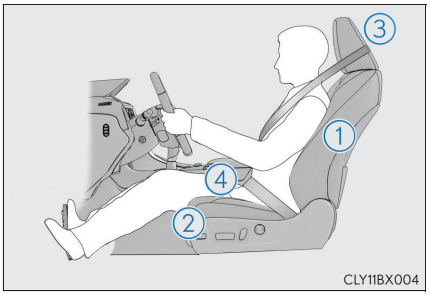
- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.



For safety drive

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



① Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P. 185)

② Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P. 185)

③ Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 200)

④ Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 36)

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P. 36)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 54)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P. 204, 206)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

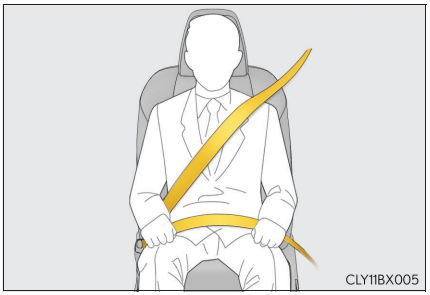
- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts

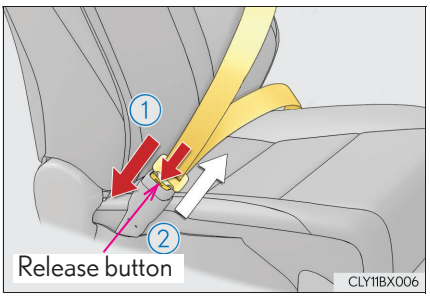
- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.



Fastening and releasing the seat belt

① To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

② To release the seat belt, press the release button.

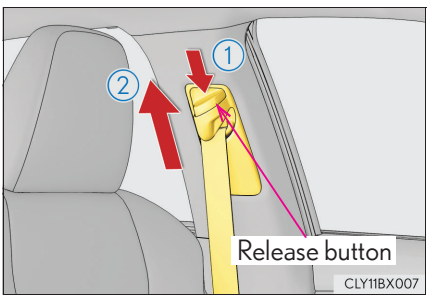


Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

① Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.

② Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

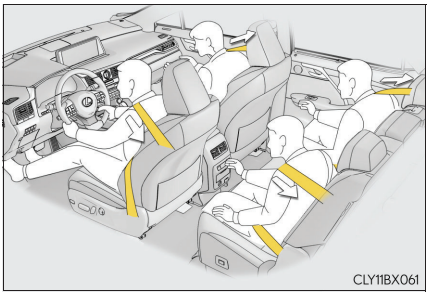
Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.



Seat belt pretensioners (front and outboard rear seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.



Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 54)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P. 36)

Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for seat belt replacement or installation.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

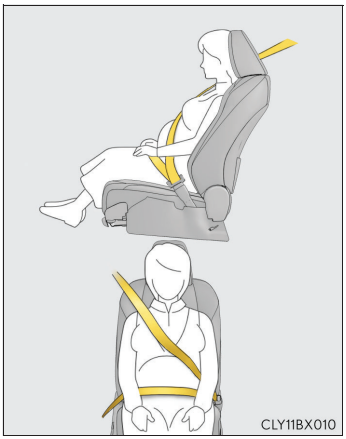
- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 36)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.



■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 36)

⚠ WARNING

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

→P. 68

■ **Seat belt pretensioners**

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Adjustable shoulder anchor**

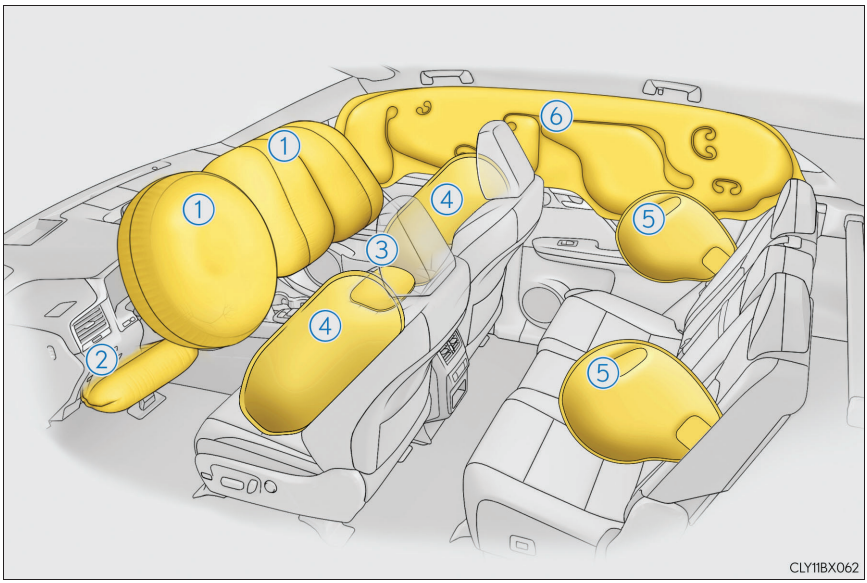
Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 36)

■ **Seat belt damage and wear**

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there's no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



SRS front airbags

① SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

② SRS knee airbag
Can help provide driver protection

③ SRS seat cushion airbag
Can help restrain the front passenger

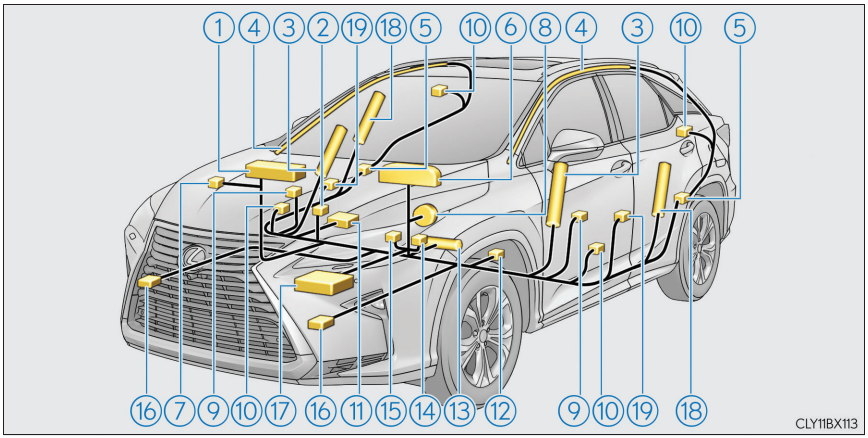
SRS side and curtain shield airbags

④ SRS front side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

⑤ SRS rear side airbags
Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear outer seats

⑥ SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

SRS airbag system components



① Front passenger airbag
② "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator
③ Front side airbags
④ Curtain shield airbags
⑤ Side impact sensors (rear)
⑥ SRS warning light
⑦ Airbag manual on-off switch
⑧ Driver airbag
⑨ Side impact sensors (front door)
⑩ Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
⑪ Passenger seat cushion airbag
⑫ Driver's seat position sensor
⑬ Driver's knee airbag
⑭ Driver's seat belt buckle switch
⑮ Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
⑯ Front impact sensors
⑰ Airbag sensor assembly
⑱ Rear side airbags
⑲ Side impact sensors (front)

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

⚠ WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.

  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

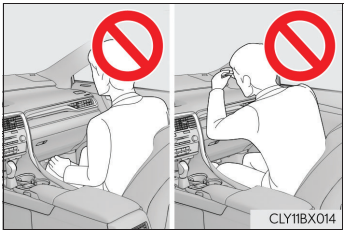
  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 54)

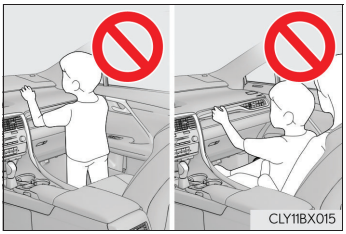
WARNING

SRS airbag precautions

- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



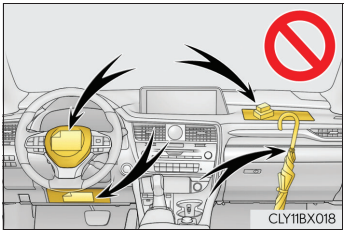
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



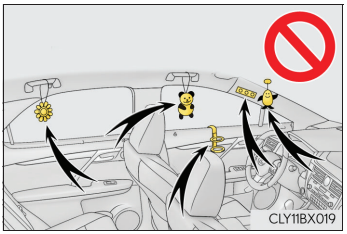
WARNING

SRS airbag precautions

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side windows, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip. (Except for the speed limit sticker →P. 693)



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the areas around the SRS airbag components or the front doors.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.

WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars, roof side rails, front door panels, front door trims, or front door speakers
- Modifications to the front door panel (such as making a hole in it)
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.
- The SRS seat cushion airbag on the front passenger seat will not operate if the occupant is not wearing a seat belt.

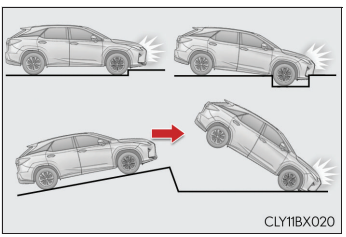
SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags and SRS side and curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

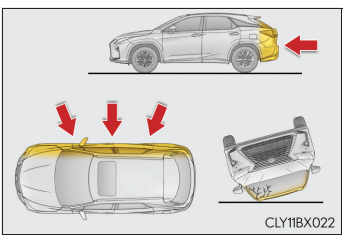
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

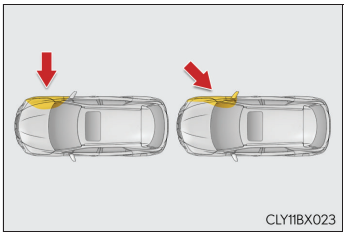
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

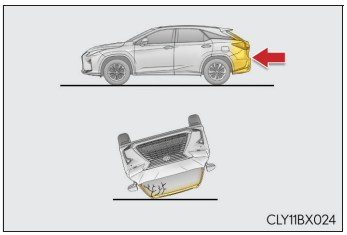
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle


CLY11BX023

The SRS side and curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

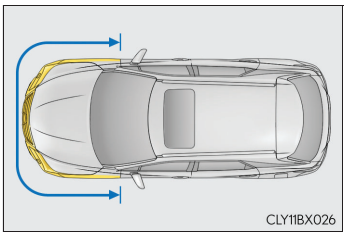
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover


CLY11BX024

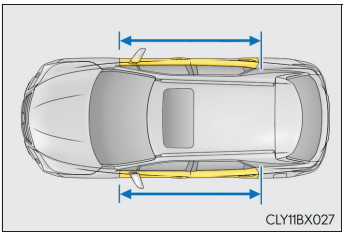
When to contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

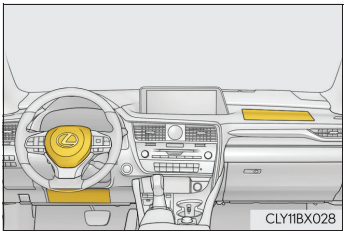
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.


CLY11BX026

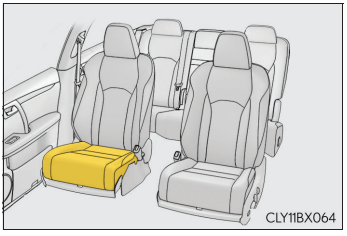
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged, deformed or has had a hole made in it, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.


CLY11BX027

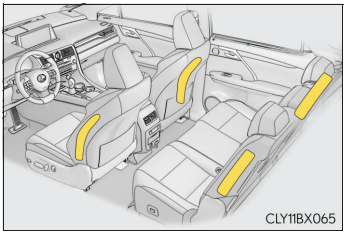
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CLY11BX028

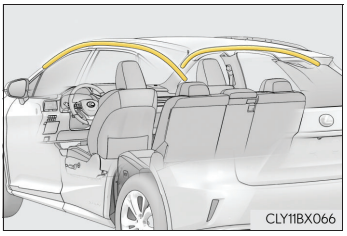
- The front passenger's seat cushion surface is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CLY11BX064

- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CLY11BX065

- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CLY11BX066

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is contained in exhaust gases if inhaled.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gases contain harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ **Important points while driving**

- Keep the back door closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the back door is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **When parking**

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing.
  If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ **Exhaust pipe**

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

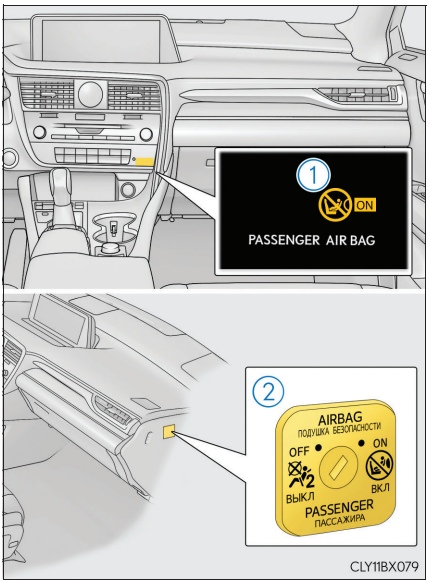
Airbag manual on-off system

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag and seat cushion airbag. Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

① "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

The "ON" indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

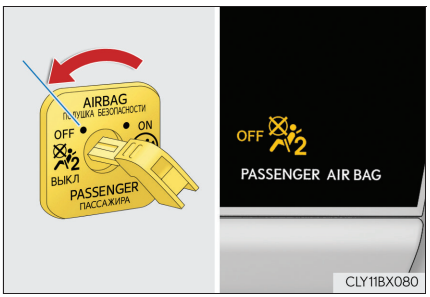
② Airbag manual on-off switch



Deactivating the airbags for the front passenger

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and rotate to the "OFF" position.

The "OFF" indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



■ **"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information**

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Neither "ON" nor "OFF" comes on.
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

⚠ WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to "OFF".
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

■ **When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat**

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to "ON".
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally. (→P. 143, 210)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, back door, seats etc.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof or panoramic moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

- Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.
- The use of a Lexus genuine child restraint system is recommended, as it is safer to use in this vehicle. Lexus genuine child restraint systems are made specifically for Lexus vehicles. They can be purchased at a Lexus dealer.

Table of contents

Points to remember ..... P. 54
Child restraint system ..... P. 56
When using a child restraint system ..... P. 59
Child restraint system installation method
- Fixed with a seat belt ..... P. 62
- Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor ..... P. 69
- Using an anchor bracket (for top strap) ..... P. 75

Points to remember

- Prioritize and observe the warnings, as well as the laws and regulations for child restraint systems.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles.
  Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions. (→P. 63, 70)

⚠ WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P. 62, 69) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment.

Child restraint system

Install the available child restraint system in vehicle upon confirming the following items.

■ Standards for child restraint systems

Use a child restraint system that conforms to ECE R44*1 or ECE R129*1, 2.

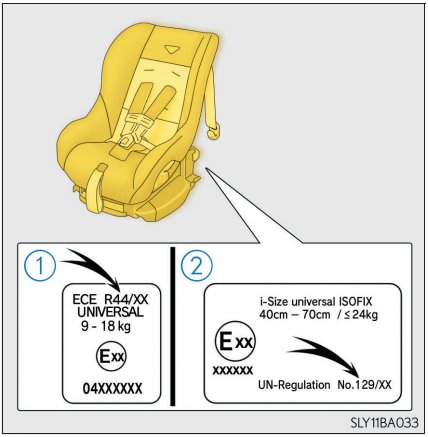
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.

Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.

Example of the displayed regulation number

① ECE R44 approval mark*3
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an ECE R44 approval mark is indicated.

② ECE R129 approval mark*3
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an ECE R129 approval mark is indicated.



*1: ECE R44 and ECE R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Mass group (ECE R44 only)

This Mass group table is required when confirming the child restraint system compatibility. Confirm in accordance with the child restraint system compatibility table. (→P. 63, 70)

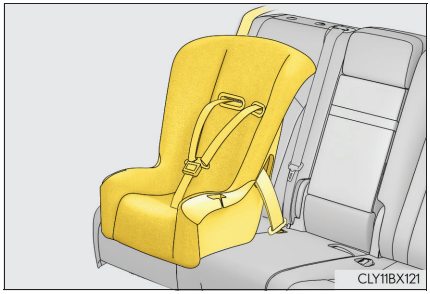
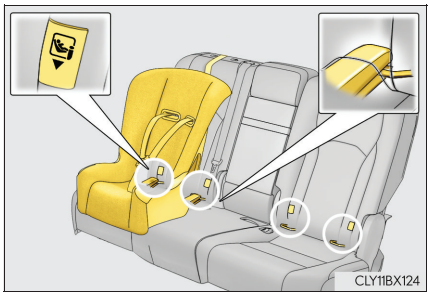
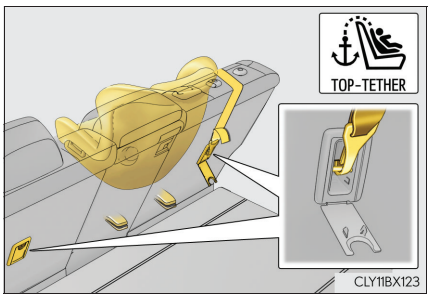
The child restraint system which conforms to the standard of ECE R44 is categorized into 5 groups according to the weight of the child.

Mass group	Child weight	Reference age*
Group 0	until 10 kg (22 lb.)	about 9 months
Group 0+	until 13 kg (28 lb.)	about 1.5 years
Group I	9 - 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	from 9 months - about 4 years
Group II	15 - 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.)	from 3 years - about 7 years
Group III	22 - 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.)	from 6 years - about 12 years

*: The age range is a standard approximation. Choose according to the weight of the child.

Types of child restraint system installation methods

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

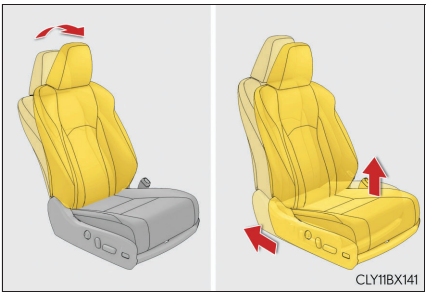
Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment	 CLY11BX121	P. 62
ISOFIX rigid anchor attachment	 CLY11BX124	P. 69
Anchor brackets (for top strap) attachment	 CLY11BX123	P. 75

When using a child restraint system

When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint systems to a rear seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Raise the seatback as much as possible
- Move the seat to the rearmost position
- Raise the seat to the highest position
- If the head restraint interferes with the installation of the child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint



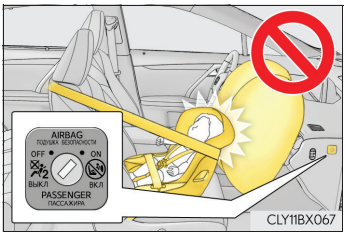
If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

WARNING

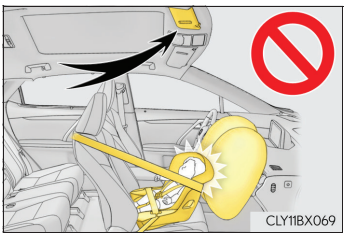
When using a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 51)
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat.
  Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.

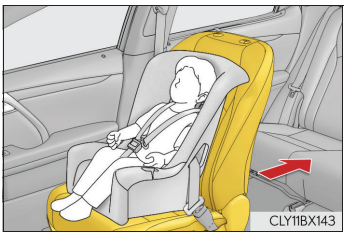




WARNING

When using a child restraint system

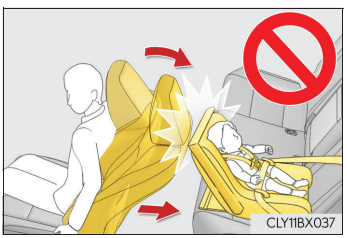
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles). (→P. 65, 72)



Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

◆ Confirming the possible installation seating positions and the Mass Group for the seat belt installation type child restraint systems.

1 Confirm the corresponding [Mass group] from the weight of the child (→P. 57)

(Ex. 1) When the weight is 12 kg (27 lb.), [Mass group 0+]

(Ex. 2) When the weight is 15 kg (34 lb.), [Mass group I]

2 Confirm and select the appropriate possible seating position for the child restraint system and the corresponding type of system from the [Child restraint system suitability table]. (→P. 63)

Child restraint system suitability table (Installed using seat belts)

If your child restraint system is of "universal" category, you can install it on the positions mentioned by U or UF in the table below (UF is for forward-facing child restraint systems only). Child restraint systems category and mass group can be found in the child restraint system manual.
If your child restraint system is not of the "universal" category (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

▶ Except F SPORT models

Mass groups	Seating position				Recommended Child Restraint Systems
	Front passenger seat		Rear seat		
	Airbag manual on-off switch		Out-board	Center	
	ON	OFF			
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)	X	U*1 L*1	U L	X	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS" "LEXUS MINI" "LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIX-ATION, BASE PLATFORM"
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)	X	U*1 L*1	U L	X	
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	Rear-ward-facing – X Forward-facing – UF*1, 2	U*1, 2	U*2	X	–
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.)	UF*1, 2	U*1, 2	U*2	X	"LEXUS KIDFIX XP SICT" (Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.)

▶ F SPORT models

Mass groups	Seating position				Recommended Child Restraint Systems
	Front passenger seat		Rear seat		
	Airbag manual on-off switch		Out-board	Center	
	ON	OFF			
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)	X	U*1 L*1	U L	X	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS" "LEXUS MINI" "LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM"
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)	X	U*1 L*1	U L	X	
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	Rear-ward-facing – X Forward-facing – UF*1, 2	U*1, 2	U*2	X	–
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.)	UF*1, 2	U*1, 2	U*2	X	–

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

X: Not suitable seat position for children in this mass group.

U: Suitable for "universal" category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for "specific vehicles", "restricted", or "semi-universal", category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

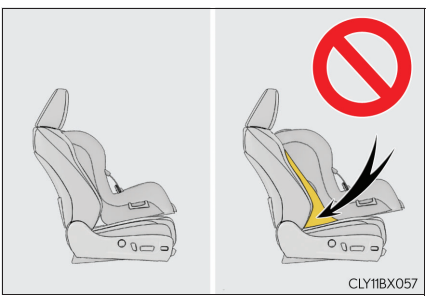
*1: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

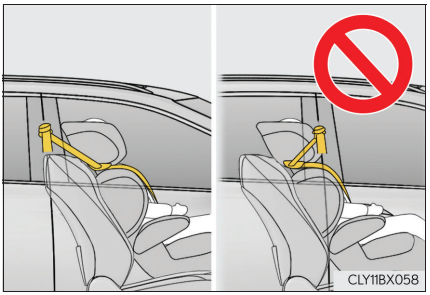
When securing some types of child restraint systems in second row seats, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the EU area.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.
- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Adjust the seat

▶ When using the front passenger seat

If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P. 59 for the front passenger seat adjustment.

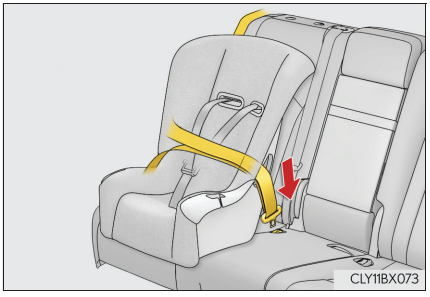
▶ When using the rear seat

Adjust the seatback angle to the most uplight position.

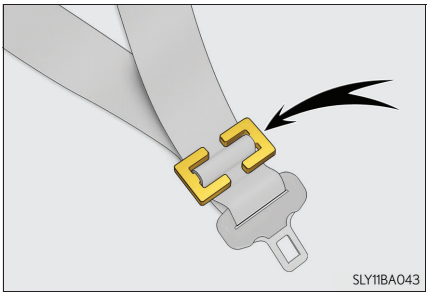
2 Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system. (→P. 200)

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

3 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



4 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P. 68)

◆ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional: Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

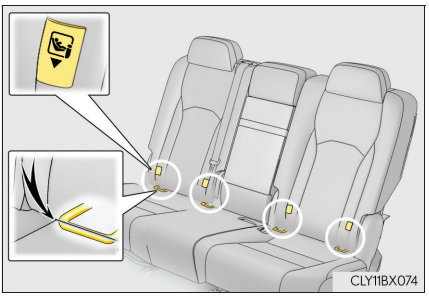
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
  If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor

ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Tags displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



Confirming the Mass group and Size class for ECE R44 ISOFIX corresponding child restraint systems

1 Confirm the corresponding [Mass group] from the weight of the child (→P. 57)

(Ex. 1) When the weight is 12 kg (27 lb.), [Mass group 0+]

(Ex. 2) When the weight is 15 kg (34 lb.), [Mass group I]

2 Confirming Size class

Select the Size class corresponding to [Mass group] confirmed in step 1 from the [Child restraint system suitability table] (→P. 70)*.

(Ex. 1) When [Mass group 0+], the corresponding size class is [C], [D], [E].

(Ex. 2) When [Mass group I], the corresponding size class is [A], [B], [B1], [C], [D].

*: However, listings that are marked with [X] cannot be selected, despite having the corresponding size class in the suitability table of the [Seating position]. Also, select the product designated by [Recommended Child Restraint Systems] (→P. 70), if the listing is marked with [IL].

Child restraint system suitability table (Installed using ISOFIX [Child restraint system conforms with ECE R44])

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided in different “size class”. According to this “size class”, you will be allowed to use it in the vehicle seating position mentioned in the table below. To know your child restraint system “size class” and “mass group”, please refer to the child restraint system manual. If your child restraint system has no “size class” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Size class	Description
A	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
B	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B1	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
C	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
D	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
E	Rearward-facing infant seat
F	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
G	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

Mass groups	Size class	Seating position			Recommended Child Restraint Systems
		Front seat	Rear seat		
		Passenger seat	Outboard	Center	
Carrycot	F	X	X	X	–
	G	X	X	X	
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)	E	X	IL	X	"LEXUS MINI" "LEXUS MIDI"
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)	E	X	IL	X	
	D	X	IL	X	
	C	X	IL	X	
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	D	X	IL	X	–
	C	X	IL	X	
	B	X	IUF* IL*	X	"LEXUS MIDI"
	B1	X	IUF* IL*	X	"LEXUS DUO+" "LEXUS MIDI"
	A	X	IUF* IL*	X	"LEXUS MIDI"

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

X: Not suitable seat position for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or size class.

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of "universal" category approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of the categories for "specific vehicles", "restricted", or "semi-universal", approved for use in this mass group.

*: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

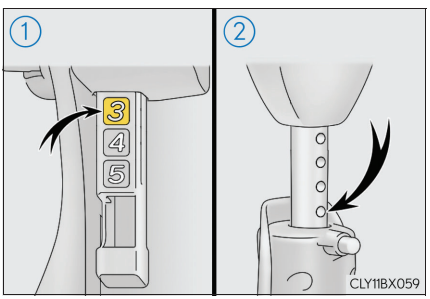
When securing some types of child restraint systems in second row seats, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the EU area.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When using a "LEXUS MINI" or "LEXUS MIDI" adjust the support leg and ISOFIX connectors as follows:

① Lock the ISOFIX connectors where number 3 can be seen.

② Lock the support leg where 4 holes can be seen.



■ **Child restraint system suitability table**
(Installed using i-Size [Child restraint system conforms with ECE R129])

If your child restraint system is of "i-Size" category, you can install it on the positions mentioned by i-U in the table below. Child restraint system category can be found in the child restraint system manual.

	Seating position		
	Front seat	Rear seat	
	Passenger seat	Outboard	Center
i-Size child restraint systems	X	i-U*	X

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

X: Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" child restraint systems forward and rearward facing.

*: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in second row seats, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.

Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Adjust the seat

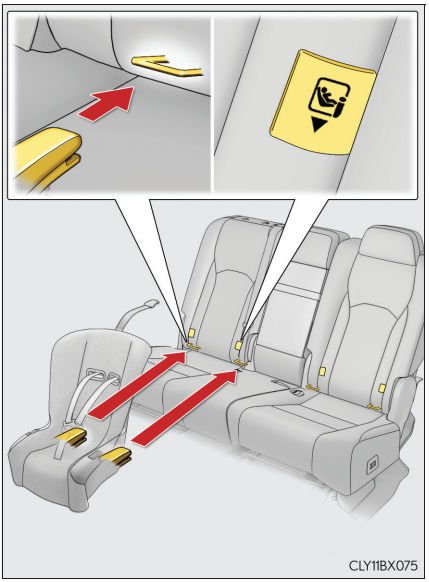
Adjust the seatback angle to the most uplight position.

2 Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system. (→P. 200)

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

3 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



4 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P. 68)

WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

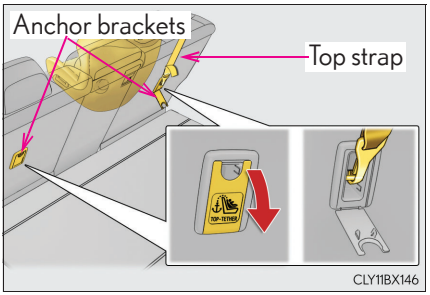
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Using an anchor bracket (for top strap)

Anchor brackets (for top strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for the outboard rear seat.

Use anchor brackets when fixing the top strap.



Fixing the top strap to the anchor bracket

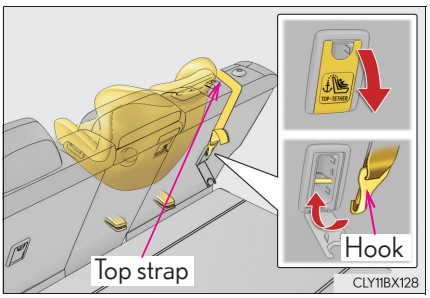
Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system. (→P. 200)

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

2 Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P. 68)
When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the top strap pass underneath the head restraint.



WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the anchor bracket.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, after the head restraint has been raised and then the anchor bracket has been fixed, do not lower the head restraint.

NOTICE

Anchor brackets (for top strap)

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

Engine immobilizer system

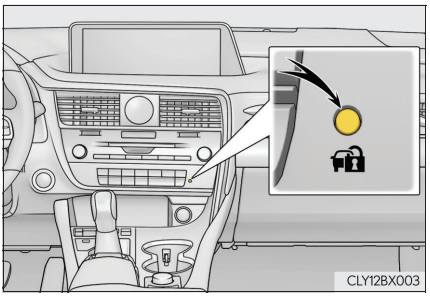
The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key registered to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

Certification for the engine immobilizer system

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: TMIMB-3
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: February 25, 2013

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMIMB-3 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMIMB-3 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMIMB-3 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMIMB-3 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMIMB-3 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMIMB-3 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMIMB-3 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMIMB-3 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMIMB-3 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMIMB-3 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMIMB-3 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMIMB-3 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMIMB-3 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMIMB-3 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMIMB-3 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMIMB-3 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMIMB-3 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMIMB-3 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMIMB-3 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMIMB-3 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMIMB-3 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMIMB-3 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMIMB-3 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMIMB-3 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMIMB-3 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMIMB-3 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMIMB-3 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMIMB-3 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile Toyota Motor Corporation, bu TMIMB-3 ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

NOTICE

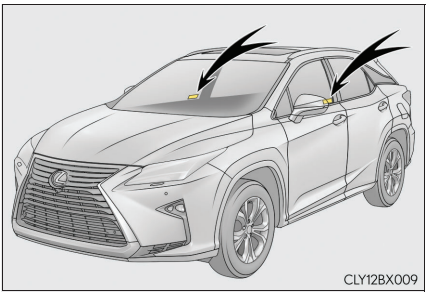
■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Double locking system

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the side window of both front doors.



Setting the double locking system

Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

Using the entry function:
Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.
Using the wireless remote control:
Press twice within 5 seconds.

Canceling the double locking system

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle, press the back door opener button or hold your hand over the rear emblem (vehicles with a touchless power back door).
Using the wireless remote control: Press .

WARNING

■ Double locking system precaution

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

Alarm*

The alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

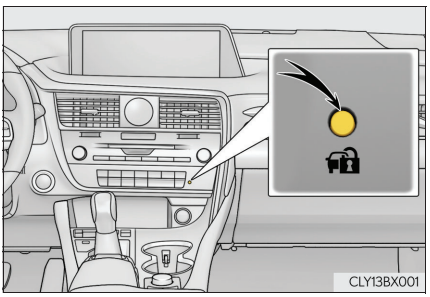
The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination. (if equipped)
- Any of the windows are broken.

Setting the alarm system

Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

*: If equipped

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

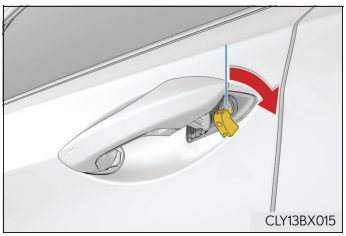
To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof or panoramic moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

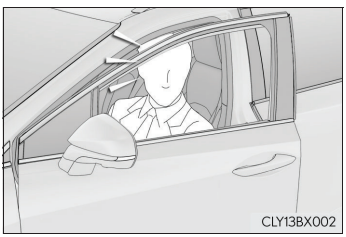
Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

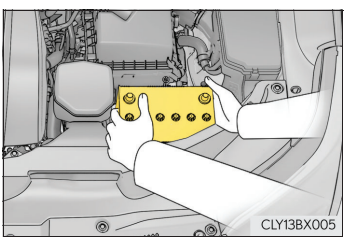
- The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood, or unlocks the vehicle.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P. 710)



Alarm-operated door lock

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.
- When recharging or replacing the battery

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor (if equipped) /Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (if equipped)

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P. 83)

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

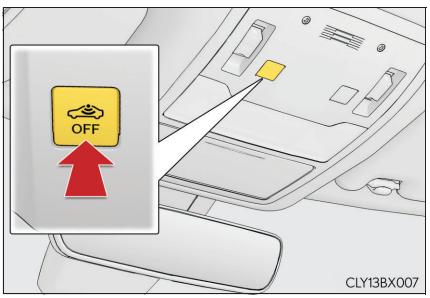
If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will revert to on each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



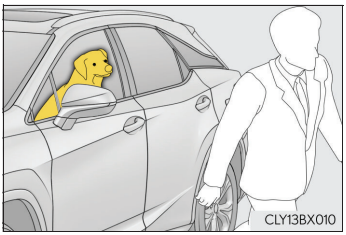
■ **Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor**

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is reactivated.

■ **Intrusion sensor detection considerations**

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

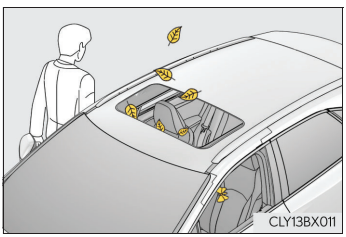
- People or pets are in the vehicle.



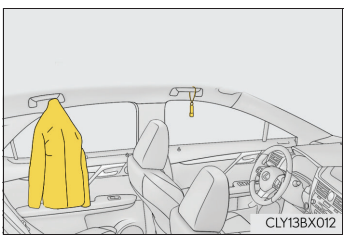
- A window or moon roof, panoramic moon roof is open.

  In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

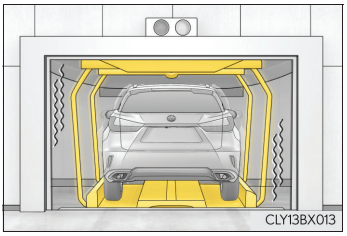
  - Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
  - Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
  - The movement of people outside the vehicle



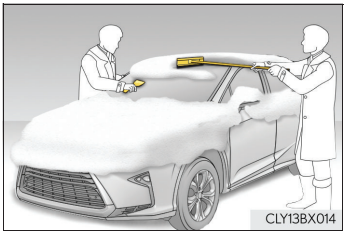
- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.



- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

■ **Tilt sensor detection considerations (if equipped)**

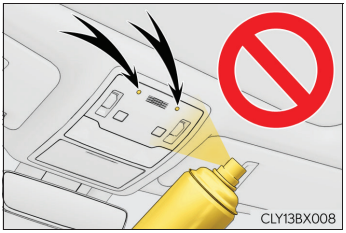
The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.
- Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from the roof luggage carrier.

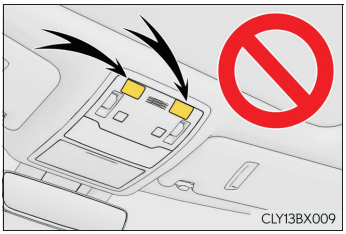
NOTICE

■ To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly

● Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



● To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



● Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

Instrument cluster 2

2. **Instrument cluster**

Warning lights and indicators 90
Gauges and meters 95
Multi-information display 99
Head-up display 121
Fuel consumption information 127

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster, center panel and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all warning lights and indicators illuminated.

▶ Except F SPORT models



▶ F SPORT models



The units used on the meter may differ depending on the target region.

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems.


*1
Brake system warning light (→P. 660)


*1
Brake system warning light (→P. 660)


*1
Charging system warning light (→P. 660)
(if equipped)


*1
Malfunction indicator lamp (→P. 660)


*1
SRS warning light (→P. 661)


*1
ABS warning light (→P. 661)


*2
Parking brake indicator (→P. 661)



*1, 2
Brake hold operated indicator (→P. 661)


*1
Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 661)


*1
Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 661)


(if equipped)
LDA indicator (→P. 661)
LKA indicator (→P. 661)


*1
Slip indicator (→P. 662)



*1, 2
(if equipped)
PCS warning light (→P. 662)



*1, 2
(if equipped)
Stop & Start cancel indicator (→P. 662)


Low fuel level warning light (→P. 662)


Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P. 663)


*3
(if equipped)
Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light (→P. 663)


*1
Tire pressure warning light (→P. 663)


*1
Master warning light (→P. 663)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not turn on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

*3: This light illuminates on the center panel.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 256)


Tail light indicator (→P. 263)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 263)

*1


(if equipped)
Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 272)
Adaptive High-beam System indicator (→P. 267)


Front fog light indicator (→P. 276)


Rear fog light indicator (→P. 276)


Cruise control indicator (→P. 336, 348, 360)


(if equipped)
Radar cruise control indicator (→P. 336, 348)



Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P. 336, 348, 360)


(if equipped)
LDA indicator (→P. 322)
LKA indicator (→P. 311)


(if equipped)
LDA indicator (→P. 322)
LKA indicator (→P. 311)

*4

(if equipped)
LDA indicator (→P. 322)
LKA indicator (→P. 311)



(if equipped)
Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (→P. 374)



(if equipped)
"BSM" indicator (→P. 399)



(if equipped)
"RCTA" indicator (→P. 399)

*2, 3

(if equipped)
BSM outside rear view mirror indicators (→P. 399)

*1, 4 
Slip indicator (→P. 422)

*1, 5 

VSC OFF indicator (→P. 423)

*1, 5 

(if equipped)
PCS warning light (→P. 302)

*1 
(if equipped)
Stop & Start indicator (→P. 364)

*1, 5 

(if equipped)
Stop & Start cancel indicator (→P. 367)


Parking brake indicator (→P. 257)

*1 

Brake hold standby indicator (→P. 261)

*1 

Brake hold operated indicator (→P. 261)


(if equipped)
Gear Shift Indicator (→P. 253)

*1 

Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 119)

*6 
Security indicator (→P. 77, 83)

*1 
(AWD models only)
All-wheel drive lock indicator (→P. 419)

*7 
Low outside temperature indicator (→P. 95)

*1, 6 

"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator (→P. 51)

● Drive mode indicators

▶ Except F SPORT models



Eco drive mode indicator (→P. 415)



(if equipped)
"SPORT S" indicator (→P. 415)



(if equipped)
"Customize" indicator (→P. 415)



(if equipped)
"SPORT" indicator (→P. 415)



(if equipped)
"SPORT S+" indicator (→P. 415)

▶ F SPORT models



Eco drive mode indicator (→P. 415)



"SPORT S" indicator (→P. 415)



"SPORT S+" indicator (→P. 415)



"CUSTOMIZE" indicator (→P. 415)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to the IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not turn on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:

- When the BSM function is enabled on  of the multi-information display, the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the BSM function is enabled on  of the multi-information display.

If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds.
If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not turn off, there may be a malfunction in the system.
If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*3: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*4: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*5: The light comes on when the system is turned off.

*6: This light illuminates on the center panel.

*7: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

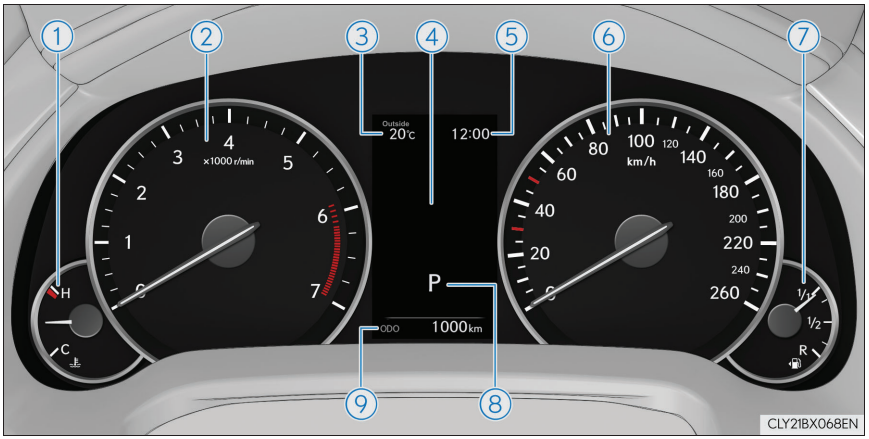
⚠ WARNING

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

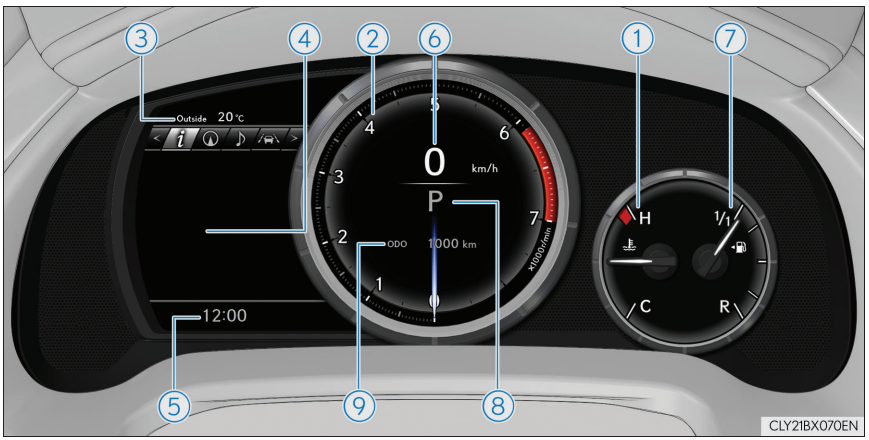
Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately if this occurs.

Gauges and meters

▶ Except F SPORT models



▶ F SPORT models



The units used on the meters may differ depending on the target region.

① Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

② Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

F SPORT models: When sport mode is selected for the driving mode, the periphery of the tachometer will change color and the scale of the tachometer will be emphasized.

③ Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

④ Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P. 99)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P. 667)

⑤ Clock

Vehicles with a navigation system:
Time displayed is linked to the analog clock on the instrument panel. (→P. 566)

Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system:

Time displayed on the clock can be adjusted on  of the multi-information display. (→P. 109)

⑥ Speedometer

⑦ Fuel gauge

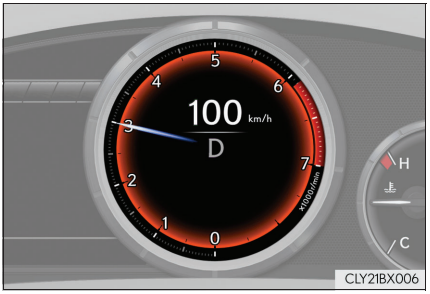
⑧ Shift position display (→P. 250)

⑨ Odometer and trip meter (→P. 117)

Rev indicator (F SPORT models)

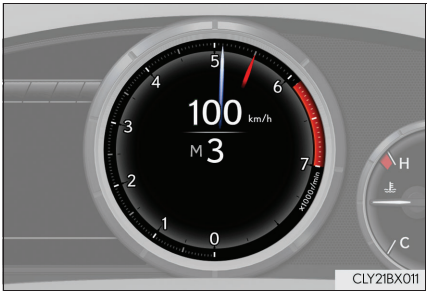
When the engine reaches a set speed, a ring-shaped indicator will be displayed on the tachometer.

The desired engine speed at which the Rev indicator will begin to be displayed can be set on ⚙ of the multi-information display. (→P. 109)



Rev peak (F SPORT models)

The engine speed reaches or exceeds 5000 rpm, an afterimage of the tachometer will be displayed at the highest engine speed for approximately 1 second.



Instrument panel light control

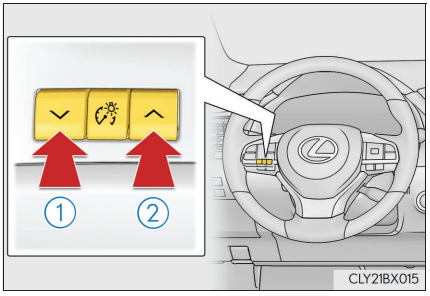
The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.

① Darker

② Brighter

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted individually for day mode and night mode*.

*: Day mode and night mode: →P. 98



■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Brightness of the meters (day mode and night mode)**

The brightness of the meters is changed between day mode and night mode.

- Day mode: When the tail lights are off or when the tail lights are on but the surrounding area is bright
- Night mode: When the tail lights are on and the surrounding area is dark

■ **Outside temperature display**

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When "– –" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning.
  Take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Clock settings screen (vehicles with a navigation system only)**

If the clock adjustment screen is displayed continuously when attempting to change the clock settings, the system may be malfunctioning.
Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 109)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

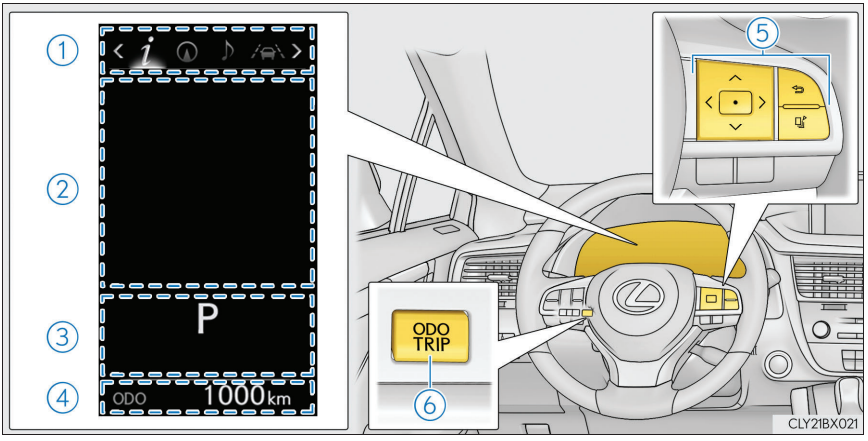
- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 712)

Multi-information display

Summary of functions

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, such as the current outside temperature. The multi-information display can also be used to change the display settings and other settings.

▶ Except F SPORT models



① Menu icon display area

Displays the following items.
When a menu icon is not selected, the outside temperature and clock are displayed.
- Menu icons (→P. 103)
- Outside temperature (→P. 95)
- Clock (→P. 95)

② Content display area

A variety of information can be displayed by selecting a menu icon. Additionally, warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays will be displayed in some situations.
- Menu icon content (→P. 103)
- Suggestion function (→P. 118)
- Warning message (→P. 667)

③ Indicator/shift position display area

Displays the following items:
- Indicators (→P. 90)
- Shift position display (→P. 250)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (if equipped) (→P. 331)

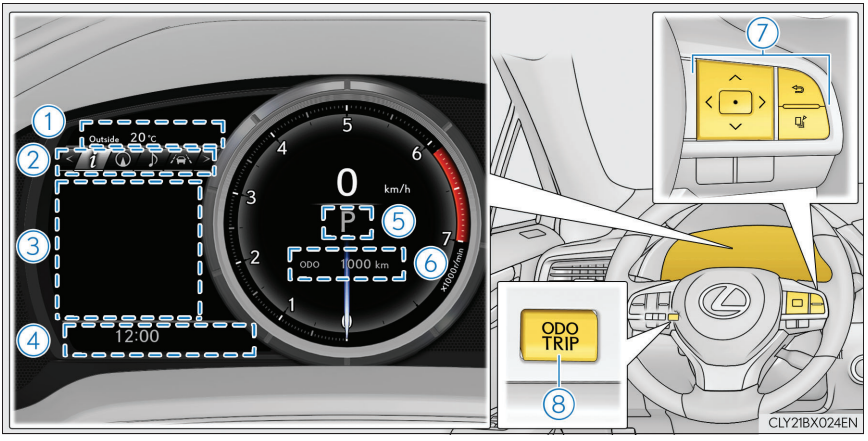
④ Odometer/trip meter display area (→P. 117)

Displays the following items:
- Odometer/trip meter
- Distance until next engine oil change
- Stop & Start system operation time (current) (if equipped)
- Speed warning

⑤ Meter control switches (→P. 101)

⑥ "ODO/TRIP" switch (→P. 102)

▶ F SPORT models



① Outside temperature display area

Displays the following items:
- Outside temperature (→P. 95)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (if equipped) (→P. 331)

② Menu icons (→P. 103)

③ Content display area

A variety of information can be displayed by selecting a menu icon. Additionally, warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays will be displayed in some situations.
- Menu icon content (→P. 103)
- Suggestion function (→P. 118)
- Warning message (→P. 667)

④ Indicators/clock
- Indicators (→P. 90)
- Clock (→P. 95)

⑤ Shift position display (→P. 250)

⑥ Odometer/trip meter display area (→P. 117)

Displays the following items:
- Odometer/trip meter
- Distance until next engine oil change
- Stop & Start system operation time (current) (if equipped)
- Speed warning

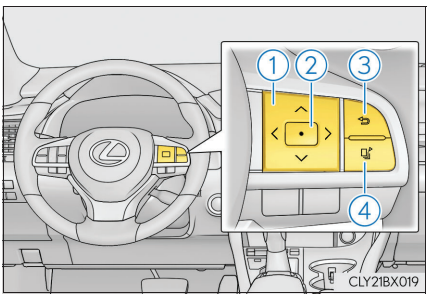
⑦ Meter control switches (→P. 101)

⑧ "ODO/TRIP" switch (→P. 102)

Using the multi-information display

Using the content display area

The content display area is operated using the meter control switches.



① : Select menu icons
: Change displayed content, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor

② Press: Enter/Set
Press and hold: Reset

③ Return to the previous screen

④ Press: Display the top screen
Press and hold: Register current screen as the top screen

Registering a top screen

The displayed top screen can be changed to a registered screen of your choice.

To register a screen as the top screen, display the desired screen and press and hold .

- A message asking to confirm if registration is desired will be displayed. If the selected screen cannot be registered, a registration failure message will be displayed.
- When no screen has been registered, the drive information screen will be displayed.

Resetting drive information

To reset the average fuel economy (after reset)/average vehicle speed (after reset)/elapsed time (after reset) that are displayed on , display the desired item and press and hold .

If both of the displayed items are resettable, a message will be displayed asking which item(s) to reset.

Using the odometer/trip meter display area

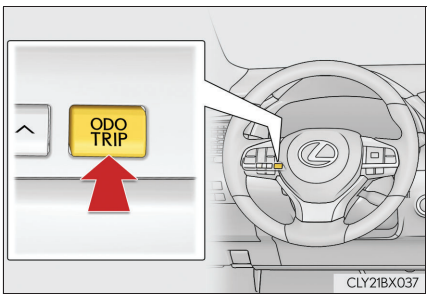
Items in this area are operated using the "ODO/TRIP" switch.

Press: Change displayed item

Each time the switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed.

Press and hold: Reset

Display the desired trip meter and press and hold the switch to reset the trip meter.



Menu icons

Select a menu icon to display its content.


Drive information (→P. 104)

Select to display various drive data.


Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.
- Route guidance
- Compass display (heading-up display)


Audio system-linked display

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the meter using the meter control switches.


Driving assist system information (if equipped)

Select to display the operational status of the following systems:
- Dynamic radar cruise control (→P. 348)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P. 336)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (→P. 322)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) (→P. 311)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (→P. 331)


Stop & Start system information (if equipped) (→P. 108, 364)

Select to display the operational status of the Stop & Start system.


Warning message display (→P. 667)

Select to display warning messages and measures to be taken if a malfunction is detected.


Settings display (→P. 109)

Select to change the meter display settings and other settings.

Drive information (i)

Drive information 1/Drive information 2/Drive information 3

Displays drive information such as the following:

- Drive information 1
  - Current fuel consumption
  - Average fuel economy (after reset)
- Drive information 2
  - Distance (driving range)
  - Average vehicle speed (after reset)
- Drive information 3
  - Average fuel economy (after refuel)
  - Elapsed time (after start)

Displayed items (listed below) can be changed on . (→P. 109)

Item		Content
Current fuel consumption		Displays instantaneous current fuel consumption
Average fuel economy	After reset	Displays average fuel consumption since display reset*1, 2
	After start	Displays average fuel consumption since engine start*2
	After refuel	Displays average fuel consumption since refuel*2, 3
Average vehicle speed	After reset	Displays average vehicle speed since display reset*1
	After start	Displays average vehicle speed since engine start
Elapsed time	After reset	Displays elapsed time since display reset*1
	After start	Displays elapsed time since engine start
Distance	Driving range	Displays driving range with remaining fuel*3, 4
	After start	Displays drive distance since vehicle start
Other	Blank	No item

*1: Resetting: →P. 102

*2: Use the displayed fuel consumption as a reference.

*3: When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

*4: This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

■ Eco Driving Indicator

→P. 119

■ Sway warning (if equipped)

Detects the sway of the vehicle within a lane, which is often associated with a decrease in the driver's attention level, and displays the decrease in attention using a bar display.

The shorter the bar length, the more the driver may need to rest.

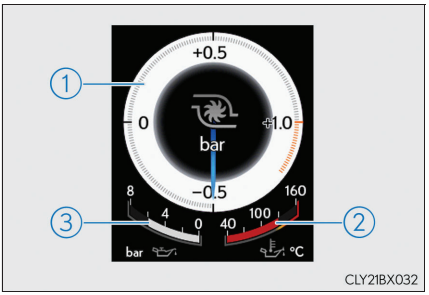
This display is a part of the LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)/LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) system. The display is enabled when the operating conditions of the vehicle sway warning are met. (→P. 311, 322)

■ AWD Control (if equipped)

Displays the driving force applied to each wheel using segments.

The greater the number of segments displayed, the greater the driving force applied.

■ Boost gauge/engine oil temperature gauge/engine oil pressure gauge (if equipped)



① Boost gauge
Displays the boost pressure. The display will change color if the specified pressure is exceeded.

② Engine oil temperature gauge
Displays the engine oil temperature. The display will flash if the engine oil temperature exceeds 140 °C (284 °F).

③ Engine oil pressure gauge
Displays the engine oil pressure. A buzzer will sound and warning message will be displayed if the engine oil pressure becomes low. (→P. 669)

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

G-force (if equipped)

Displays lateral G-forces on the vehicle.
Also displays, around the periphery of the G-force display, the left and right steering amount, accelerator pedal input, and brake fluid pressure.



① Acceleration G-force on the vehicle
② Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)
③ Record of the maximum G-forces
④ Accelerator pedal input
⑤ Brake fluid pressure
⑥ Steering amount

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

- Resetting the record of maximum G-forces

  Press and hold [•] to reset the record.

- Peak hold function

  If lateral G-forces of 0.5 G or greater are generated, the G-force value display will turn yellow and be held for 2 seconds.

Tire pressure

→P. 608

Units (if equipped)

The units of measure used can be changed while driving.

Unlike the units setting performed on ⚙, the units setting performed on i can be changed while driving.

Blank (No items)

Displays no drive information contents.

Stop & Start system information ( ) (if equipped)

Stop & Start system operation time (current)/status notification

Displays the current amount of time the engine has been stopped due to the operation of the Stop & Start system. Also shows the status of the Stop & Start system with a pop-up display. (→P. 371)

Stop & Start system total operation time/amount of fuel saved

Press or on the steering wheel to display the following items:

- Stop & Start system operation time (after start/after reset)

  Displays the accumulated total of the following:

  - Stop & Start system operation time since engine start
  - Stop & Start system operation time since display was reset

- Amount of fuel saved (after start/after reset)

  Displays the accumulated total of the following:

  - Amount of fuel saved since engine start
  - Amount of fuel saved since display was reset

  Use the displayed amount of saved fuel for reference only.

Stop & Start system settings

Press on the steering wheel to display the Stop & Start system settings screen.

On this screen, the following operations can be performed:

- Stop & Start

  The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the "A/C" switch of the air conditioning system is on can be set to 2 different levels. This setting can also be changed on .

- Reset

  Select to reset the Stop & Start system operation time/amount of fuel saved display.
  To reset, move the cursor to "Reset", and then press and hold .

Settings display ( )

Changing settings

Use the meter control switches on the steering wheel to change settings.

1 Press < or > to select .

2 Operate the switches to select a desired item.

3 Change the setting by referring to the message displayed on the screen.

Setting items

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)/LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) (if equipped) (→P. 311, 322)

The following LDA system/LKA system settings can be changed:

Item	Settings	Details
Lane center tracing (LKA only)	On	Select to enable/disable the lane-keeping assist function.*1
	Off	
Steering assist	On	Select to enable/disable steering wheel assistance.*2
	Off	
Alert		Select to set a vibrator or buzzer as the notification method used to warn the driver.
Alert sensitivity	High	Select to set the warning sensitivity.
	Normal	
Sway warning	On	Select to enable/disable the vehicle sway warning.
	Off	
Sway sensitivity	High	Select to set the vehicle sway warning sensitivity.
	Medium	
	Low	

*1: If the lane-keeping assist function is enabled/disabled, steering wheel assistance will also be enabled/disabled accordingly.

*2: If the steering wheel assistance is disabled, lane-keeping assist function will also be disabled automatically.

■ PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped) (→P. 298)

The following pre-crash safety system settings can be changed:

Item	Settings	Details
PCS	On	Select to enable/disable the pre-crash safety system.
	Off	
Warning sensitivity		Select to change the warning timing.
		
		

■ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped) (→P. 399)

The following Blind Spot Monitor settings can be changed:

Item	Settings	Details
BSM	On	Select to enable/disable the Blind Spot Monitor function.
	Off	
RCTA*	On	Select to enable/disable the Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function.
	Off	

*: The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function can be enabled/disabled only when the Blind Spot Monitor function is enabled.

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped) (→P. 374)

Item	Settings	Details
Lexus parking assist-sensor	On	Select to enable/disable the Lexus parking assist-sensor.
	Off	

Speed Warning (→P. 117)

The following speed warning settings can be changed:

Item	Settings	Details
Speed warning	On	Select to enable/disable the speed warning.
	Off	
Speed setting	30 to 260 km/h (20 to 160 mph)	Select to set the vehicle speed at which the speed warning will begin operating.

RSA (Road Sign Assist) (if equipped) (→P. 331)

The following RSA settings can be changed:

Item	Settings	Details
RSA	On	Select to enable/disable the RSA.
	Off	
Excess speed notification	No notification	Select to set the notification method used to warn the driver if the vehicle speed exceeds the speed displayed on the speed limit sign on the multi-information display.
	Display only	
	Display and buzzer	
Excess speed notification level	10 km/h (5 mph)	Select to set the speed threshold over which the excess speed notification will start to operate when a speed limit sign is displayed on the multi-information display.
	5 km/h (3 mph)	
	2 km/h (1 mph)	
Other notifications	No notification	Select to set the notification method used to warn the driver if the system detects the following: • The vehicle is overtaking when a no overtaking sign is displayed on the multi-information display. • The vehicle is entering a no-entry area when a no-entry sign is displayed on the multi-information display.*
	Display only	
	Display and buzzer	

*: Vehicles with a navigation system

■ HUD (Head-up display) (if equipped) (→P. 121)

The following head-up display settings can be changed:

Item	Settings	Details
Brightness/Position		Select to adjust the brightness/position of the head-up display. • Press the < / > switch to adjust the display brightness. • Press the ^ / v switch to adjust the display position.
Gauge information	No display	Select to set the content displayed on the head-up display.
	Eco Driving Indicator	
	Tachometer	
Driving support	Navigation system (if equipped)	Select to enable/disable head-up display content.
	Driving Assist (if equipped)	
	Compass (if equipped)	
	Audio system	

■ Clock (on multi-information display) (→P. 95)

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

The following clock setting can be changed:

Item	Settings	Details
Display mode	12-hour display	Select to set the display mode of the clock.
	24-hour display	

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

The following clock settings can be changed:

Press the < / > switch to select an item and then press the ^ / v switch to change the setting or adjust the time.

Item	Settings	Details
Display mode	12-hour display	Select to set the display mode of the clock.
	24-hour display	
Adjust time		Select to adjust the hour/minute.

Vehicle settings

Item	Settings	Details
PBD (Power back door) (if equipped) (→P. 151) The following power back door settings can be changed:		
System settings	All On	Select to enable the power back door system.
	Touchless Sensor Off (if equipped)	Select to disable the touchless sensor. (Other power back door functions remain enabled.)
	All Off	Select to disable the power back door system.
Open position adjustment		Select to set the open position at which the power back door will stop when opened automatically.
		
		
		
		
Volume	3 (Loud)	Select to set the volume of the buzzer which sounds when the power back door is operated.
	2 (Medium)	
	1 (Low)	
Stop & Start system (if equipped) (→P. 364)		
Stop & Start system operation time	Extended	Select to set the length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the "A/C" switch of the air conditioning system is on.
	Standard	

Item	Settings	Details
TPMS (Tire pressure warning system) (→P. 608)		
Tire pressure warning system initialization		Select to initialize the Tire pressure warning system. To perform initialization, press and hold the • switch. Before performing initialization, make sure to adjust the inflation pressure of each tire to the specified level. (→P. 610)
Oil maintenance		
Engine oil maintenance data reset		Select to reset the engine oil maintenance information (message indicating maintenance is required and distance until the next oil change) after engine oil maintenance is performed. (→P. 598)

■ Meter settings

Item	Settings	Details
Language		Select to change the language displayed.
Units		Select to change the units of measure displayed.
(Eco Driving Indicator Light)	On	Select to enable/disable the Eco Driving Indicator Light. (→P. 119)
	Off	
Switch settings		Select to display how to change the top screen.
Drive information 1		Select to select up to 2 items that will be displayed on each Drive information screen (Drive information 1 screen, Drive information 2 screen, and Drive information 3 screen) respectively. (Selectable items: →P. 104)
Drive information 2		
Drive information 3		

Item	Settings	Details
Pop-up display	Intersection guidance (if equipped)	Select to enable/disable the pop-up display.
	Incoming calls	
	Duration (if equipped)	
	Status (if equipped)	
	Brightness adjustment	
Color (except F SPORT models)	2 available colors	Select to set the color of the cursor on the multi-information display.
Needle (F SPORT models)	3 available colors	Select to set the tachometer needle color.
Rev indicator (F SPORT models)	On	Select to enable/disable the Rev indicator. (→P. 97)
	Off	
	Rev setting	Select to set the desired engine speed at which the Rev indicator will begin to be displayed. Selectable engine speed range: RX350: 2000 r/min to 6500 r/min RX200t: 2000 r/min to 6100 r/min
Rev peak (F SPORT models)	On	Select to enable/disable the Rev peak. (→P. 97)
	Off	
Default setting		Select to reset the meter display settings to the default setting.

Odometer/trip meter display area

Display items

Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter A/trip meter B

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

To reset, display the desired trip meter and press and hold the "ODO/TRIP" switch.

Distance until next engine oil change

Displays the distance the vehicle can be driven until an oil change is necessary.

Pop-up display

In some situations the following will be temporarily displayed:

Stop & Start system operation time (current) (if equipped)

This display will be displayed when the engine is stopped due to the operation of the Stop & Start system.

Distance until next engine oil change

Displays the distance until the next engine oil change. This display will be displayed in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- When a warning message indicating that oil maintenance should be performed soon or is required is displayed.

Speed warning

When set to on, the vehicle speed at which the speed warning will start operating will be displayed. If the vehicle exceeds the set speed, the speed display will flash and a buzzer will sound.

- To display the odometer, etc. while the speed warning is set to on, press the "ODO/TRIP" switch. (If the switch has not been operated for a certain amount of time, the speed warning will be displayed.)
- The speed at which the speed warning will start operating can be changed on . (→P. 109)

Suggestion function

Displays suggestions to the driver in the following situations. To select a response to a displayed suggestion, use the meter control switches.

The suggestion function can be turned on/off. (Customizable features: →P. 734)

■ **Suggestion to enable the power back door (if equipped)**

If the power back door system is disabled (setting on set to off) and the power back door switch on the instrument panel is operated, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to enable the power back door system. To enable the power back door system, select "Yes".

After enabling the power back door system, press the power back door switch again to open or close the power back door.

■ **Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to windshield wiper operation)**

If the windshield wipers are operated with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows. To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

■ **Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to engine switch operation)**

If the engine switch is turned off with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows. To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

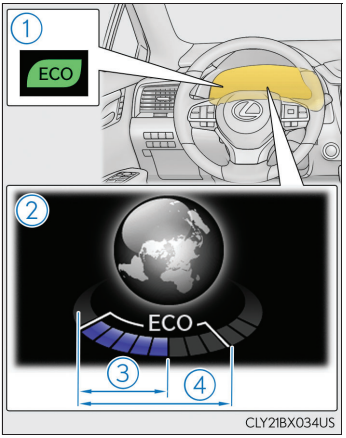
Eco Driving Indicator

① Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

② Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

③ Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate.

④ Zone of Eco driving



Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated.
- Sport mode is selected.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Background color of the indicator/shift position display area (except F SPORT models)

The background color of the indicator/shift position display area is changed according to the driving mode as follows (→P. 415):

- Eco drive mode: Blue
- Sport mode: Red

G-force display (if equipped)

- The G-force values may not be zero even when the vehicle is parked, such as when it is parked on an incline.
- Depending on the vehicle usage conditions, the brake fluid pressure display may not reach its maximum reading even though the brake pedal is fully depressed.
- If a battery terminal is disconnected and reconnected, the steering amount display may be disabled temporarily. After driving the vehicle for a while, the display will be enabled.

Suspension of the settings display

- Some settings cannot be changed while driving. When changing settings, park the vehicle in a safe place.
- If a warning message is displayed, operation of the settings display will be suspended.

■ Tire pressure

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- "---" may be displayed if the tire position information cannot be determined due to unfavorable radio wave conditions.
- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using a tire pressure gauge.

■ Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 109, 734)

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.
For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

■ Cautions during setting up the display

As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

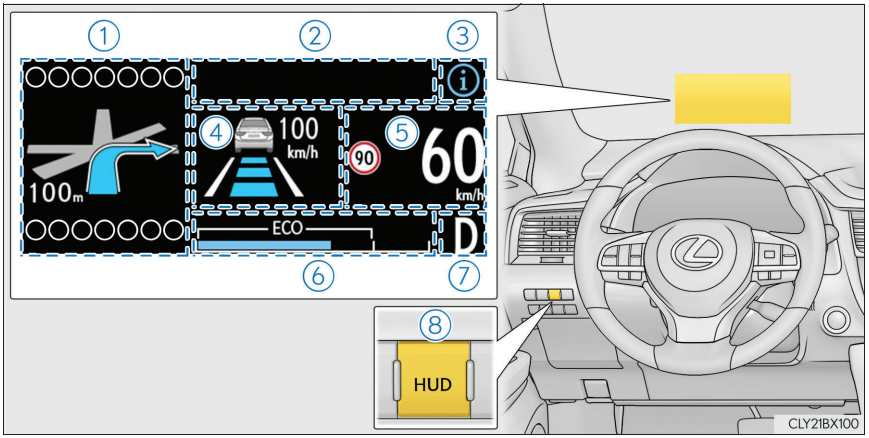
■ While setting up the display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

Head-up display*

Summary of functions

The head-up display is linked to the meters and navigation system (if equipped) and projects a variety of information in front of the driver, such as the current vehicle speed.



① Navigation system-linked display area (if equipped) (→P. 124)

Displays the following items, which are linked to the navigation system:
- Street name
- Route guidance to destination
- Compass

② Message display area (→P. 123)

Displays the following items:
- Warning/Message (if equipped)
- Audio system operation status
- Outside temperature

③ / icon (→P. 123)

④ Driving assist system status display area (if equipped)

Displays the operational status of the following systems:
- Dynamic radar cruise control (→P. 348)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P. 336)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (→P. 322)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) (→P. 311)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P. 374)

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanations of each system.

*: If equipped

⑤ Vehicle speed display area

Displays the following items:
- Vehicle speed
- Road sign icons recognized by the RSA (if equipped) (→P. 331)

⑥ Eco Driving Indicator/Tachometer (→P. 124)

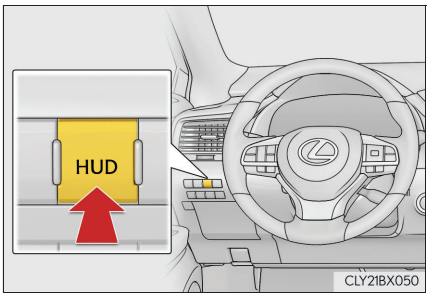
⑦ Shift position display (→P. 250)

⑧ HUD (Head-up display) switch (→P. 122)

Using the head-up display

◆ Enabling/Disabling the head-up display

Press the HUD (Head-up display) switch.



◆ Changing settings of the head-up display

Select on the multi-information display (→P. 109) to change the following settings:

■ Display brightness/position

Select to adjust the brightness and position of the head-up display.

■ Display content

Select to enable/disable the following items:
- Route guidance to destination (if equipped)
- Driving assist system status (if equipped)
- Compass (if equipped)
- Audio system operation status

■ Eco Driving Indicator/Tachometer

Select to display Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer/no content.

/ icons

Displays the following multi-information display linked icons:

: Master warning icon
Displayed when a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P. 667)

: Information icon
Displayed when a suggestion/advice pop-up display is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P. 118)

Message display area

Displays the following items in the appropriate situation:

Warning/Message (if equipped)

Displays the following system warning/messages:

- Pre-crash warning (Pre-crash safety system)
- Notification message (Dynamic radar cruise control/Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range)

Audio system operation status

Displayed when the audio system is operated.

Outside temperature

Displayed in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode
- When the low outside temperature indicator is flashing

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanation of the outside temperature display on the multi-information display. (→P. 95)

Navigation system-linked display area (if equipped)

Displays the following items which are linked to the navigation system:

Street name

The name of the street that the vehicle is currently driving on is displayed on the bottom of the display area.
When the navigation system is performing route guidance, the name of the next street will be displayed on the top of the display area.

Route guidance to destination

Displayed when the navigation system is performing route guidance. When approaching an intersection, an arrow will be displayed to indicate the suggested direction of travel.

Compass

Displays the direction of travel.

Eco Driving Indicator/Tachometer

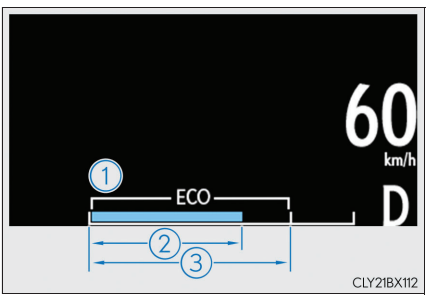
Eco Driving Indicator

① Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

② Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

③ Zone of Eco driving

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display (Eco Driving Indicator). For details, refer to P. 119.



Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

■ **Head-up display**

The head-up display may seem dark or hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses.
Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

■ **Display brightness**

The brightness of the head-up display can be adjusted on  of the multi-information display. Also, it is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

■ **Enabling/disabling of the head-up display**

If the head-up display is disabled, it will remain disabled when the engine switch is turned off then back to IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Street name display (vehicles with a navigation system)**

Only street names which are included in the map data will be displayed.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Before using the head-up display**

- Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not continuously look at the head-up display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

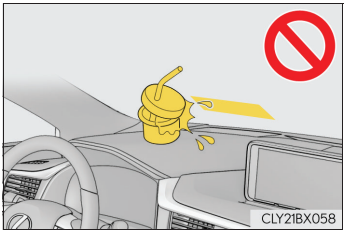
■ **Caution for changing settings of the head-up display**

As the engine needs to be running while changing the settings of the head-up display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to components

- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.
- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector.
  Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.
- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector.
  Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.



■ When changing the settings of the head-up display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while the changing the settings of the head-up display.

Fuel consumption information

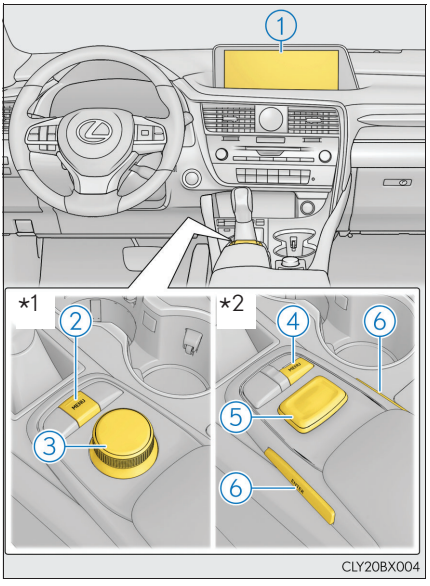
Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the audio system.

Vehicles with a navigation system: The fuel consumption information can be displayed and operated on the side display.

① Audio system screen
② “MENU” button
③ Lexus Display Audio controller
④ “MENU” button
⑤ Remote Touch knob
⑥ “ENTER” button

*1: Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

*2: Vehicles with a navigation system

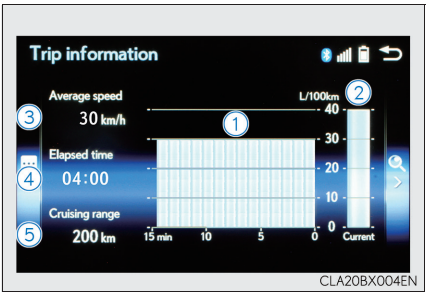


Trip information

▶ Lexus Display Audio screen

Press the "MENU" button on the Lexus Display Audio controller, and then select "Car" on the "MENU" screen.

If the "Trip information" screen does not appear, move the controller to the right and select "Trip information".



CLA20BX004EN

① Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

② Current fuel consumption

③ Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

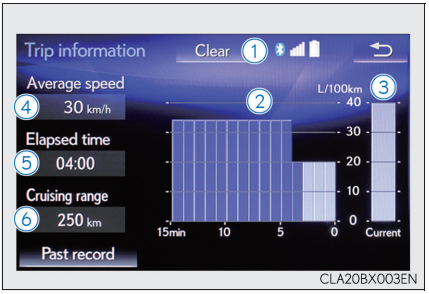
④ Elapsed time since the engine was started.

⑤ Cruising range (→P. 130)

▶ Navigation system screen

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, and then select on the "Menu" screen.

If the "Past record" screen is displayed, select "Trip information".



CLA20BX003EN

① Resetting the consumption data

② Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

③ Current fuel consumption

④ Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

⑤ Elapsed time since the engine was started.

⑥ Cruising range (→P. 130)

Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only.

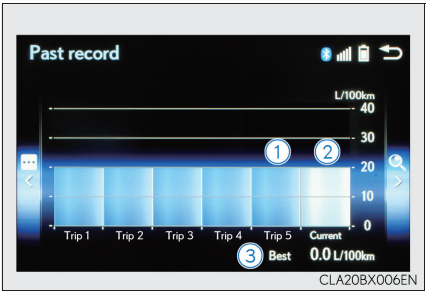
Past record

▶ Lexus Display Audio screen

Press the “MENU” button on the Lexus Display Audio controller, and then select “Car” on the “MENU” screen.

If the “Past record” screen does not appear, move the controller to the right and select “Past record”.

① Previous fuel consumption record
② Current fuel consumption
③ Best recorded fuel consumption



CLA20BX006EN

▶ Navigation system screen

Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, and then select on the “Menu” screen.

If the “Trip information” screen is displayed, select “Past record”.

① Resetting the past record data
② Best recorded fuel consumption
③ Average fuel consumption
④ Previous fuel consumption record
⑤ Updating the average fuel consumption data



CLA20BX005EN

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only.

■ **Updating the past record data**

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

Update the average fuel consumption by moving the controller to the left and select "Update" to measure the current fuel consumption again.

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Update the average fuel consumption by selecting "Update" to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ **Resetting the data**

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by moving the controller to the left and select "Clear".

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting "Clear".

■ **Cruising range**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

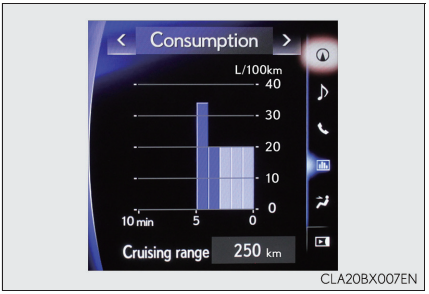
This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

Using the side display (vehicles with a navigation system)

Vehicle information can be displayed on the side display (→P. 532), then select "<" or ">" to select the desired screen.

▶ Fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption for the past 10 minutes in 1 minute intervals, as well as the cruising range.



CLA20BX007EN

▶ Past record

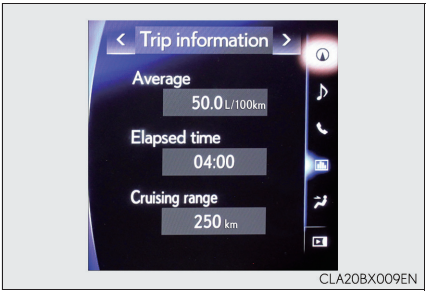
Displays the average fuel consumption and highest fuel consumption.



CLA20BX008EN

▶ Trip information

Displays the cruising range, average fuel consumption and the amount of time elapsed since the engine was started.



CLA20BX009EN

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Operation of each component

3

3-1. Key information

Keys 134

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Side doors 140

Back door 146

Power back door 151

Smart entry & start system 168

3-3. Adjusting the seats

Front seats 185

Rear seats 186

Driving position memory 195

Head restraints 200

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors

Steering wheel 202

Inside rear view mirror 204

Outside rear view mirrors 206

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 210

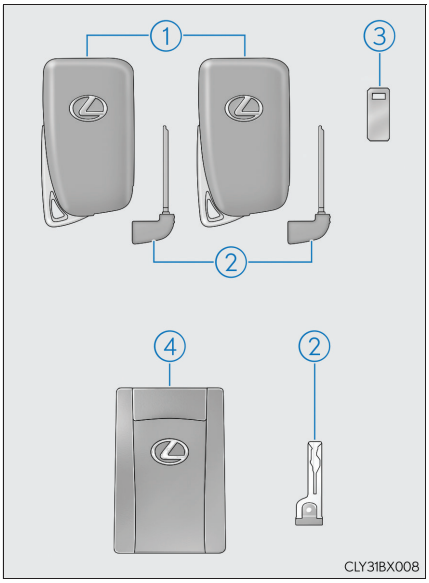
Moon roof 214

Panoramic moon roof 218

Keys

The keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



① Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system (if equipped) (→P. 168)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

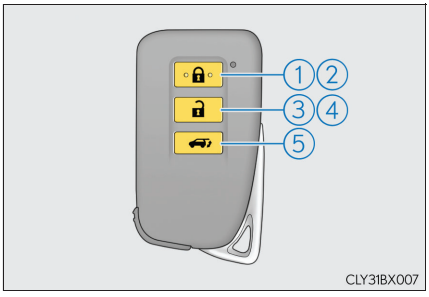
② Mechanical keys

③ Key number plate

④ Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 168)

Wireless remote control



① Locks all the doors (→P. 140)

② Closes the windows*2 and the moon roof*1, 2 or panoramic moon roof*1, 2 (→P. 140)

③ Unlocks all the doors (→P. 140)

④ Opens the windows*2 and the moon roof*1, 2 or panoramic moon roof*1, 2 (→P. 140)

⑤ Opens and closes the power back door*1 (→P. 151)

*1: If equipped

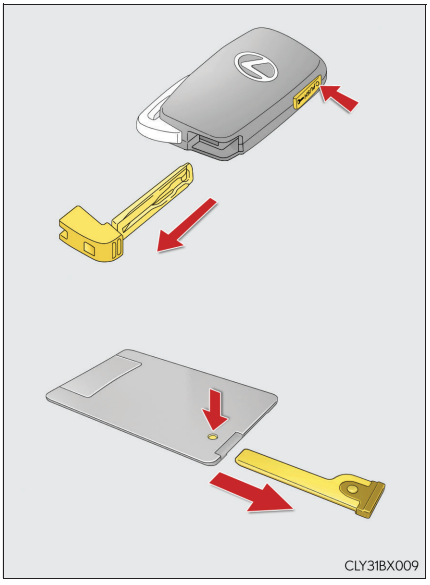
*2: This setting must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

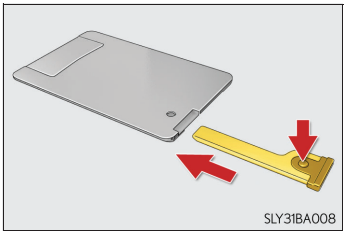
The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 704)

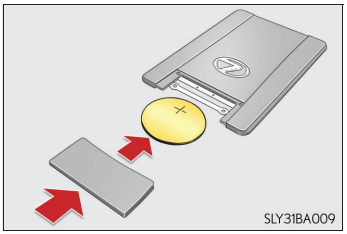


■ Card key (if equipped)

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the release button using a pen tip, etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin, etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the look release button.


SLY31BA008

- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.


SLY31BA009

■ When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 555)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ If you lose your mechanical keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional using another mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag, etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine is stopped. (→P. 632)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 632)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Induction cookers
  - Table lamps

■ **Replacing the battery**

→P. 632

■ **Confirmation of the registered key number**

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

■ **If a wrong key is used**

The key cylinder rotates freely, isolated from the internal mechanism.

NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer, etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle, including the card key, to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that were provided with your vehicle.

NOTICE

■ **Handling the card key (if equipped)**

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery.
  Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

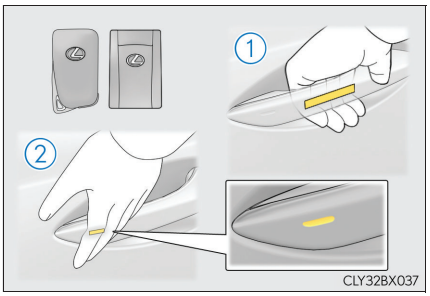
Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switches.

Locking and unlocking the doors from the outside

◆ Smart entry & start system

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



① Grip the door handle to unlock the doors.*

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

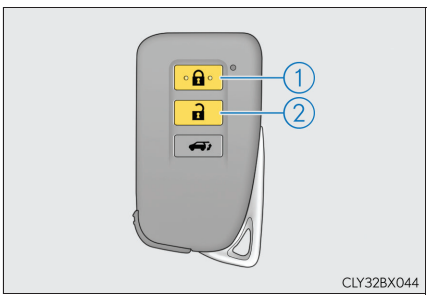
The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed. (→P. 144, 737)

② Touch the lock sensor (indentation on the surface of the door handle) to lock all the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

◆ Wireless remote control



① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

Press and hold to close the windows*2 and the moon roof*1, 2 or panoramic moon roof*1, 2

② Unlocks all the doors

Press and hold to open the windows*2 and the moon roof*1, 2 or panoramic moon roof*1, 2

*1: If equipped

*2: This setting must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Operation signals**

Doors:
The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows and moon roof or panoramic moon roof:
A buzzer sounds.

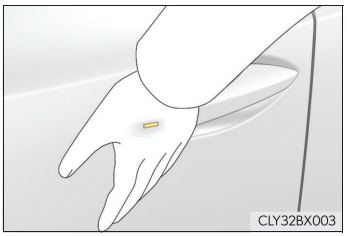
■ **Security feature**

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ **When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle**

When the door cannot be locked even if the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle is touched by a finger, touch the lock sensor with the palm.

When gloves are being worn, remove the gloves.



■ **Door lock buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Setting the alarm (if equipped)**

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 83)

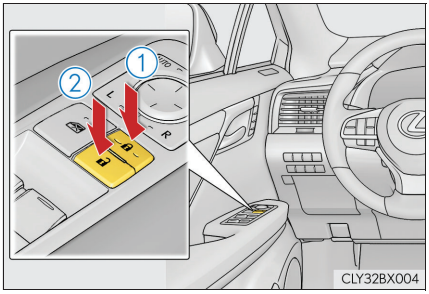
■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

- Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P. 704)
- Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P. 632)

Locking and unlocking the doors from the inside

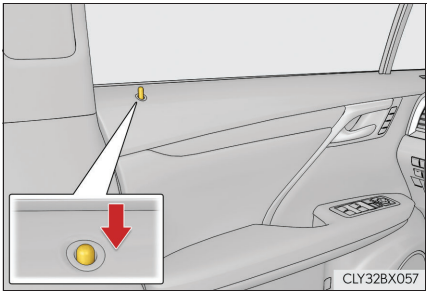
Door lock switches (to lock/unlock)

① Locks all the doors
② Unlocks all the doors



Inside lock buttons (to lock)

Push down the inside lock button to lock the door.



Inside door handles (to unlock)

▶ For the front doors

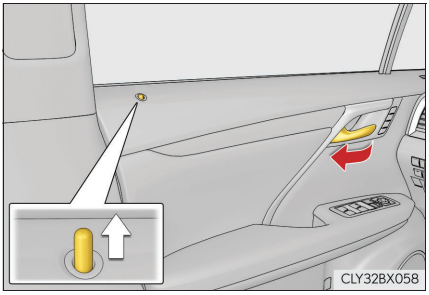
Pull the handle to unlock and open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

▶ For the rear doors

Pull the handle to unlock the door. Pull the handle a second time to open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.



Locking the doors from the outside without a key

1 Push down the inside lock button.

2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle. However, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

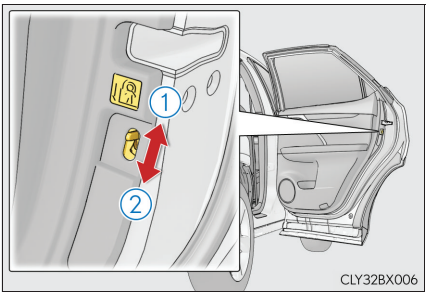
Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

① Unlock

② Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.



Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P. 735.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when shifting the shift lever out of P.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened.

■ **Switching the door unlock function**

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (if equipped) (→P. 85)

3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 3.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Beep
 (Left-hand drive vehicles)	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once
 (Right-hand drive vehicles)	Holding any of the passenger door handles unlocks all the doors.	
	Holding a door handle unlocks all the doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once

For vehicles with an alarm: To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)
In a case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 83)

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 704)

■ **Open door warning buzzer**

If the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph), the master warning light flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that door(s) or the hood in not fully closed.
The open door(s) or hood is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control**

→P. 170

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.

  Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

■ **When opening or closing a door**

Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing. When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

■ **When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof**

Operate the power windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof.

Back door*

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened by the following procedures.

Locking and unlocking the back door from the outside

◆ Smart entry & start system

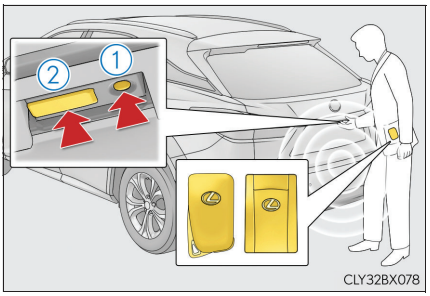
Carry the electronic key to enable this function.

① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

② Unlocks all the doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.



◆ Wireless remote control

→P. 140

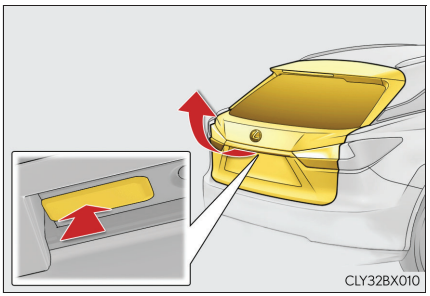
Locking and unlocking the back door from the inside

◆ Door lock switch

→P. 142

Opening the back door from the outside

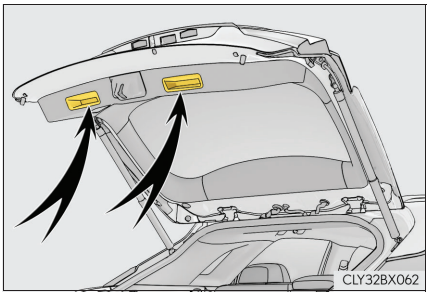
Raise the back door while pressing up the back door opener switch.



*: If equipped

When closing the back door

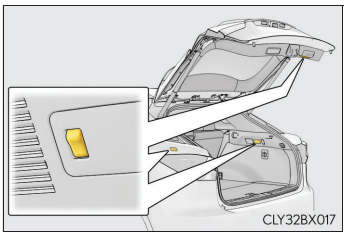
Lower the back door using a back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.



Luggage compartment lights

The luggage compartment lights turn on when the back door is opened with the respective luggage compartment light switch on.

When the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

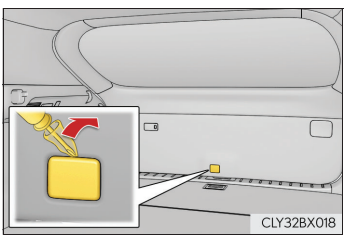


If the back door opener is inoperative

The back door can be unlocked from the inside.

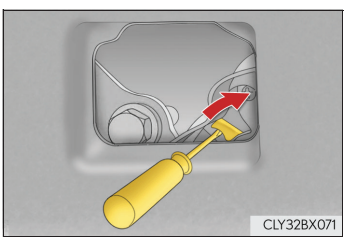
1 Remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and cover as shown in the illustration.



2 Move the lever.

Use a flathead screwdriver to move the lever.



⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Before driving the vehicle**

Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.

■ **Caution while driving**

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit nearby objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

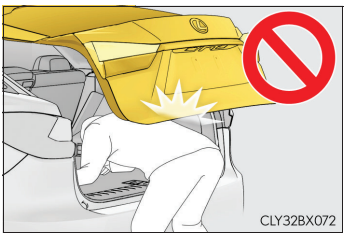
- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, arms, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

⚠ WARNING

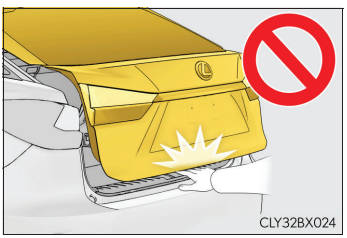
■ Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.


CLY32BX072

- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers, etc., from being caught.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.


CLY32BX024

- Do not pull on the back door damper stay (→P. 150) to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, arms, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

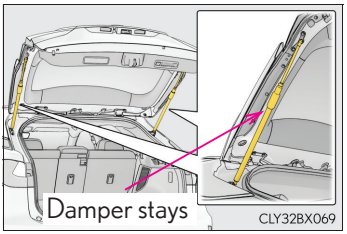
NOTICE

■ **Back door damper stays**

The back door is equipped with damper stays that hold the back door in place.

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.

- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.



Power back door*

The power back door can be locked/unlocked and opened/closed by the following procedures.

Locking and unlocking the power back door from the outside

◆ Smart entry & start system

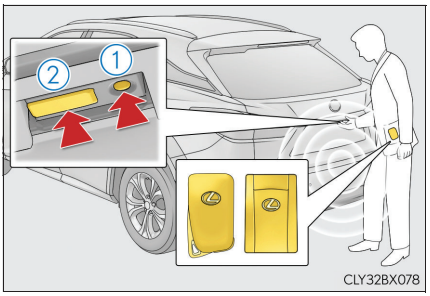
Carry the electronic key to enable this function.

① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

② Unlocks all the doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.



◆ Wireless remote control

→P. 140

Locking and unlocking the power back door from the inside

◆ Door lock switch

→P. 142

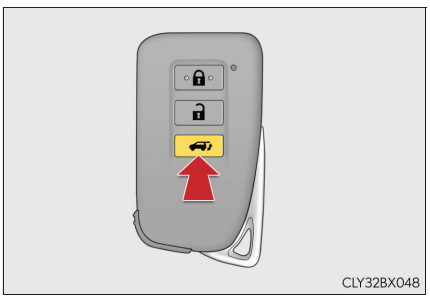
Opening/closing the power back door using the wireless remote control

Press and hold the switch for approximately 1 second.

The power back door can be operated when it is unlocked.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing will stop the operation.

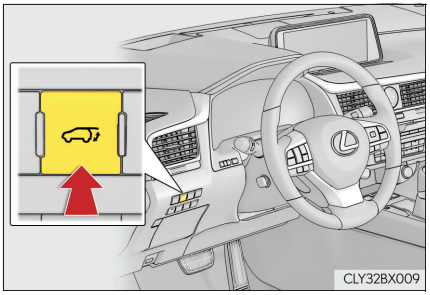
Pressing and holding the switch again for approximately 1 second will operate the power back door in the opposite direction.



*: If equipped

Opening/closing the power back door from the inside

Press and hold the switch for approximately 1 second.



A buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically open or close. However, if the power back door is locked, it will not open.

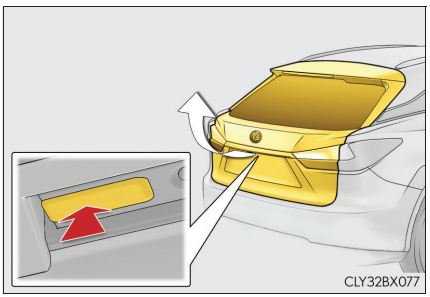
Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing will stop the operation.

Pressing and holding the switch again for approximately 1 second will operate the power back door in the opposite direction.

Opening the power back door from the outside

Back door opener switch

When the power back door is unlocked: Press the back door opener switch.



When the power back door is locked: While carrying an electronic key, press the back door opener switch to unlock the power back door and then press the back door opener switch again.

A buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically open.

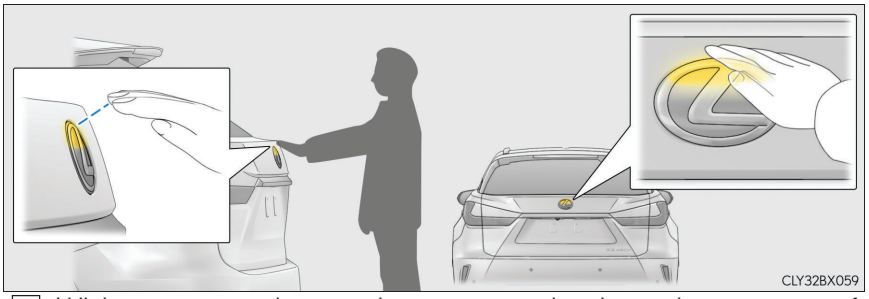
Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing will stop the operation.

Wireless remote control

→P. 151

Touchless sensor (vehicles with a touchless power back door)

The touchless power back door enables automatic opening of the power back door by holding a hand over the upper part of the rear emblem or touching the upper part of the rear emblem. When operating the touchless power back door, make sure that the touchless sensor operation is enabled (→P. 114) and that you are carrying an electronic key.



1 While carrying an electronic key, move your hand over the upper part of the rear emblem slowly and hold it there until the emergency flashers flash. (The upper part of the rear emblem can also be touched.)

When all of the doors are locked: When your hand is detected, the emergency flashers will flash and all of the doors will be unlocked.

2 Move your hand away from the rear emblem and then move it over the upper part of the rear emblem again slowly and hold it there until a buzzer sounds. (The upper part of the rear emblem can also be touched.)

Immediately after the buzzer sounds, move your hand away. If you do not move your hand away, a buzzer will sound twice and the power back door will not operate.

3 Check that the power back door begins to open.

To stop the power back door partway, touch the rear emblem.

To operate the power back door again, use a power back door switch. (→P. 152, 154) (Holding your hand over the upper part of the rear emblem will not operate the touchless sensor again.)

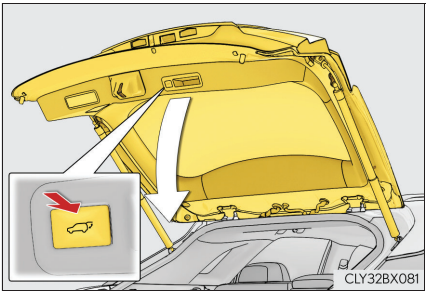
Closing the power back door from the outside

■ Using the power back door switch to close the power back door

Press the switch.

A buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically close.

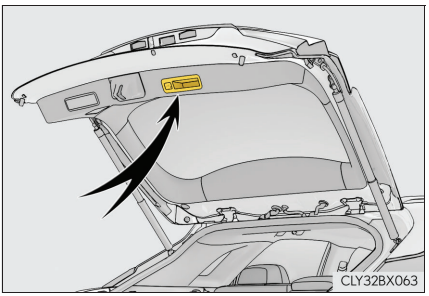
Pressing the switch while the power back door is closing will stop the operation. Pressing the switch again will open the power back door automatically.



■ Using the back door handle to close the power back door

Lower the power back door using the back door handle.

A buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically close.



Changing the setting of the power back door system

The power back door settings can be changed on the multi-information display. (→P. 109)

Adjusting the open position of the power back door

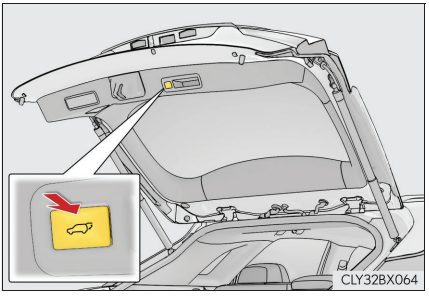
The position at which the power back door will stop when opened automatically can be changed.

▶ When setting using the switch

1 Stop the power back door at the desired position. (→P. 152, 154)

2 Press and hold the switch on the lower part of the power back door for 2 seconds.

- When setting is complete, a buzzer will sound 4 times.
- The next time the power back door is opened, it will stop at that position.



▶ When setting using the multi-information display

The open position can be set using the multi-information display. (→P. 99)

▶ When setting on the audio system screen

The open position can be set on the audio system screen. (→P. 736)

Priority for the open position is given to the last position set using the switch, multi-information display, or navigation system.

To return the adjusted open position to the default position (→P. 159)

■ **Power back door operating conditions**

If the following conditions are met with the power back door operation enabled (→P. 114), the power back door can be opened and closed automatically.

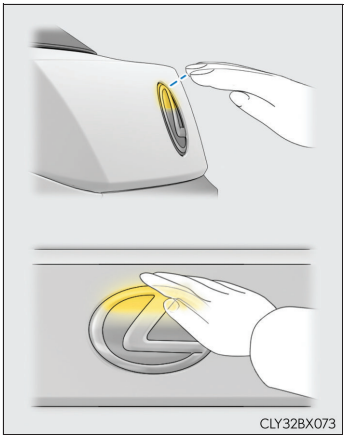
- The power back door is unlocked.
- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the vehicle speed must be lower than 3 km/h (2 mph) and one of the following conditions must be met in addition to the above condition:
  - The parking brake is engaged.
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
  - The shift lever is in P.

▶ Touchless sensor (vehicles with a touchless power back door)

The power back door will open automatically when the touchless sensor operation is enabled (→P. 114) and the following conditions are met:

- The power back door is fully closed.
- The electronic key is within the operational range (→P. 168)
- A hand is held over the upper part of the rear emblem with fingers closed. (The upper part of the rear emblem can also be touched.)

  The power back door may also be operated by holding either of the following over the upper part of the rear emblem. Make sure to hold it close enough to the rear emblem.
  - A gloved hand
  - An elbow



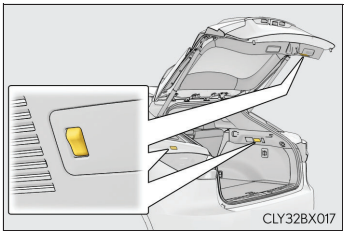
■ **Security feature**

If the power back door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature will automatically lock the doors again.

Luggage compartment lights

The luggage compartment lights turn on when the power back door is opened with the respective luggage compartment light switch on.

When the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

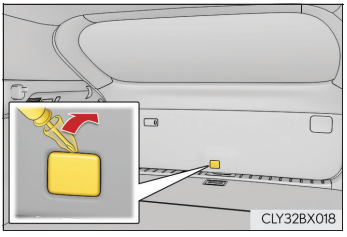


If the power back door opener is inoperative

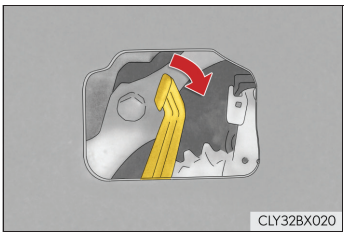
The power back door can be unlocked from the inside.

1 Remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and cover as shown in the illustration.



2 Move the lever.



■ **Back door closer**

In the event that the power back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The back door closer can function when the engine switch is in any mode.
- The power back door can be opened using the back door opener switch even if the back door closer is operating.

■ **Operation of the power back door**

- When the power back door begins to operate, the emergency flashers will flash twice and a buzzer will sound.
- When the power back door is disabled (→P. 114), the power back door will not operate but can be opened and closed manually.
- The power back door turns to manual operation when the back door opener switch is pressed while the power back door is in an automatic opening/closing operation.
- If anything obstructs the power back door while opening, a buzzer will sound and the power back door will stop immediately. If anything obstructs the power back door while closing, a buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically move slightly in the opposite direction and then stop.

■ **Back door reserve lock function**

This function reserves the locking of the power back door when the power back door is open. If the following operations are performed, all of the doors except the power back door will lock and then the power back door will lock when it is completely closed.

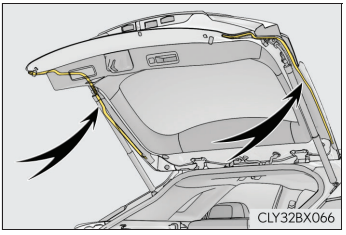
1. Close all of the doors, except the power back door.
2. Perform an automatic closing operation of the power back door and lock the doors using the wireless remote control (→P. 140) or smart entry & start system (→P. 140, 151) while the power back door is closing.

When reconnecting the battery

To enable the power back door to operate properly, close the power back door manually.

Jam protection function

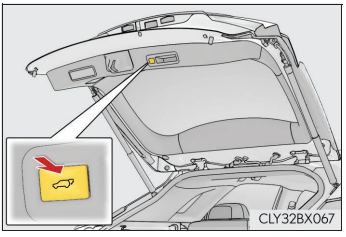
Sensors are installed in the right and left sides of the power back door. When the door is automatically closing and the sensors are pushed due to an object being caught, etc., the jam protection function will operate.
From that position the door will automatically move a little in the opposite direction and then the function will stop.



Returning the power back door opening position to the default setting

Press and hold the switch on the lower part of the power back door for 7 seconds.

A buzzer will sound twice. The next time the power back door is opened, it will open to the default position.



■ **Situations in which the touchless sensor may malfunction (vehicles with a touchless power back door)**

In the following situations, the touchless sensor may operate unintentionally.

To prevent unintentional operation, keep the electronic key out of the operational range or disable the touchless sensor operation. (→P. 114)

- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear emblem, such as in heavy rain
- When the vehicle is being washed and water is applied to the rear emblem
- When dirt is wiped off the rear emblem
- If someone leans toward or against the rear emblem
- When a metal object is brought near the rear emblem
- When a vehicle cover is installed or removed near the rear emblem

■ **Situations in which the touchless sensor may not operate properly (vehicles with a touchless power back door)**

If the touchless sensor does not operate in the following situations, use the back door opener switch to open the power back door. (→P. 154)

- In the following situations, the sensitivity of the touchless sensor may be temporarily reduced and the touchless sensor may not operate:
  - When a large amount of water is applied to the rear emblem, such as in heavy rain
  - When the vehicle is being washed and water is applied to the rear emblem
  - For several seconds after dirt is wiped off the rear emblem
  - When the rear emblem is covered with mud, snow, ice, etc.
  - When the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the rear emblem, such as tall grass or trees
  - When an external radio wave source is near the touchless sensor
- The touchless sensor may not operate in the following situations:
  - When an electronic key is not being carried
  - When an electronic key is not within the operational range
  - When an external radio wave source interferes with the communication between the vehicle and electronic key (→P. 170)
  - When the power back door is not fully closed
  - When a hand is held parallel to the rear emblem*

*: The detection settings can be changed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 736)

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 109, 734)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Before driving the vehicle**

Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the power back door is fully closed. If the power back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.

■ **Caution while driving**

- Keep the power back door closed while driving.
  If the power back door is left open, it may hit nearby objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the power back door before driving.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment.
  In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

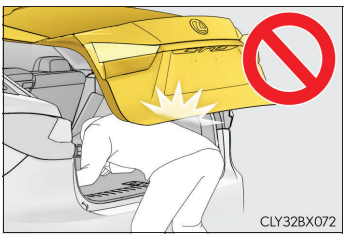
- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the power back door.
  Doing so may cause the power back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, arms, head, or neck to be caught by the closing power back door. (The power back door will not operate when it is disabled: →P. 114)

⚠ WARNING

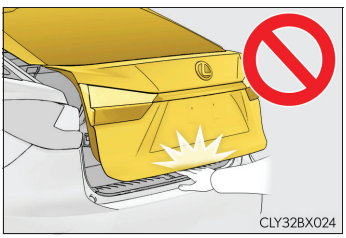
■ Operating the power back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the power back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the power back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the power back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the power back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the power back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The power back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully, while on a steep incline.
  Make sure that the power back door is secure before using the luggage compartment.


CLY32BX072

- When closing the power back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers, etc., from being caught.
- When closing the power back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the power back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.

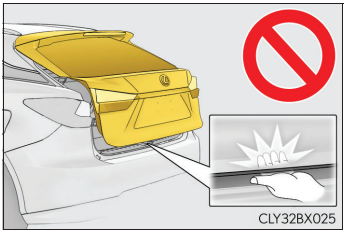

CLY32BX024

- Do not pull on the back door spindle (→P. 165) to close the power back door, and do not hang on the back door spindle.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door spindle to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, arms, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the power back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

WARNING

Back door closer

- In the event that the power back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to get fingers caught or anything else in the power back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.



- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is disabled.

Power back door

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the power back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door system is disabled (→P. 114) while the power back door is operating, the power back door will stop operating. The power back door must then be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the power back door may open or close suddenly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door (→P. 156) are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the power back door may stop opening or closing. The power back door must then be operated manually. Take extra care on an incline in this situation, as the power back door may move suddenly.
- On an incline, the power back door may suddenly shut after it opens. Make sure the power back door is fully open and secure.
- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the power back door must then be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped power back door may suddenly open or close, causing an accident.
  - When the power back door contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation

⚠ WARNING

- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, the power back door may not operate, causing a malfunction, or the power back door may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, arms, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the power back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

■ **Jam protection function**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

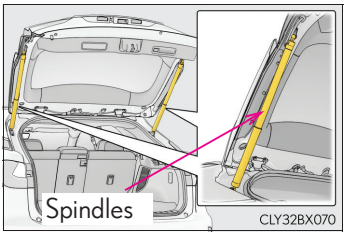
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the power back door fully closes. Be careful not to get fingers caught or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

NOTICE

■ **Back door spindles**

The power back door is equipped with spindles that hold the power back door in place. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door spindle, resulting in malfunction.

- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the spindle rod.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the power back door.
- Do not place your hand on the spindle or apply lateral forces to it.



■ **To prevent back door closer malfunction**

- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating. Applying excessive force may cause the back door closer to malfunction.
- If the power back door is opened and closed repeatedly in a short amount of time, the back door closer may stop operating. In this case, manually open the power back door once and wait for a while before attempting to close it again.

■ **To prevent malfunction of the power back door**

- Make sure that there is no ice between the power back door and frame that would prevent movement of the power back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the power back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the power back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors installed on the right and left edges of the power back door (→P. 159) with a knife or other sharp object. If a sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not close automatically.

NOTICE

■ **Touchless sensor precautions (vehicles with a touchless power back door)**

The touchless sensor is located behind the rear emblem. Observe the following to ensure that the touchless power back door function operates properly:

- Operate the touchless sensor while carrying an electronic key within the operational range.
- Keep the rear emblem clean at all times.

  If the rear emblem is dirty or covered with snow, the touchless sensor may not operate. In this situation, clean off the dirt or snow, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the touchless sensor operates. If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not apply coatings that have a rain clearing (hydrophilic) effect, or other coatings, to the rear emblem.
- Do not park the vehicle near objects that may move and contact the rear emblem, such as tall grass or trees.

  If the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the rear emblem, such as tall grass or trees, the touchless sensor may not operate. In this situation, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the touchless sensor operates. If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not subject the touchless sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact.

  If the touchless sensor or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact, the touchless sensor may not operate properly.

  If the touchless sensor does not operate in the following situations, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - The touchless sensor or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact.
  - The rear emblem is scratched or damaged.
- Do not disassemble the rear emblem.
- Do not attach stickers to the rear emblem.
- Do not paint the rear emblem.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, disable the touchless sensor. (→P. 114)

NOTICE

■ **To prevent unintentional operation (vehicles with a touchless power back door)**

When the touchless sensor is not to be used, disable the touchless sensor operation using the multi-information display (→P. 114)

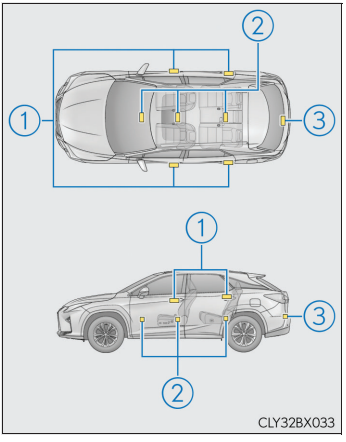
Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 140)
- Locks and unlocks the back door (→P. 146, 151)
- Starts and stops the engine (→P. 245)

Antenna location

① Antennas outside the cabin
② Antennas inside the cabin
③ Antenna outside the luggage compartment



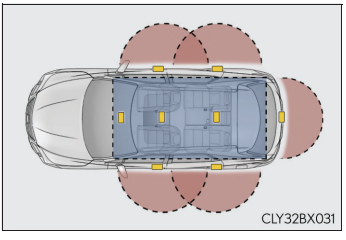
Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)

When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.



■ **Alarms and warning messages**

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warning messages shown on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures in response to any warning message on the multi-information display. (→P. 667)

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sounded.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm pings repeatedly	The engine switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (The driver's door was opened when the engine switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.

■ **If a warning message is displayed indicating that there is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system**

→P. 667

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

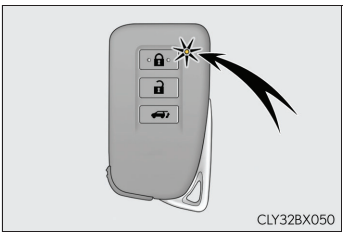
- In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
  - The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
  - The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

Electronic Key battery-Saving Function

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system use weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly.
(Ways of coping: →P. 704)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
  - Another vehicle's electronic key, another electronic key of your vehicle, or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage compartment, floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The door will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 170)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

■ **When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods**

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 734)

■ **To operate the system properly**

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not operate.)

■ **If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 704)
- Starting the engine: →P. 706

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

■ **If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting**

- Locking and unlocking the doors:
  Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P. 140, 151, 704)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P. 706
- Stopping the engine: →P. 245

Certification for the smart entry & start system

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: TMLF15-2
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: November 25, 2014

Signature: Hiroki Okada.
Hiroki Okada

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMLF15-2 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMLF15-2 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMLF15-2 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMLF15-2 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMLF15-2 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMLF15-2 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMLF15-2 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMLF15-2 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMLF15-2 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMLF15-2 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMLF15-2 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMLF15-2 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMLF15-2 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMLF15-2 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMLF15-2 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMLF15-2 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMLF15-2 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMLF15-2 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMLF15-2 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMLF15-2 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMLF15-2 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMLF15-2 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMLF15-2 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMLF15-2 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMLF15-2 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMLF15-2 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMLF15-2 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMLF15-2 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile Toyota Motor Corporation, bu TMLF15-2 ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this BP1EW is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directives 1999/5/EC.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että BP1EW tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel BP1EW in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l'appareil BP1EW est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna BP1EW står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr BP1EW overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät BP1EW in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ BP1EW ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo BP1EW è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el BP1EW cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este BP1EW está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan BP1EW jikkonforma mal-ħtigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme BP1EW vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a BP1EW megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že BP1EW spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento BP1EW je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta BP1EW v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis BP1EW atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka BP1EW atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że BP1EW jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að BP1EW er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret BP1EW er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., декларира, че BP1EW е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declară că aparatul BP1EW este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj BP1EW je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklaroj qe ky BP1EW eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da je BP1EW u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklariše da je BP1EW u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., bu BP1EW ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc CE

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this BC2UM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directives 1999/5/EC.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että BC2UM tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel BC2UM in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l'appareil BC2UM est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna BC2UM står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr BC2UM overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät BC2UM in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ BC2UM ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo BC2UM è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el BC2UM cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este BC2UM está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan BC2UM jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme BC2UM vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a BC2UM megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že BC2UM spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento BC2UM je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta BC2UM v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis BC2UM atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka BC2UM atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że BC2UM jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að BC2UM er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret BC2UM er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., декларира, че BC2UM е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declară că aparatul BC2UM este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj BC2UM je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklaroj qe ky BC2UM eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da je BC2UM u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklariše da je BC2UM u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., bu BC2UM ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc CE

-Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. -Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.
CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html
Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 14CCF is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 14CCF tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 14CCF in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 14CCF est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 14CCF står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 14CCF overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 14CCF in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 14CCF ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 14CCF è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 14CCF cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 14CCF está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 14CCF jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 14CCF vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 14CCF megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 14CCF spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 14CCF je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 14CCF v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 14CCF atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 14CCF atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 14CCF jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 14CCF er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 14CCF er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 14CCF е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 14CCF este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 14CCF je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 14CCF u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 14CCF u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Nepermjet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky 14CCF eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

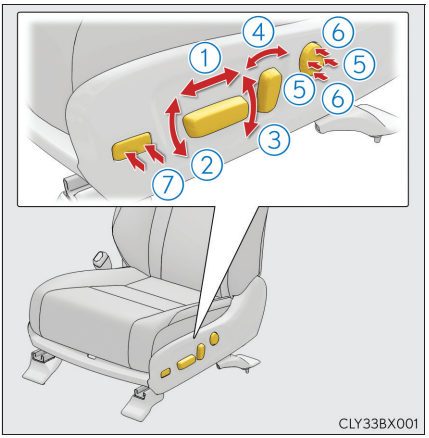
- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P. 168)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details on disabling the entry function.

Front seats

Adjustment procedure

① Seat position adjustment switch
② Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch
③ Vertical height adjustment switch
④ Seatback angle adjustment switch
⑤ Lumbar support firmness adjustment switch
⑥ Lumbar support height adjustment switch (if equipped)
⑦ Seat cushion length adjustment switch (if equipped)



Power easy access system

The driver's seat (on some models) and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P. 195)

WARNING

When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury. Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

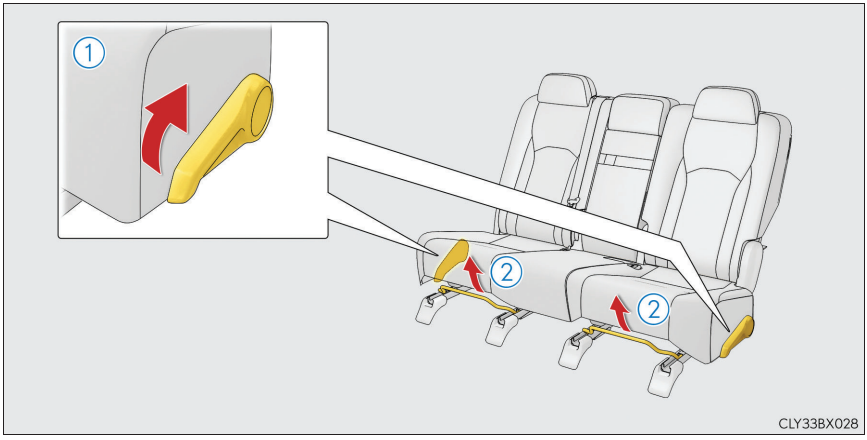
Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Rear seats

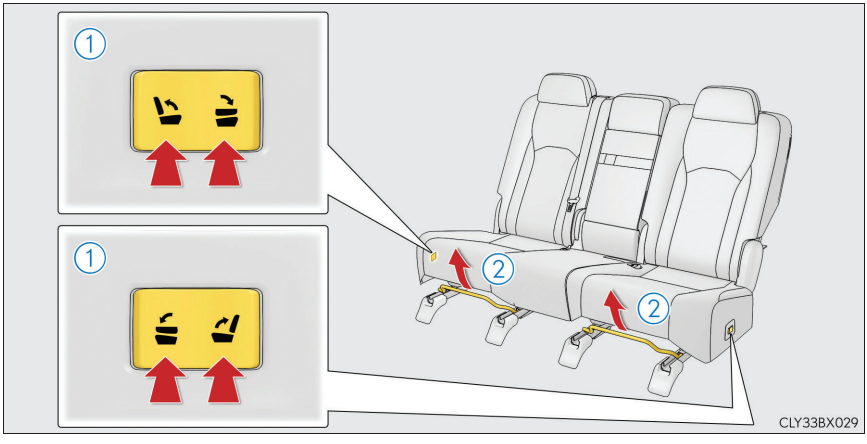
Adjustment procedure

▶ Manual seat



① Seatback angle adjustment lever
② Seat position adjustment lever

▶ Power seat



① Seatback angle adjustment switch
② Seat position adjustment lever

Folding down the rear seatbacks

Before folding down the rear seatbacks

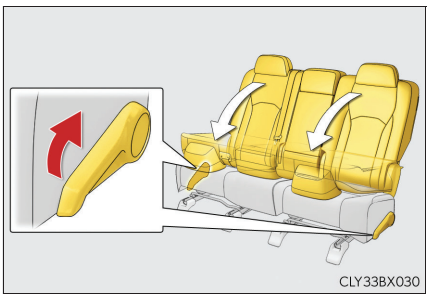
1 Stow the rear center seat belt and seat belt buckles.

2 Lower the rear seat head restraints. (→P. 200)

Folding down the rear seatbacks (manual seat)

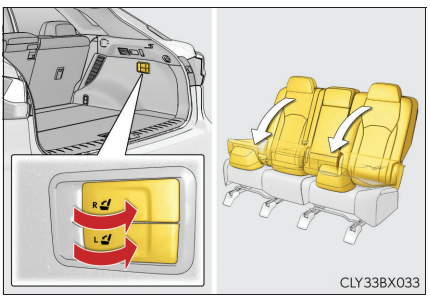
▶ Rear seat lever

Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever and fold down the rear seatback.



▶ Luggage compartment lever

Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever and fold down the rear seatback.



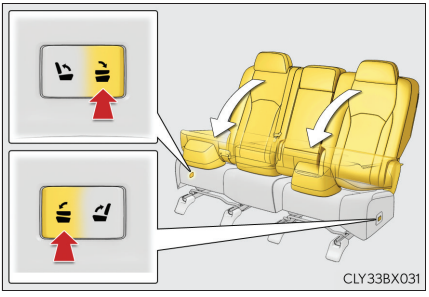
■ Folding down the rear seatbacks (power seat)

Press and hold the switch to fold down the rear seatback.

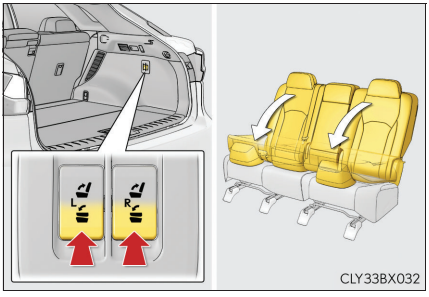
A buzzer will sound and then the operation will start. The buzzer will sound again when the operation is completed.

To stop the operation partway, press either side of the rear seat operation switch of the operating seat. Any rear seat operation switch for the operating seat, regardless of location, can be used to stop the operation. (A buzzer may sound depending on the position that the rear seatback is stopped.)

- Rear seat operation switch (rear seat)



- Rear seat operation switch (luggage compartment)

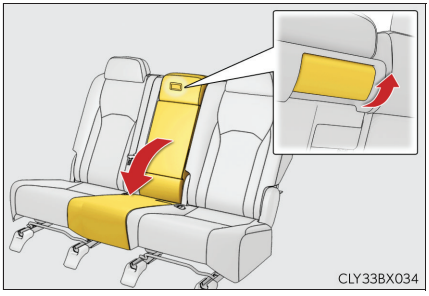


When using the rear seat operation switch (rear seat): If the rear seatback is reclined, bring the rear seatback to the most upright position and press and hold the switch again.

■ Folding down the rear center seatback

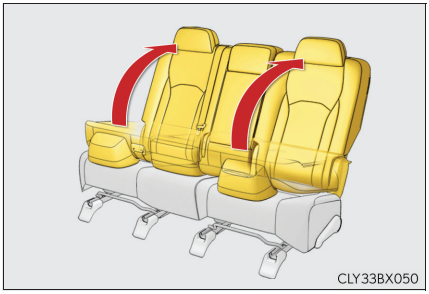
Pull the lock release lever behind the rear seatback and fold the rear seatback down.

To return the rear center seatback to its original position, lift it up until it locks.

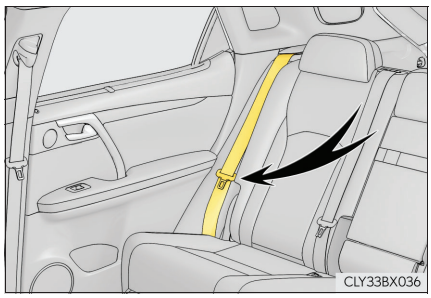


Returning the rear seatbacks (manual seat)

1 Raise the rear seatback until it locks.



2 Check that the plate of the seat belt is on the front side of the seat.



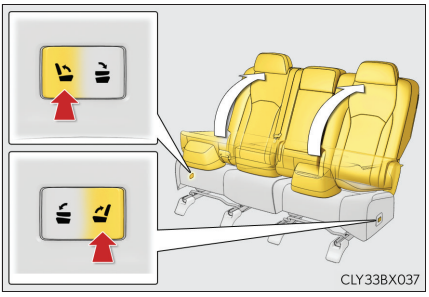
■ Returning the rear seatbacks (power seat)

1 Press and hold the switch to return the rear seatback.

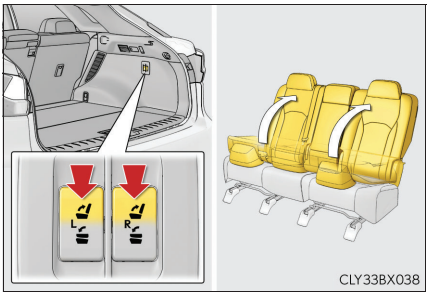
A buzzer will sound and then the operation will start. The buzzer will sound again when the operation is completed.

To stop the operation partway, press either side of the rear seat operation switch of the operating seat. Any rear seat operation switches for the operating seat, regardless of location, can be used to stop the operation. (A buzzer may sound depending on the position that the rear seatback is stopped.)

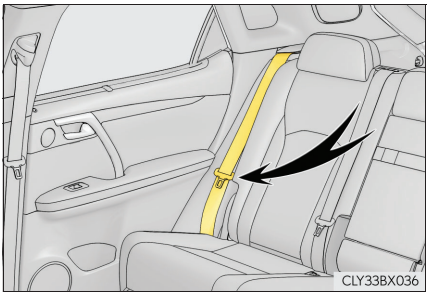
▶ Rear seat operation switch (rear seat)



▶ Rear seat operation switch (luggage compartment)

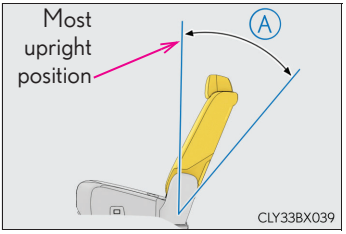


2 Check that the plate of the seat belt is on the front side of the seat.



The rear seatbacks can be adjusted when (power seat)

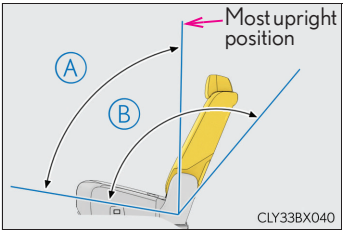
When the rear seatback is in a position within the range A shown in the illustration, the rear seat operation switch (rear seat) can be used to adjust the rear seatback.



The rear seatbacks can be folded down when (power seat)

When all of the following conditions are met, a rear seat operation switch can be used to fold down the rear seatback:

- When the engine switch is turned off or in ACCESSORY mode
- When using the rear seat operation switch (rear seat): The rear seatback is in a position within the range A shown in the illustration.
- When using the rear seat operation switch (luggage compartment): The rear seatback is in a position within the range B shown in the illustration.



- When using the rear seat operation switch (rear seat): The rear door nearest to the seat to be operated is open.
- When using the rear seat operation switch (luggage compartment): The back door is open.
- The other seat operation switch for the seat to be operated is not being pressed.

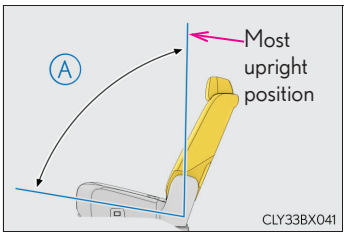
When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, one of the following conditions must also be met in order for the power seat to be operated:

- The parking brake is engaged.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The shift lever is in P.

■ **The rear seat seatbacks can be raised when (power seat)**

When all of the following conditions are met, a rear seat operation switch can be used to return the rear seatback:

- When the engine switch is turned off or in ACCESSORY mode
- When using the rear seat operation switch (rear seat): The rear seatback is in a position within the range A shown in the illustration.
- When using the rear seat operation switch (rear seat): The rear door nearest to the seat to be operated is open.



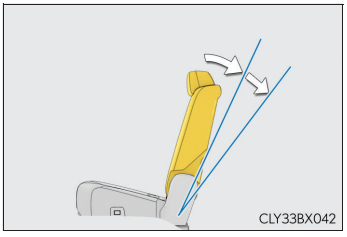
- When using the rear seat operation switch (luggage compartment): The back door is open.
- The other seat operation switch for the seat to be operated is not being pressed.

When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, one of the following conditions must also be met in order for the power seat to be operated:

- The parking brake is engaged.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The shift lever is in P.

■ **Fully reclining the rear seatback (power seat)**

Operate the rear seat operation switch (rear seat) to recline the rear seatback and stop it partway. To set the rear seatback to the rear-most position, press the button again.



■ **Power seat operations (if equipped)**

If a seat cover or seat cushion has been put on the seat, it may not operate properly. When folding down the rear seatback, make sure that there is nothing on the seat that would interfere with the operation.

■ **Rear seatback jam protection function (power seat)**

When folding down or raising the rear seatback, if an object is detected between the rear seatback and seat cushion, the rear seatback will stop and then move in the opposite direction slightly.

A buzzer will sound continuously when the rear seatback stops and intermittently when moving in the opposite direction.

⚠ WARNING

■ When folding down the rear seatbacks and when the rear seatbacks are folded

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold down the rear seatbacks while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded rear seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.

■ When operating the rear seatback

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Keep other passengers from being hit by the rear seatback.
- Do not put your hands between the seats or near the moving parts, or let any part of your body get caught.
- Power seat: Do not let children operate the rear seatback. Other passengers may get caught in the seat.
- Power seat: Check that there are no passengers sitting in a seat before folding it down. Do not let passengers sit in the seat while it is being folded down.

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is reclined excessively, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

■ After returning the rear seatback to the upright position

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure that the rear seatback is securely locked in position by lightly pushing it back and forth.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught between or behind in the rear seatback.

⚠ WARNING

■ Jam protection function (power seat)

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the rear seatback is fully folded forward. Be careful not to get fingers or anything else caught.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to get fingers or anything else caught.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Stowing the seat belts

The seat belt for the rear center seat, seat belt buckles and armrest must be stowed before you fold down the rear seatbacks. (→P. 574)

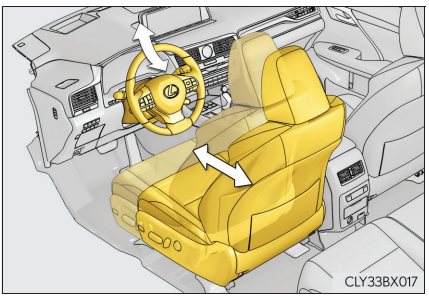
Driving position memory*

This feature automatically adjusts the front seats (on some models), steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

Power easy access system (driver's side only)

The seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to allow the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

When all of the following have been performed, the seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.



- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.

When any of the following has been performed, the seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

■ Operation of the power easy access system

When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

*: If equipped

Driving position memory

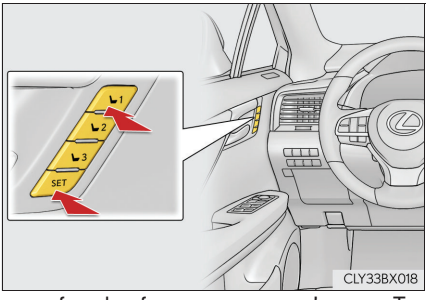
Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be recorded and recalled by pressing a button.

Three different driving positions can be recorded into memory.

Recording procedure

1. Check that the shift lever is in P.
2. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
3. Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.
4. While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

   If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



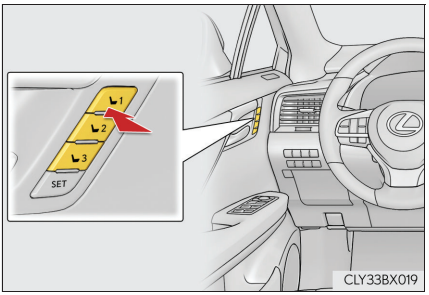
Vehicles with the driving position memory for the front passenger's seat: To record the position of the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the desired position and perform step 4 using the switches on the front passenger's side.

Recall procedure

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



To stop the position recall operation part-way through

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

Seat positions that can be memorized (→P. 185)

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded.

Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off

Driver's seat:
Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

Front passenger's seat:
Recorded seat positions can be recalled up to 180 seconds after the front passenger's door is opened.

In order to correctly use the driving position memory function

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

Memory recall function (driver's side only)

Each electronic key (including a card key) can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

Registering procedure

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.
If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

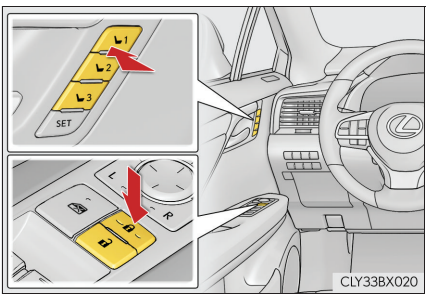
1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Recall the driving position that you want to record.

4 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



Recall procedure

1 Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel). However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.
If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat and steering wheel will move to the recorded position.

Cancelation procedure

Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.
If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

2 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If it button could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

WARNING

Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

Front seats

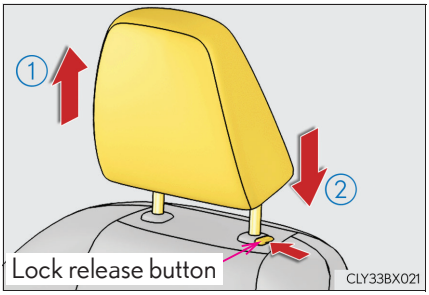
Vertical adjustment

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

② Down

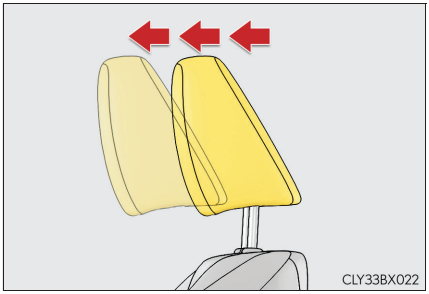
Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



Horizontal adjustment (if equipped)

The position of the head restraint can be adjusted forward in 4 stages.

If the head restraint is pulled forward from the foremost position, it will return to the rearmost position.



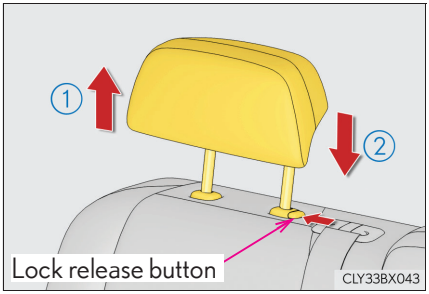
Rear seats

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

② Down

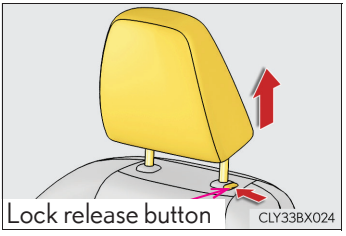
Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



Removing the head restraints

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

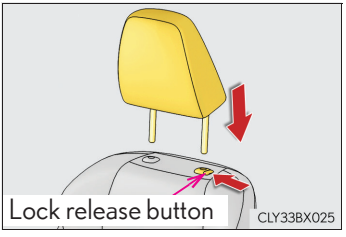
If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat height or angle. (→P. 185, 186)



Installing the head restraints

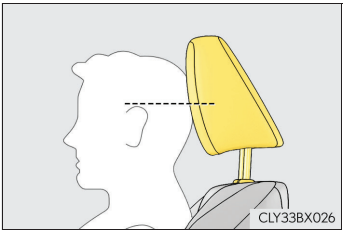
Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.



Adjusting the height of the head restraints

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



Adjusting the center rear seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

WARNING

Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

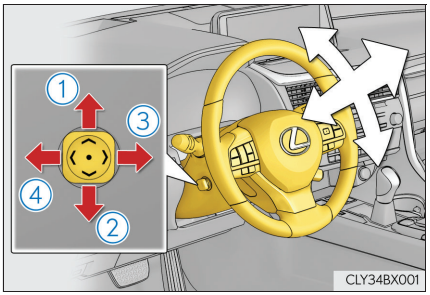
- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:

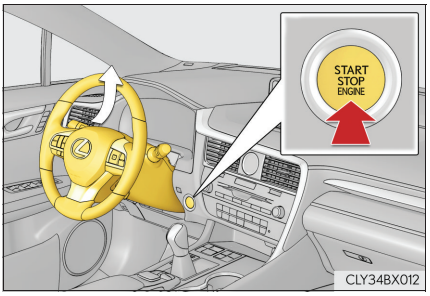
① Up
② Down
③ Toward the driver
④ Away from the driver



Auto tilt away

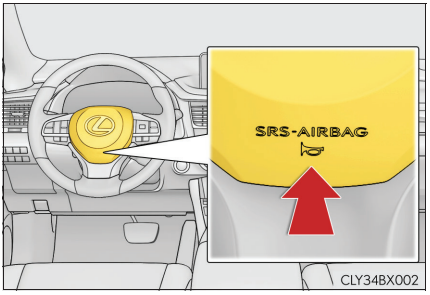
When the engine switch is turned off, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Turning the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.



Horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



■ **The steering wheel can be adjusted when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of engine switch mode.

■ **Automatic adjustment of the steering position (if equipped)**

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P. 195)

■ **Power easy access system**

The steering wheel and driver's seat (on some models) move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P. 195)

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

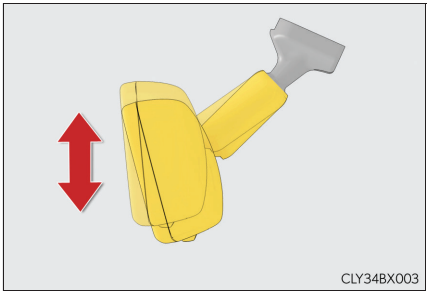
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

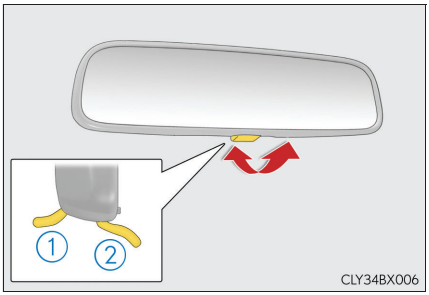


Anti-glare function

▶ Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the lever.

① Normal position
② Anti-glare position



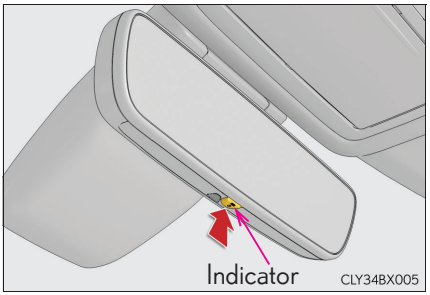
▶ Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Changing automatic anti-glare function mode

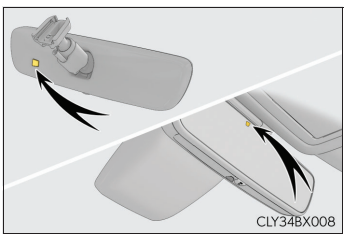
ON/OFF

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator illuminates. The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator also turns off.)



■ **To prevent sensor error (vehicles with auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror)**

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Outside rear view mirrors

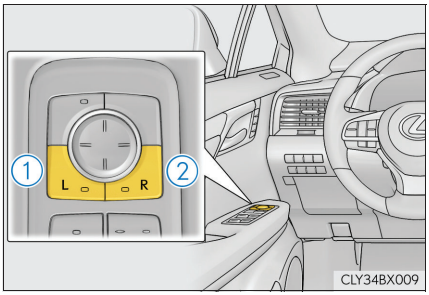
Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

① Left

② Right

Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.



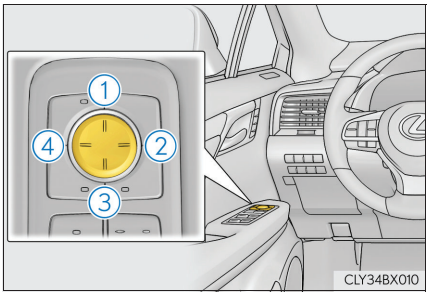
2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

① Up

② Right

③ Down

④ Left

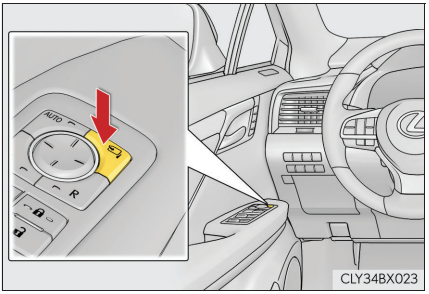


Folding and extending the mirrors

Using the switch

Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.



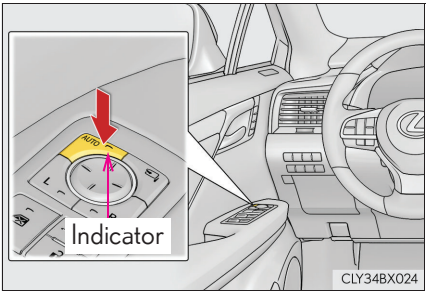
Setting automatic mode

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator will come on.

Pressing the switch once more will return to manual mode.



Linked mirror function when reversing

When the mirror select switch is in the "L" or "R" position, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, select neither "L" nor "R" of the mirror select switch.

■ Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position.

The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.
When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The automatic folding/extending mirror function will return to off as default. To turn the function on, press the switch again to select on.

■ When the mirrors are fogged up

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 540)

■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle (if equipped)

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 195)

■ Auto anti-glare function (if equipped)

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 204)

■ Using automatic mode in cold weather

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this case, remove any ice and snow from the door mirror, then either operate the mirror using manual mode or move the mirror by hand.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

WARNING

■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Power windows

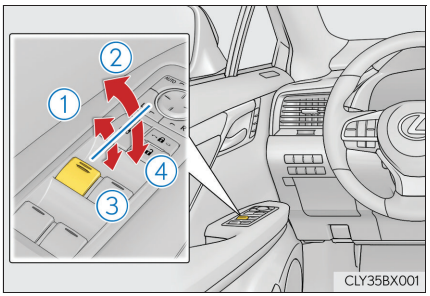
Opening and closing procedures

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.

Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:

① Closing
② One-touch closing*
③ Opening
④ One-touch opening*

*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

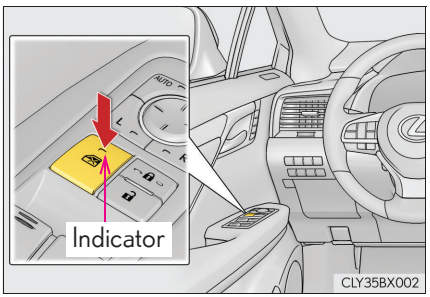


Window lock switch

Press the switch down to lock the passenger windows. The indicator light will come on when the passenger windows are locked.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

The passenger windows can still be opened and closed using the driver's switch even if the lock switch is on.



■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the engine off**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **Pinch protection function**

While the window is opening, if an object is caught between the door and window, window travel is stopped.

■ **If the power window does not close or open normally**

If the jam protection function or pinch protection function is malfunctioning and a window cannot be closed or opened completely, perform the following operations using the power window switch of the relevant door:

- When not closing normally

  With the vehicle stopped and the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function operating, pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. When the window is closed completely, release the switch.

- When not opening normally

  With the vehicle stopped and the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, within 4 seconds of the pinch protection function operating, press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. When the window is opened completely, release the switch.

If the window still cannot be closed or opened completely even though the above operations have been carried out, perform the following initialization procedure.

1. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
2. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position.
3. When the window is closed completely, release the power window switch. Pull and hold the switch in the one-touch closing position again for approximately 4 seconds.
4. Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue pressing the switch for 1 second after the window has opened completely.
5. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue pulling the switch for 1 second after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, perform the procedure again from the beginning.

If, after performing the above procedure correctly, the window continues to close but then re-open slightly or open but then close again slightly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Door lock linked window operation**

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P. 705)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P. 140)

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Alarm (if equipped)**

The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and a power window is closed using the door lock linked power window operation function. (→P. 84)

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

■ **Power windows open warning buzzer**

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Opening and closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P. 210)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.



- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also do not let a child operate power window by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the power window fully closes.

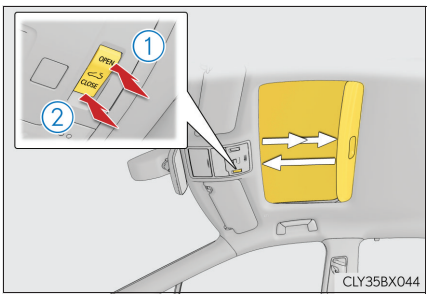
■ Pinch protection function

- Do not use a hand, arm, or clothing to intentionally activate the pinch protection function.
- The pinch protection function may not operate if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Take care so that your hands, arms, or clothing do not get caught.

Moon roof*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Opening and closing



① Opens the moon roof*

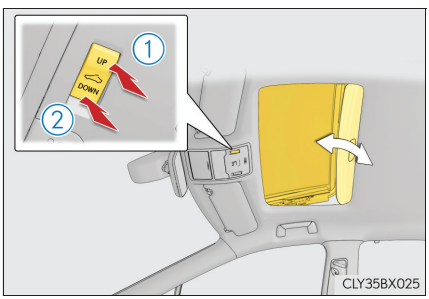
The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

② Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either side of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

Tilting up and down



① Tilts the moon roof up*

② Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either side of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

*: If equipped

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once the driver's door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P. 705)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P. 140)

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1
The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Alarm (if equipped)

The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and the moon roof is closed using the door lock linked moon roof operation function. (→P. 84)

■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

⚠ WARNING

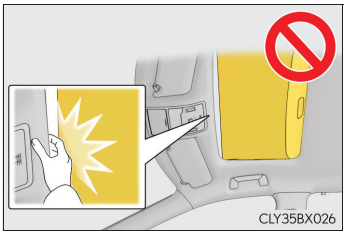
Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

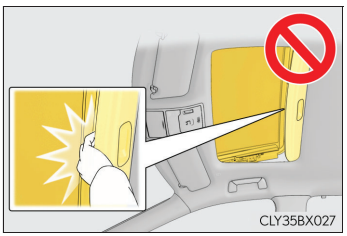
■ Opening the moon roof

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Opening and closing the moon roof

- The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations.
  In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.


CLY35BX026


CLY35BX027

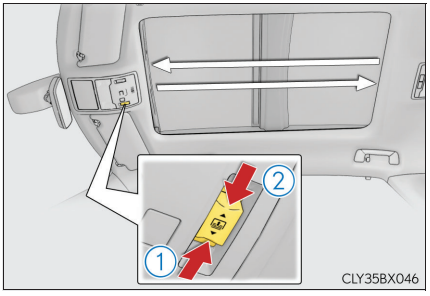
■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

Panoramic moon roof*

Use the overhead switches to operate the panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade.

Opening and closing the electronic sunshade



① Opens the electronic sunshade

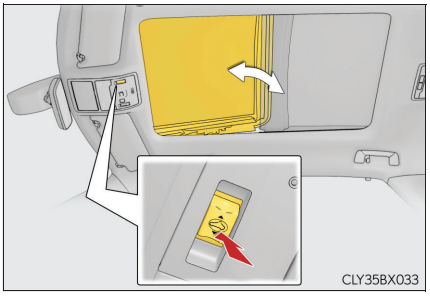
Slide and hold the switch backward. The electronic sunshade will fully open automatically.*

② Closes the electronic sunshade

Slide and hold the switch forward. The electronic sunshade will fully close automatically.*

*: Quickly slide and release the switch in either direction to stop the electronic sunshade partway.

Tilting the panoramic moon roof up and down



Tilts the panoramic moon roof up (press)*

When the panoramic moon roof is tilted up, the electronic sunshade will open to the half-open position of the roof.

*: Lightly press the switch again to stop the panoramic moon roof partway.

Tilts the panoramic moon roof down (press and hold)

The panoramic moon roof can be tilted down only when it is in the tilt-up position.

*: If equipped

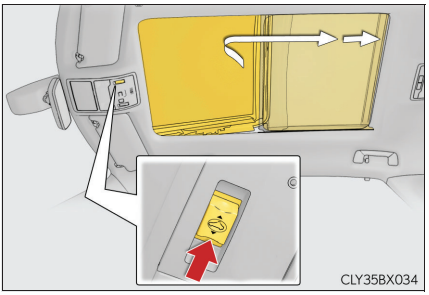
Opening and closing the panoramic moon roof

Opens the panoramic moon roof*

Slide and hold the switch backward. The panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade will open automatically.

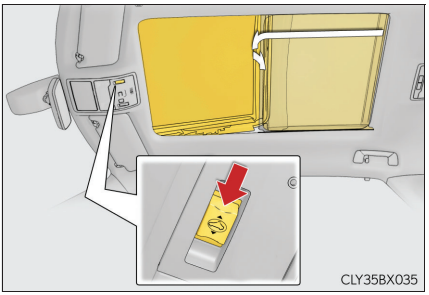
The panoramic moon roof can be opened from the tilt-up position.

*: Quickly slide and release the switch in either direction to stop the panoramic moon roof partway.



Closes the panoramic moon roof

Slide and hold the switch forward. The panoramic moon roof will fully close automatically.



■ The panoramic moon roof can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the panoramic moon roof after turning the engine off

The panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once the driver's door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the panoramic moon roof and the frame in the following situations, travel is stopped and the panoramic moon roof opens slightly:

- The panoramic moon roof is closing or tilting down.
- The electronic sunshade is closing.

■ Door lock linked panoramic moon roof operation

- The panoramic moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P. 705)
- The panoramic moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P. 140)

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Closing both the panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade**

Slide the switch forward.

The electronic sunshade will close to the half-open position and pause.The panoramic moon roof will then fully close. Then the electronic sunshade will fully close.

■ **When the panoramic moon roof or electronic sunshade does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Slide and hold the switch or switch forward. Continue pressing the switch for approximately 10 seconds after the panoramic moon roof or electronic sunshade closes and reopens. The panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade will start to close.*

4 Check that the panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade are fully closed and release the switch.

*: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

If the panoramic moon roof or electronic sunshade does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Alarm (if equipped)**

The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and the panoramic moon roof is closed using the door lock linked panoramic moon roof operation function. (→P. 84)

■ **Panoramic moon roof open warning buzzer**

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the panoramic moon roof open.

■ **Customization**

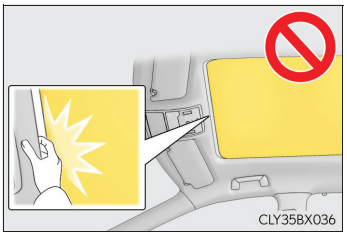
Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

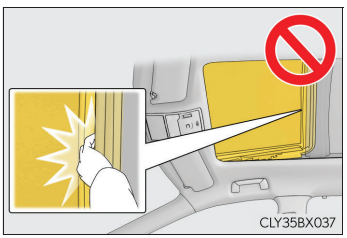
Opening and closing the electronic sunshade

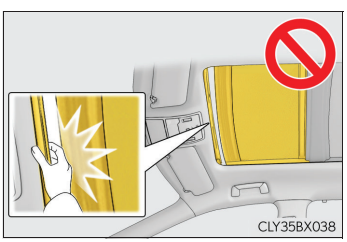
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the electronic sunshade is being operated.
- Do not let a child operate the electronic sunshade. Closing the electronic sunshade on someone can cause death or serious injury.



Opening and closing the panoramic moon roof

- The driver is responsible for panoramic moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the panoramic moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the panoramic moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the panoramic moon roof is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the panoramic moon roof, operate the panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the panoramic moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate panoramic moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the panoramic moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.





Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the panoramic moon roof or electronic sunshade is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

WARNING

■ To prevent burns or injuries

Do not touch the area between the underside of the panoramic moon roof and the electronic sunshade. Your hand may get caught and you could injure yourself. Also, if the vehicle is left in direct sunlight for a long time, the underside of the panoramic moon roof could become very hot and could cause burns.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the panoramic moon roof

- Before opening the panoramic moon roof, make sure that there are no foreign objects, such as stones or ice, around the opening.
- Do not hit the surface or edge of the panoramic moon roof with hard objects.
- Do not continuously press the  switch after the panoramic moon roof has been fully opened or closed.

■ After the vehicle has been washed or rained on

Before opening the panoramic moon roof, wipe any water off the panoramic moon roof. Otherwise, water may enter the cabin when the panoramic moon roof is opened.

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle..... 226

Cargo and luggage..... 235

Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)..... 237

Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package)..... 238

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch..... 245

Automatic transmission..... 250

Turn signal lever..... 256

Parking brake..... 257

Brake Hold..... 261

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch..... 263

AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)..... 267

Automatic High Beam..... 272

Fog light switch..... 276

Windshield wipers and washer..... 277

Rear window wiper and washer..... 283

Driving 4

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap.....285

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System+.....289

PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system).....298

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist).....311

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control).....322

RSA (Road Sign Assist).....331

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range.....336

Dynamic radar cruise control.....348

Cruise control.....360

Stop & Start system.....364

Lexus parking assist-sensor.....374

Lexus parking assist monitor.....383

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor).....399

- BSM function.....405
- RCTA function.....409

Driving mode select switch.....415

All-wheel drive lock switch.....419

Driving assist systems.....420

4-6. Driving tips

Winter driving tips.....427

Utility vehicle precautions.....431

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Starting the engine

→P. 245

Driving

1. With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 250)
2. Release the parking brake. (→P. 258)

   If the parking brake is in automatic mode, the parking brake is released automatically when shifting the shift lever to any position other than P. (→P. 257)
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

1. With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

   RX200t: If the Stop & Start system is enabled, depressing the brake pedal will stop the engine.
2. If necessary, set the parking brake. (→P. 258)

   If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 250)

Parking the vehicle

1. With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 250)
3. Set the parking brake. (→P. 258)

   If the parking brake is in automatic mode, the parking brake is set automatically when shifting the shift lever to P. (→P. 257)
4. Press the engine switch to stop the engine.
5. Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

   If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

Starting off on a uphill

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 250)

2 Pull the parking brake switch and parking brake is set manually. (→P. 258)

3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

4 Press the parking brake switch and parking brake is released manually. (→P. 258)

■ **When starting off on a uphill**

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P. 420)

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Engine speed while driving**

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed while sport mode is selected

■ **Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)**

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.
- A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

- When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.
  - When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
  - When the accelerator pedal is depressed too while the vehicle is in reverse.
- While Drive-Start Control is being activated, your vehicle may have trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow. In such case, deactivate TRC (→P. 422) to cancel Drive-Start Control so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

■ **Breaking in your new Lexus**

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (200 miles):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 800 km (500 miles):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 2000 km (1200 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 723)

■ **Idling time before engine stop (RX200t)**

To prevent damage to the turbocharger, allow the engine to idle immediately after high-speed driving or hill climbing.

To allow the engine to idle when the vehicle is stopped, disable the Stop & Start system by pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch. (→P. 367) (With the Stop & Start system enabled, the engine will be stopped by the Stop & Start system when the vehicle is stopped.)

Driving condition	Idling time
Normal city driving	Not necessary
High-speed driving (Constant speed of approx. 100 km/h [62 mph])	Approximately 1 minute
Steep hill driving or continuous driving at 100 km/h (62 mph) or more (race track driving etc.)	Approximately 2 minutes

■ **Eco-friendly driving**

→P. 119

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
  The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 651
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill. Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 250)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.
- AWD models: Do not drive the vehicle off-road.
  This is not an AWD vehicle designed for off-road driving. Proceed with all due caution if it becomes unavoidable to drive off-road.
- Do not drive across a river or through other bodies of water.
  This may cause electric/electronic components to short circuit, damage the engine or cause other serious damage to the vehicle.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ When shifting the shift lever

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Shifting the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
  Shifting the shift lever to any position other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)**

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.
Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Front brakes only: Moderate levels of brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced front braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ **When the vehicle is stopped**

- Do not race the engine.
  If the shift lever is in any position other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always shift the shift lever to P, apply the parking brake, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When taking a nap in the vehicle**

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ **When braking**

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
  Have your brakes fixed immediately.

■ **If the vehicle becomes stuck (AWD models)**

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- RX200t: Make sure to idle the engine immediately after high speed driving or hill climbing. Stop the engine only after the turbocharger has cooled down.
  Failure to do so may cause damage to the turbocharger.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 673, 687)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain, etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transaxle, transfer (AWD models), rear differential (AWD models), etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft (AWD models), bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

⚠ WARNING

■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the luggage cover
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.

Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

WARNING

When using a roof luggage carrier (vehicles with roof rails)

Observe the following precautions:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P. 720)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 75 kg (165 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

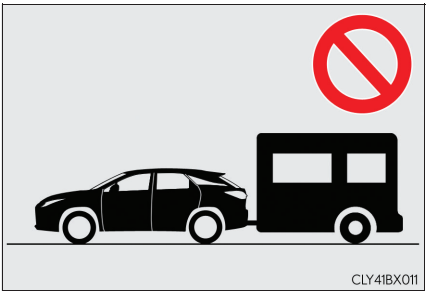
NOTICE

When loading cargo (vehicles with a moon roof or panoramic moon roof)

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof or panoramic moon roof.

Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package)

The strain of towing a trailer will have a negative impact on the running performance, handling, fuel consumption and endurance of your vehicle. Use the vehicle features in the correct manner and operate the vehicle with care for safer driving and optimal comfort. Damage and/or malfunctions that occur as a result of towing performed for commercial purposes are not covered by the Lexus warranty.

Ask your local authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details before towing, as there are additional legal requirements in some countries.

Weight limits

Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible drawbar load before towing. (→P. 720)

Towing hitch/bracket

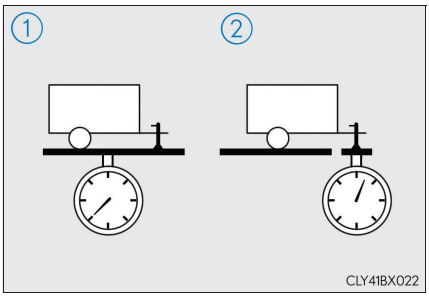
Lexus recommends the use of the Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

To prevent an accident

The handling of the vehicle will feel different when towing a trailer. Beware of the 3 most common causes of towing-related accidents: driver error, excessive speed, and overloading.

Important points regarding trailer loads

Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load



① Total trailer weight

Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P. 720)

② Permissible drawbar load

Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is greater than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) or 4% of the towing capacity. Do not let the drawbar load exceed the indicated weight. (→P. 720)

Information tag (manufacturer's label)

① Gross vehicle mass

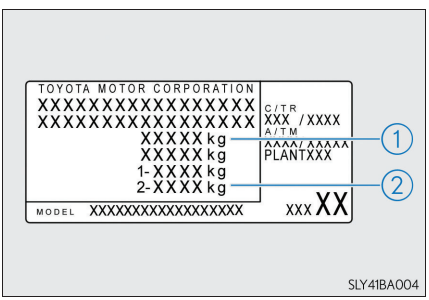
The combined weight of the driver, passengers, luggage, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load should not exceed the gross vehicle mass by more than 100 kg (220.5 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

② Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

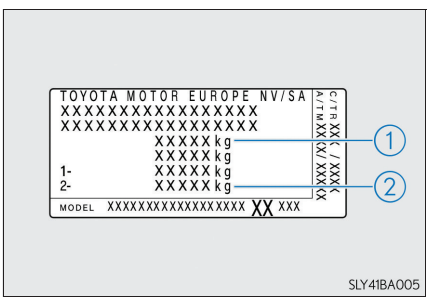
The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible axle capacity by 15% or more. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

▶ Type A

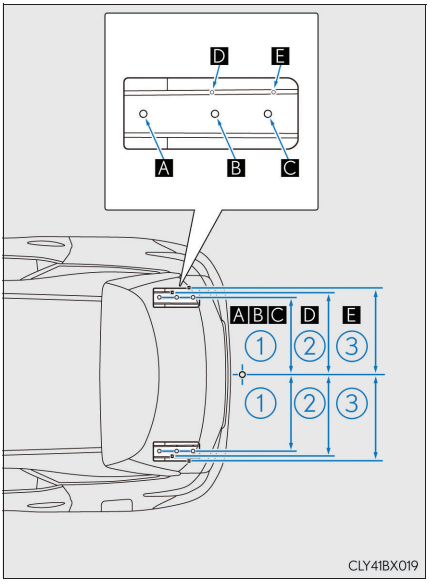


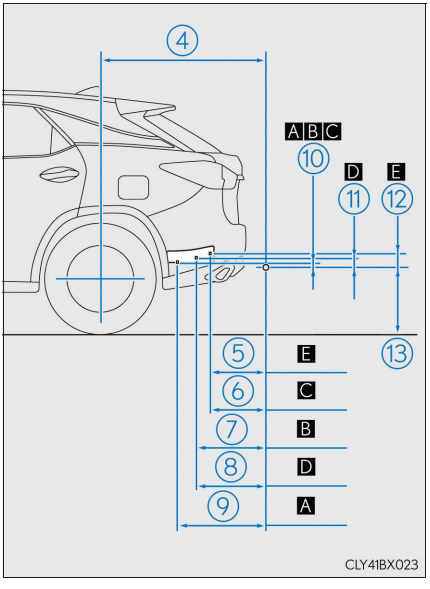
▶ Type B



Installation positions for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball

① 528 mm (20.8 in.)
② 566 mm (22.3 in.)
③ 568 mm (22.4 in.)
④ 1108 mm (43.6 in.)
⑤ 352 mm (13.9 in.)
⑥ 363 mm (14.3 in.)
⑦ 461 mm (18.1 in.)
⑧ 468 mm (18.4 in.)
⑨ 597 mm (23.5 in.)
⑩ 21 mm (0.8 in.)
⑪ 55 mm (2.2 in.)
⑫ 77 mm (3.0 in.)
⑬ 386 mm (15.2 in.)





■ Tire information

- Ensure that your vehicle's tires are properly inflated. Adjust the tire pressure to the recommended pressure. (→P. 731)
- Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

■ Safety checks before towing

- Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that you will not be towing a load that exceeds the maximum permissible axle capacity.
- Ensure that the trailer load is secure.
- Supplementary outside rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

■ Maintenance

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

Checking connections between trailer and lights

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

Practicing driving with a coupled trailer

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance

At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering

Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

Important points regarding turning

The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

■ **Important points regarding stability**

Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong cross-winds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehicle straight ahead while braking.

■ **Passing other vehicles**

Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

■ **Transmission information**

To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance, when using engine braking, do not use the transmission in D. If in the M mode, the transmission shift range position must be in 4 or lower. (→P. 250)

■ **If the engine overheats**

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place.
(→P. 712)

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

⚠ WARNING

Follow all the instructions described in this section.
Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Trailer towing precautions**

When towing, make sure that none of the weight limits are exceeded.
(→P. 239)

■ **To avoid accident or injury**

- Vehicles with a compact spare tire:
  Do not tow a trailer when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.
- Vehicles with the emergency tire puncture repair kit:
  Do not tow a trailer when the tire installed is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.
- Do not use the following systems when trailer towing.
  - Cruise control*
  - Dynamic radar cruise control*
  - Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*
  - LDA (Lane-Departure Alert with steering control)*
  - LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*
  - PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)*
  - BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

  *: If equipped

■ **Vehicle speed in towing**

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

■ **Before descending hills or long declines**

Reduce speed and downshift. However, never downshift suddenly while descending steep or long downhill grades.

■ **Operation of the brake pedal**

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time.
Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

NOTICE

■ **Do not directly splice trailer lights**

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift lever is in P.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

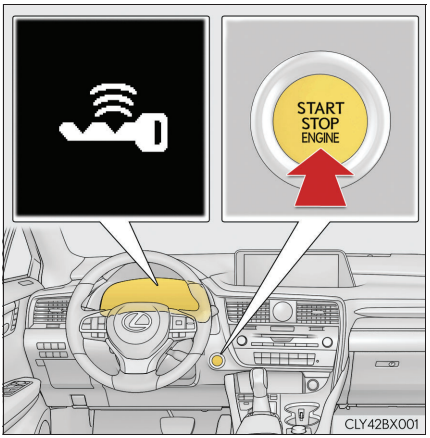
 and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.
If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

4 Press the engine switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



Stopping the engine

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

3 Set the parking brake. (→P. 257)

If the parking brake is in automatic mode, the parking brake is set automatically when shifting the shift lever to P. (→P. 257)

4 Press the engine switch.

5 Release the brake pedal and check that the display on the meters is off.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)

① Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

② ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

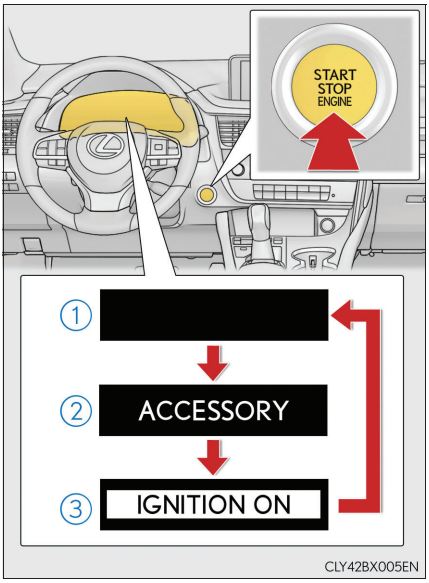
"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the meters.

③ IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

"IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the meters.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.



When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

3 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" is displayed on the multi-information display and then press the engine switch once.

4 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" on the multi-information display is off.

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 137

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 170

■ **Note for the entry function**

→P. 171

■ **If the engine does not start**

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 77)
  Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The engine may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P. "To Start Vehicle, Put Shift Lever into P" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

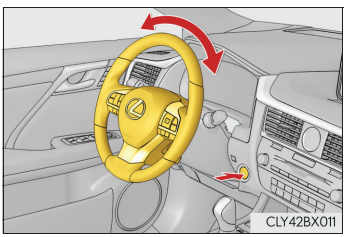
■ **Steering lock**

After turning the engine switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**

"Steering Wheel Lock Press Engine Switch while Turning Wheel" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Check that the shift lever is in P. Press the engine switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.



■ **Steering lock motor overheating prevention**

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, operation of the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine switch. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ **When "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ If the electronic key battery is depleted

→P. 632

■ Operation of the engine switch

- When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not start or the engine switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated by a customized setting

→P. 704

⚠ WARNING

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 651)
However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running on.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the meters while the engine is not running, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off.
- Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

■ When starting the engine

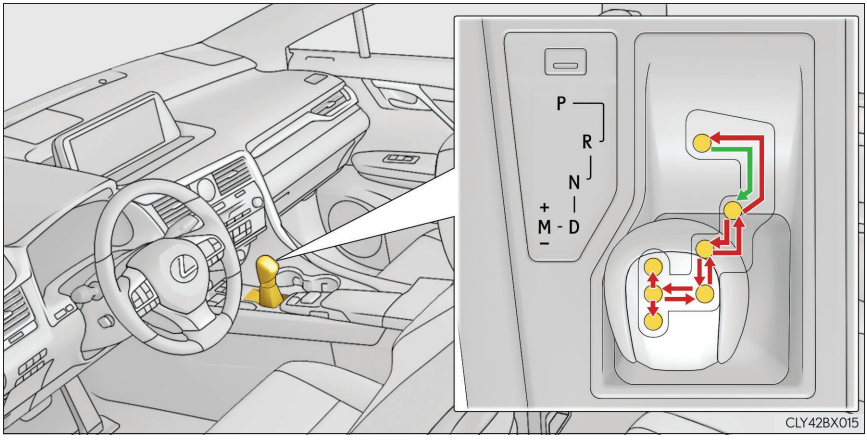
- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Automatic transmission

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Condition in which the power is not transmission
D	Normal driving*1
M	M mode driving*2 (→P. 252)

*1: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions.
Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving.

*2: Selecting gears using M mode fixes the gear step, controls engine braking force, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

Selecting the driving mode

→P. 415

Selecting shift ranges in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" or "+" paddle shift switch.

When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range will be downshifted to a range that enables engine braking force that is suitable to driving conditions.

When the "+" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range will be one gear higher than the gear in use during normal D position driving.

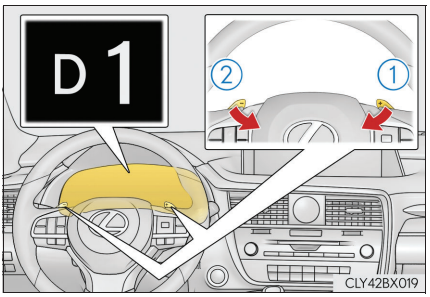
Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.

① Upshifting

② Downshifting

8-speed models: The selected shift range, from D1 to D8, will be displayed on the meters.

6-speed models: The selected shift range, from D1 to D6, will be displayed on the meters.



Shift ranges and their functions

Meter display	Function
D2 - D8 (8-speed models)	A gear in the range between 1 and the selected gear is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D2 - D6 (6-speed models)	
D1	Setting the gear at 1

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

Selecting gears in the M position

To enter M mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gears can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches (if equipped), allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.

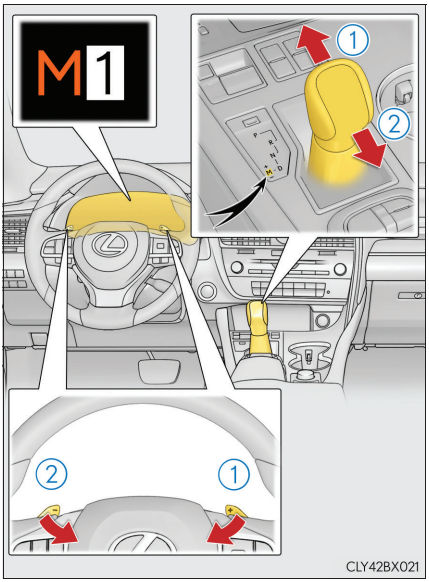
① Upshifting

② Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated.

8-speed models: The selected gear, from M1 to M8, will be fixed and displayed on the meters.

6-speed models: The selected gear, from M1 to M6, will be fixed and displayed on the meters.



When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches (if equipped) are operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When the automatic transmission fluid or engine coolant temperature is low.
- When automatic transmission fluid temperature is high (upshift only).
- When the needle of the tachometer is in the red zone (the range which exceeds the allowable revs of the engine).

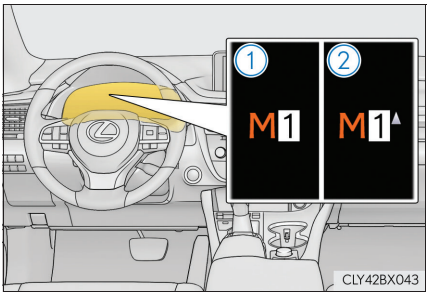
In the following situations, the gear will not shift even if the shift lever or paddle shift switches (if equipped) are operated.

- The vehicle speed is low (upshift only).

Gear Shift Indicator (if equipped)

The Gear Shift Indicator display is a guide to help the driver achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions within limits of engine performance.

① When not in operation
② Shift-up indicator



Gear Shift Indicator function

- This function automatically operates during M mode.
- By following the Shift-up indicator and shifting up accordingly, it is possible to achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions.
- The Gear Shift Indicator does not have a similar function for downshifting.
- Depending on the driving conditions, the Gear Shift Indicator may not display the Shift-up indicator while driving in M mode.

■ **Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)**

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- The "+" paddle shift switch is held down for a period of time
- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D

■ **To protect the automatic transmission**

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display and the vehicle will go into transmission protection mode automatically. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **When driving with cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activated**

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range will not be canceled.

- Vehicles with paddle shift switches (8-speed models): While driving in D position, downshifting to 7, 6, 5 or 4. (→P. 336, 348, 360)
- Vehicles with paddle shift switches (6-speed models): While driving in D position, downshifting to 5 or 4. (→P. 336, 348, 360)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→P. 415)

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.

- When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed too while the vehicle is in reverse.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

→P. 703

■ **AI-SHIFT**

- The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.

  The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in D. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

- G AI-SHIFT automatically selects a suitable gear for sporty driving according to driver's input and driving conditions. G AI-SHIFT operates automatically when the shift lever is in D and sport mode is selected for the driving mode. (Selecting normal mode with the driving mode select switch or shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels this function.)

⚠ WARNING

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

■ **Gear Shift Indicator display (if equipped)**

For safety, the driver should not look only at the display. Refer to the display when it is safe to do so while considering actual traffic and road conditions.
Failure to do so may lead to an accident.

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

① Right turn

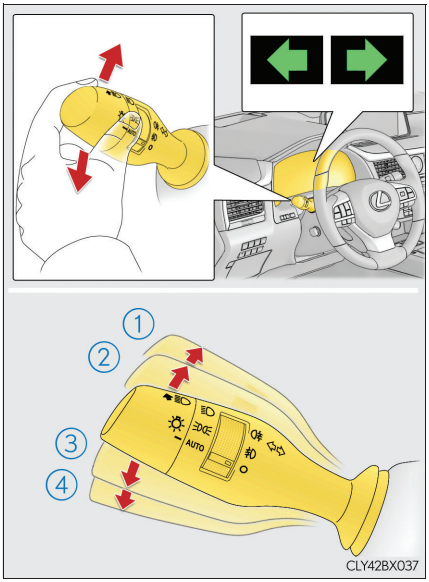
② Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

③ Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

④ Left turn



■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If the indicator flashes faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ **If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed**

Operate the lever again.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

Parking brake

A selections can be made as desired from the following modes.

Automatic mode

The parking brake is set or released automatically according to shift lever operation.

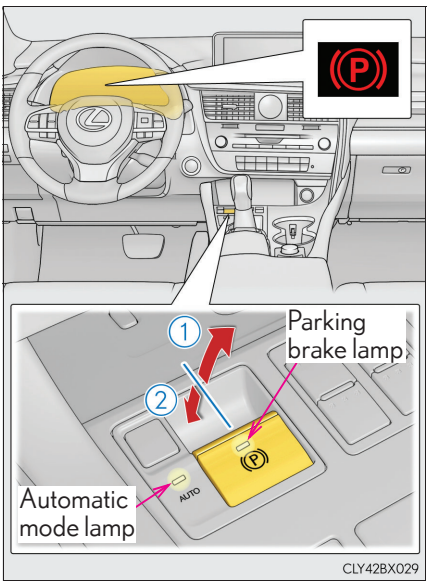
Even when in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set and released manually. (→P. 258)

① Turns automatic mode on (while the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until the automatic mode lamp turns on)

- When the shift lever is moved out of P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp turn off.
- When the shift lever is moved into P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp turn on.

Operate the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

② Turns automatic mode off (while the vehicle is stopped, press and hold the parking brake switch until the automatic mode lamp turns off)



Manual mode

The parking brake can be set and released manually.

① Sets the parking brake

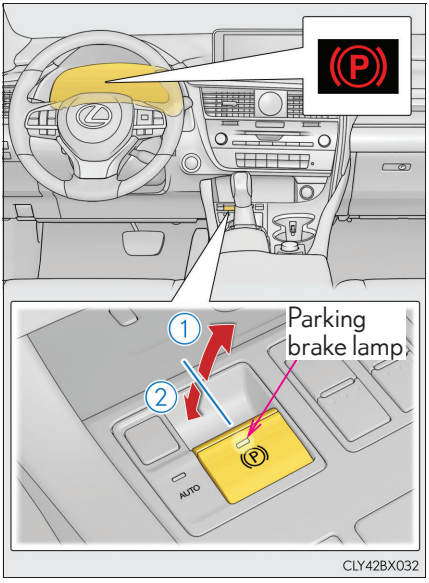
The parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp will turn on.

Pull and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

② Releases the parking brake

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp turn off.

If the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp flashes, operate the switch again. (→P. 660)



■ **Parking brake operation**

- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

■ **If "Parking Brake Overheated Parking Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ **If "EPB Activation Stopped Incompletely" or "Parking Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

Operate the parking brake switch. If the message does not disappear after operating the switch several times, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Parking brake operation sound**

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp**

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp will turn on and stay on as described below:

  IGNITION ON mode: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in IGNITION ON mode: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.

- When the engine switch is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Changing the mode**

When changing the automatic mode on/off, the message will be shown on the multi-information display and the buzzer sounds.

■ **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "Release Parking Brake" is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake system warning light comes on**

→P. 660

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P. 428

WARNING

When parking the vehicle

Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

When parking the vehicle

Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

When the system malfunctions

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction

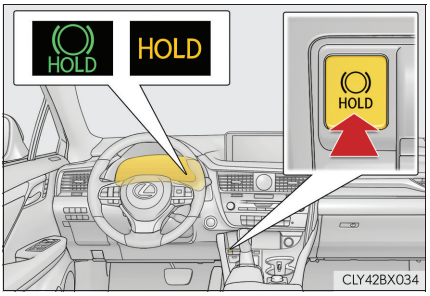
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately if this occurs.

Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in D, M or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D or M to allow smooth start off.

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator (green) comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator (yellow) comes on.



■ Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

■ Brake hold function

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes**

The parking brake will not be released automatically. With the brake pedal depressed, release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch, making sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P. 257)

■ **If "Brake Hold Fault Depress Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake hold operated indicator flashes**

→P. 660

⚠ WARNING

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**

When using the brake hold system on a steep incline exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle in such a situation.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

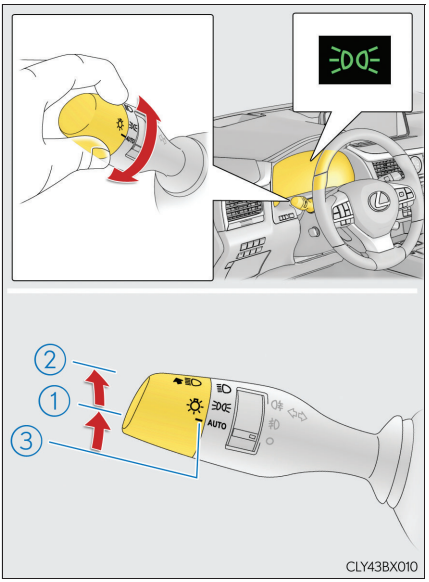
Operating instructions

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:

① The front position, tail, rear side marker, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

② The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.

③ AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P. 265) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
(When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)



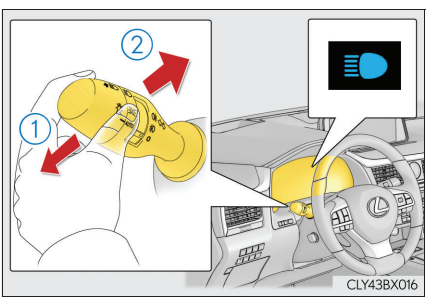
Turning on the high beam headlights

① With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

② Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.



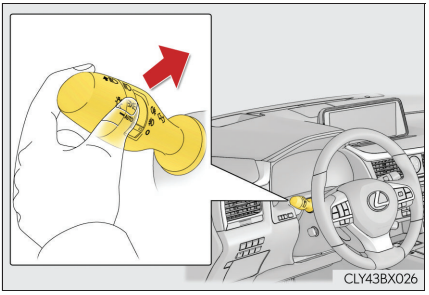
On vehicles with AHS (Adaptive High-beam System), the high beams cannot be illuminated by pulling the lever toward you when the engine switch is off.

Follow me home system

This system allows the headlights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch is in AUTO after turning the engine switch off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.



Cornering lights (if equipped)

- When the steering wheel or turn signal lever is operated while the headlights are on (low beam), a cornering light will turn on and light up the direction of movement of the vehicle. The cornering lights are designed to ensure excellent visibility when making a turn at an intersection.

  However, when vehicle speed is approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or higher, the cornering lights will not turn on.
- When the shift lever is in R while the headlights are on (low beam), both cornering lights will turn on. This is designed to enhance visibility when parking.

■ **Daytime running light system**

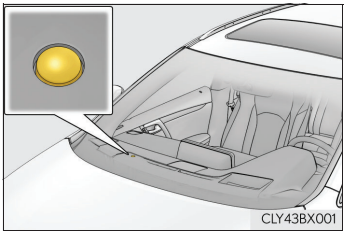
To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch in AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Cornering lights (if equipped)**

When the cornering lights are on for more than 30 minutes, they will turn off automatically.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield. Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ **Automatic light off system**

- When the light switch is in the or position: The headlights and front fog lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.
- When the light switch is in the AUTO position: The headlights and all lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch to the AUTO position once and then back to the or position.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Light reminder buzzer**

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ **Welcome lighting**

If the headlight switch is turned to AUTO and the surrounding area is dark, unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control will turn the front position lights and tail lights on automatically.

■ **Windshield wiper linked headlight illumination**

When driving during daytime with the headlight switch turned to AUTO, if the windshield wipers are used, the headlights will turn on automatically after several seconds to help enhance the visibility of your vehicle.

■ **Battery-saving function**

In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the light switch is in the or AUTO position when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes. When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the battery-saving function will be disabled.

When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

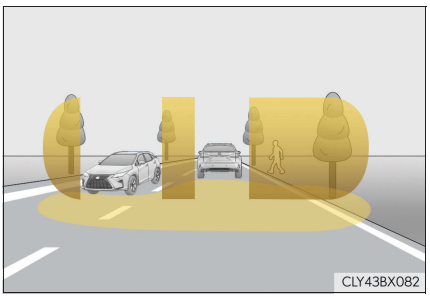
Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*

The Adaptive High-beam System uses a camera sensor located behind the upper portion of the windshield to assess the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically controls the headlight light distribution as necessary.

- Adjusts the brightness and illuminated area of the high beams according to the vehicle speed.
- Adjusts the intensity of the high beams, while driving on a curve, so that the area in the direction that the vehicle is turning will be illuminated more brightly than other areas.
- Operates the shaded high beams so that the area around vehicles ahead is partially not illuminated while all other areas continue to be illuminated with the high beams.

  The shaded high beams help optimize forward visibility while reducing the dazzling effect on the drivers of vehicles ahead.



- Adjusts the distance that the low beams are projected according to the distance to a preceding vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the Adaptive High-beam System

Do not overly rely on the Adaptive High-beam System. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

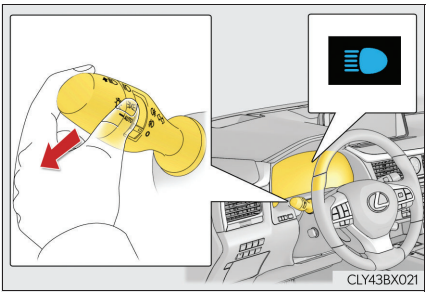
■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Adaptive High-beam System

Do not overload the vehicle.

*: If equipped

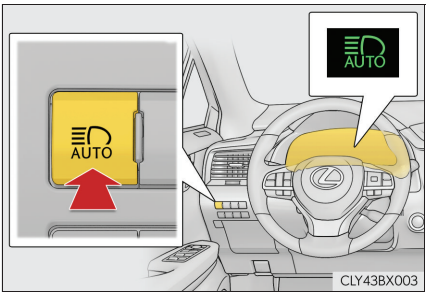
Activating the Adaptive High-beam System

1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in the ≡D or AUTO position.



2 Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will come on when the system is operating.



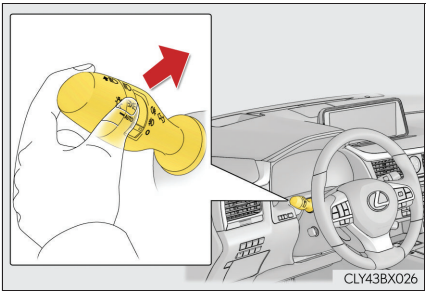
Turning the high beams on/off manually

Switching to the low beams

Pull the lever to its original position.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.

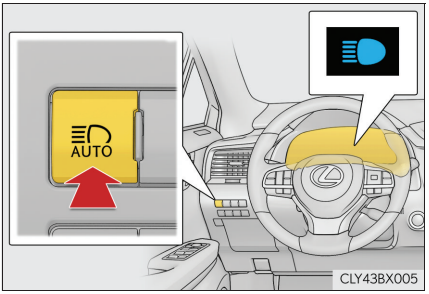


Switching to the high beams

Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.



■ **Conditions in which the light distribution control of the headlights changes automatically**

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will be turned on automatically and the system will operate:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 60 km/h (38 mph) or more.
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- When all of the following conditions are met, the shaded high beams will turn on and the distance that the low beams are projected will be adjusted automatically, depending on the location of vehicles ahead:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 60 km/h (38 mph) or more.
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
  - There are vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- If any of the following conditions is met, the high beams or shaded high beams will be changed to the low beams automatically:
  - The vehicle speed is below approximately 60 km/h (38 mph).
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
  - There are many vehicles ahead.
  - Vehicles ahead are moving quickly and the high beams may blind the drivers of the other vehicles.

■ **Camera sensor detection information**

- The high beams may not be automatically changed to the shaded high beams in the following situations:
  - When vehicles ahead suddenly appear from a curve
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
  - When vehicles ahead are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
  - When vehicles ahead appear from the faraway lane on wide road
  - When vehicles ahead have no lights
- The high beams may be changed to the shaded high beams if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.
- House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the shaded high beams, cause the high beams not to change to the shaded high beams, or change the area that is not illuminated.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn the high beam on or off, or the speed by which the areas not illuminated change:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
  - The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
  - When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
  - When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
  - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- The light distribution control of the headlights may change unexpectedly.

- Bicycles or similar objects may not be detected.
- In the following situations the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness level. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually switch between the high and low beams.
  - When driving in inclement weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
  - When the windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
  - When the windshield is cracked or damaged
  - When the camera sensor is deformed or dirty
  - When the temperature of the camera sensor is extremely high
  - When the surrounding brightness level is equal to that of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
  - When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
  - When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
  - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads, etc.)
  - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
  - When there is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or mirror
  - When the back of a preceding vehicle is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
  - When the vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty, or are not aimed properly
  - When the vehicle is listing or tilting due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
  - When the headlights are changed between the high beams and low beams repeatedly in an abnormal manner
  - When the driver believes that the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers
  - When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

Automatic High Beam*

The Automatic High Beam uses a camera sensor located behind the upper portion of the windshield to assess the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically turns the high beams on or off as necessary.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Limitations of the Automatic High Beam**

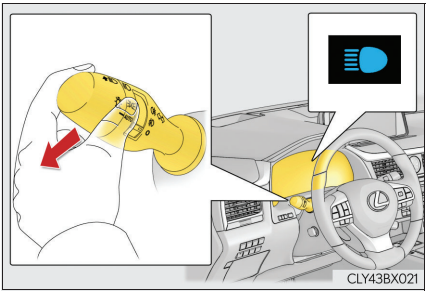
Do not overly rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

■ **To prevent incorrect operation of the Automatic High Beam system**

Do not overload the vehicle.

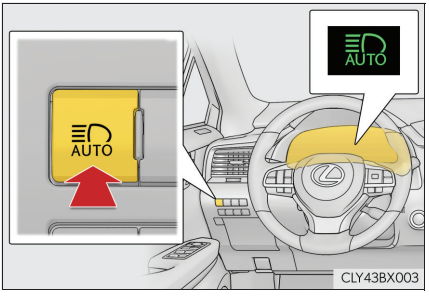
Activating the Automatic High Beam

1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in the or AUTO position.


CLY43BX021

2 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the system is operating.



CLY43BX003

*: If equipped

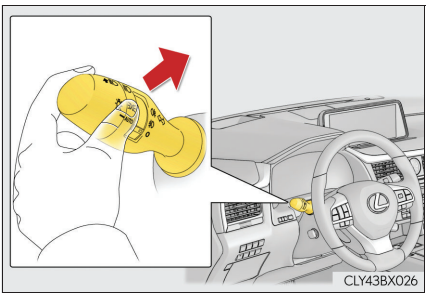
Turning the high beams on/off manually

Switching to the low beams

Pull the lever to its original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

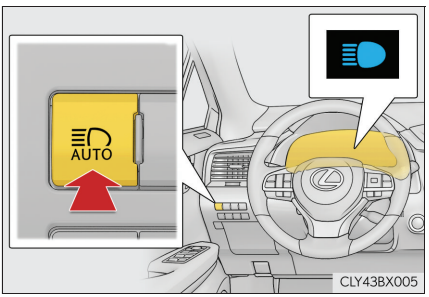


Switching to the high beams

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



■ Conditions to turn the high beams on/off automatically

● When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will be turned on automatically (after approximately 1 second):

- The vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

● If any of the following conditions is met, the high beams will turn off automatically:

- The vehicle speed is below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Vehicles ahead have their headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

■ Camera sensor detection information

● The high beams may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:

- When a vehicle suddenly appears from around a curve
- When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
- When vehicles ahead cannot be detected due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- When vehicles ahead appear in a faraway lane on a wide road
- When the lights of vehicles ahead are not on

● The high beams may be turned off if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.

● House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the low beams, or the low beams to remain on.

● The following factors may affect the amount of time taken for the high beams to turn on or off:

- The brightness of the headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
- The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
- When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
- When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
- The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
- The number of passengers and amount of luggage in the vehicle

● The high beams may turn on or off unexpectedly.

● Bicycles or similar vehicles may not be detected.

- In the following situations the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness level. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually switch between the high and low beams.
  - When driving in inclement weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
  - When the windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
  - When the windshield is cracked or damaged
  - When the camera sensor is deformed or dirty
  - When the temperature of the camera sensor is extremely high
  - When the surrounding brightness level is equal to that of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
  - When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
  - When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
  - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads, etc.)
  - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
  - When there is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or mirror
  - When the back of a preceding vehicle is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
  - When the vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty, or are not aimed properly
  - When the vehicle is listing or titling due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
  - When the headlights are changed between the high beams and low beams repeatedly in an abnormal manner
  - When the driver believes that the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers
  - When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa

Fog light switch

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

Operating instructions

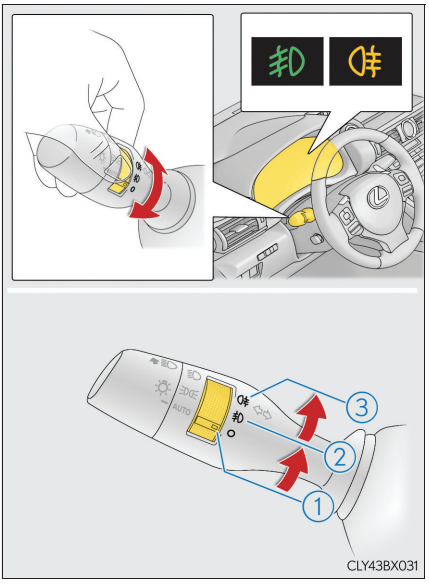
① Turns the front and rear fog lights off

② Turns the front fog lights on

③ Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to ②.

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog lights off.



Fog lights can be used when

Front fog lights: The headlights or front position lights are turned on.
Rear fog lights: The front fog lights are turned on.

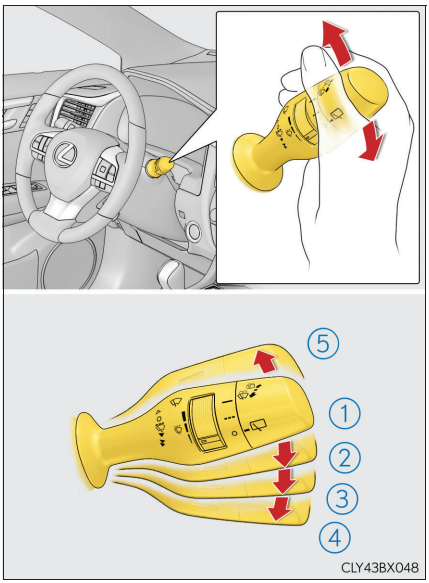
Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the wiper lever

The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows.

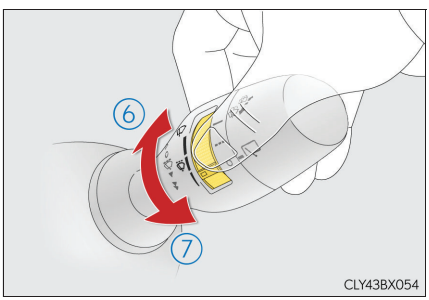
▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster

① ○ Off
② Intermittent operation
③ Low speed operation
④ High speed operation
⑤ Temporary operation



Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.

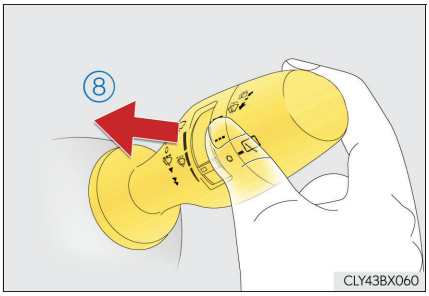
⑥ Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency
⑦ Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



⑧ Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

Vehicles with headlight cleaners:
When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.



▶ Rain-sensing windshield wipers

① ○ Off

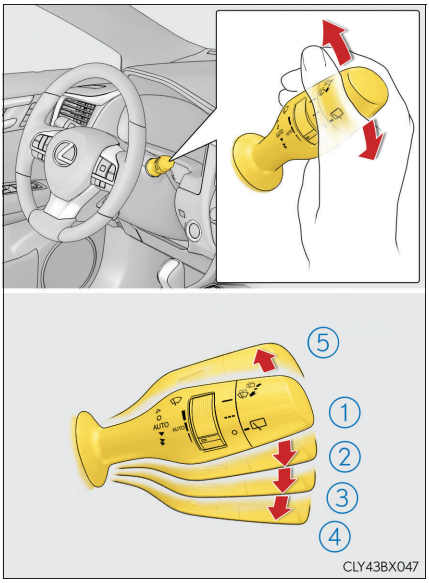
② AUTO Rain-sensing operation

③ ▼ Low speed operation

④ ▼▼ High speed operation

⑤ ▵ Temporary operation

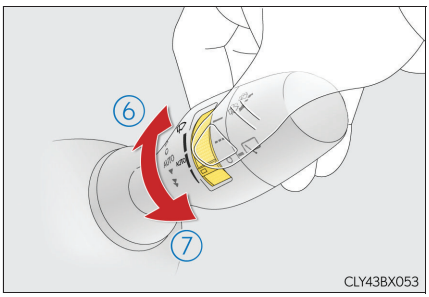
When "AUTO" is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



The sensor sensitivity can be adjusted when "AUTO" is selected.

⑥ Increases the sensitivity

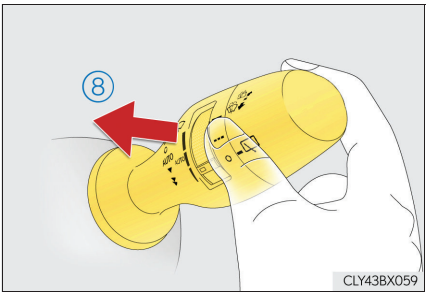
⑦ Decreases the sensitivity



⑧ Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

Vehicles with headlight cleaners:
When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.



■ **The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Dripping prevention wiper sweep (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping. However, this function will not operate while driving.

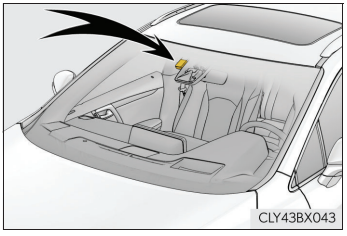
■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

Vehicle speed affects the Intermittent wiper interval.

■ **Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs, etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper switch is turned to the "AUTO" position while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- When the sensor sensitivity ring is turned toward high while in "AUTO" position, the wipers will operate once to indicate that the sensor sensitivity is enhanced.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO mode.

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked, if there is washer fluid in the washer fluid tank.

■ **Front door opening linked windshield wiper stop function (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

When "AUTO" is selected and the windshield wipers are operating, if a front door is opened, the operation of the windshield wipers will be stopped to prevent anyone near the vehicle from being sprayed by water from the wipers, provided the vehicle is stopped with the parking brake applied or the shift lever in P. When the front door is closed, wiper operation will resume.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers, etc. do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ **Caution regarding the use of washer fluid**

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

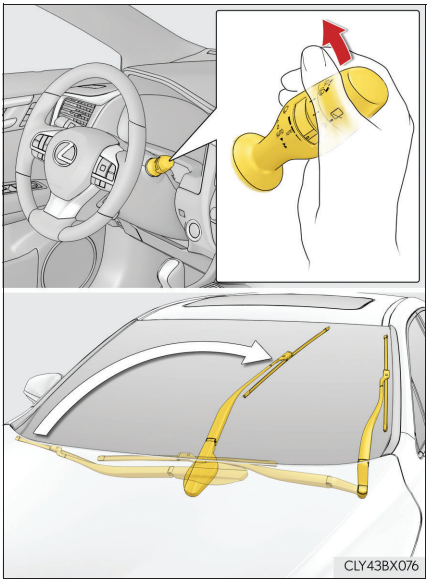
Changing the windshield wiper rest position/Lifting the windshield wipers

When the windshield wipers are not being used, they retract to below the hood. To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when parking in cold conditions or when replacing a windshield wiper insert, change the rest position of the windshield wipers to the service position using the wiper lever.

Raising the wipers to the service position

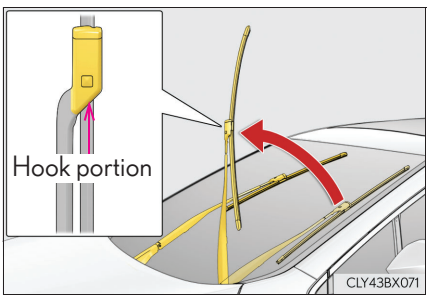
Within approximately 40 seconds of turning the engine switch off, move the wiper lever to the ⏏ position and hold it for approximately 2 seconds or more.

The wipers will move to the service position.



Lifting the windshield wipers

While holding the hook portion of the wiper arm, lift the windshield wiper from the windshield.



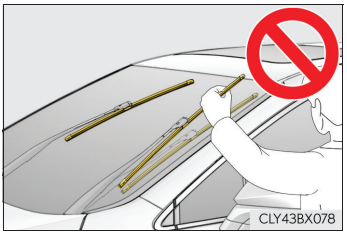
Lowering the windshield wipers to the retracted position

With the windshield wipers placed on the windshield, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then move the wiper lever to an operating position. When the wiper switch is turned off, the windshield wipers will stop at the retracted position.

NOTICE

When lifting the windshield wipers

- Do not lift the windshield wipers when they are in the retracted position below the hood. Otherwise, they may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to a windshield wiper and/or the hood.
- Do not lift a windshield wiper by the wiper blade. Otherwise, the wiper blade may be deformed.



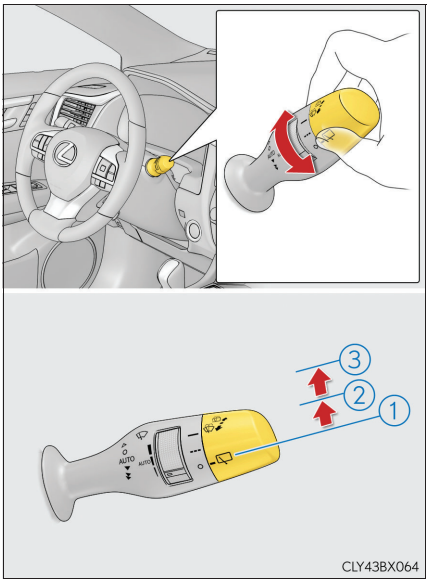
- Do not operate the wiper lever when the windshield wipers are lifted. Otherwise, the windshield wipers may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to the windshield wipers and/or hood.

Rear window wiper and washer

Operating the wiper lever

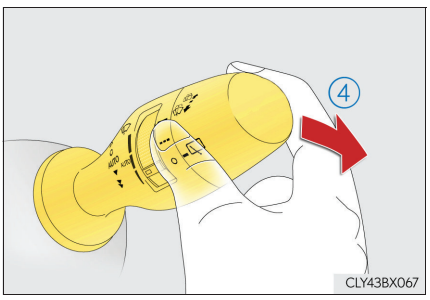
Turning the end of the lever turns on the rear window wiper and washer.

① ○ Off
② - - - Intermittent operation
③ —— Normal operation



④ Washer/wiper dual operation

The wiper will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.



■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If no washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked if there is washer fluid in the washer fluid tank.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the rear window is dry**

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close all the doors and windows, and turn the engine switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

■ **Fuel types**

→P. 733

■ **Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline**

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

⚠ WARNING

■ When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

⚠ NOTICE

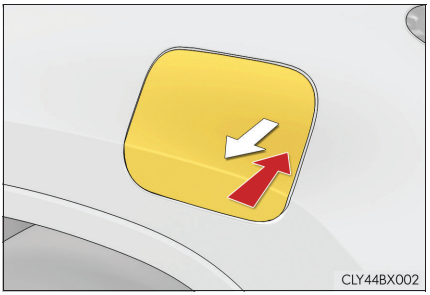
■ Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

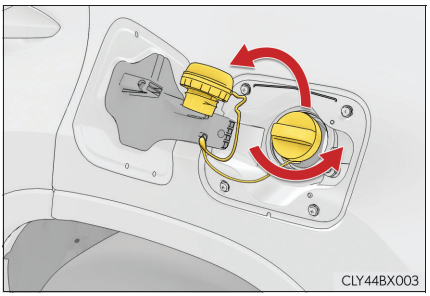
Opening the fuel tank cap

1 With the doors unlocked, press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Push inward and take your hand away to slightly open the fuel filler door. Then open the door fully by hand.

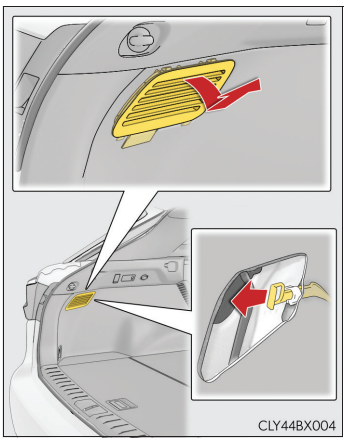


2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly and remove it, then put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.



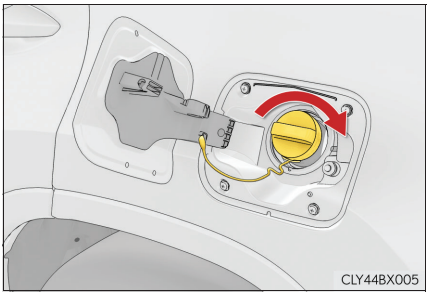
When the fuel filler door cannot be opened

Remove the cover inside the luggage compartment and pull the lever to open the fuel filler door if it cannot be opened by pressing the rear edge of the fuel filler door with the doors unlocked.



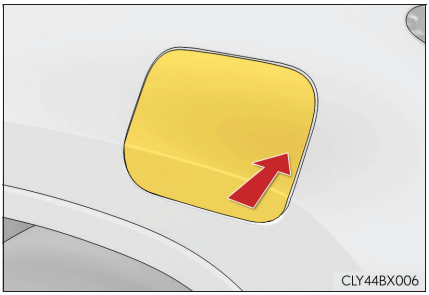
Closing the fuel tank cap

1 After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



2 Close the fuel filler door, and press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

When you lock the doors, the fuel filler door will lock also.



Fuel filler door lock condition

The fuel filler door may not be locked even when the vehicle's doors are locked in the following conditions:

- When operating the door lock button inside the vehicle
- When the automatic door locking system is operated (→P. 143)
- When the fuel filler door is closed after the vehicle's doors are locked

WARNING

When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Lexus Safety System+*

The Lexus Safety System+ consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)

→P. 298

- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*

→P. 311

- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*

→P. 322

- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*

→P. 267

- Automatic High Beam*

→P. 272

- RSA (Road Sign Assist)

→P. 331

- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

→P. 336

- Dynamic radar cruise control*

→P. 348

⚠ WARNING

■ Lexus Safety System+

The Lexus Safety System+ is designed to operate under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants and the vehicle in the case of a collision or assist the driver in normal driving conditions.

As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

*: If equipped

Vehicle data recording

The pre-crash safety system is equipped with a sophisticated computer that will record certain data, such as:

- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the pre-crash safety system functions
- Information (such as the distance and relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead or other objects)

The pre-crash safety system does not record conversations, sounds or pictures.

● Data usage

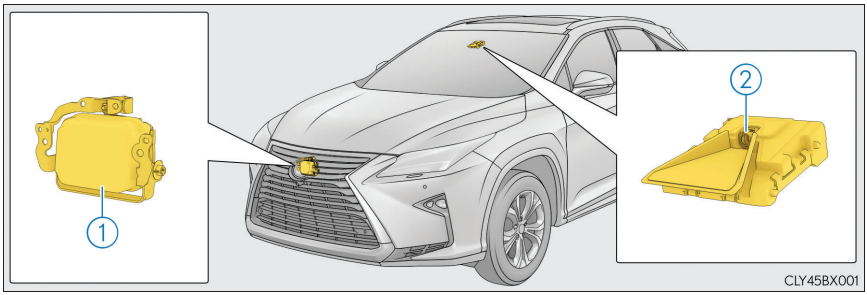
Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Sensors

Two types of sensors, located behind the front grille and windshield, detect information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.



① Radar sensor ② Camera sensor

⚠ WARNING

■ To avoid malfunction of the radar sensor

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the radar sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

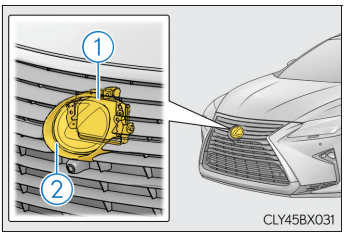
- Keep the radar sensor and front grille emblem clean at all times.

① Radar sensor

② Front grille emblem

If the front of the radar sensor or the front or back of the front grille emblem is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc., clean it.

Clean the radar sensor and front grille emblem with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.



- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the radar sensor, front grille emblem or surrounding area.
- Do not subject the radar sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the radar sensor.
- Do not modify or paint the radar sensor, front grille emblem or surrounding area.
- If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper needs to be removed and installed, or replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- The radar sensor complies with relevant radio wave regulations, as shown by the label attached to the sensor. Do not remove the label. Additionally, disassembly or modification of the radar sensor may be prohibited by law.

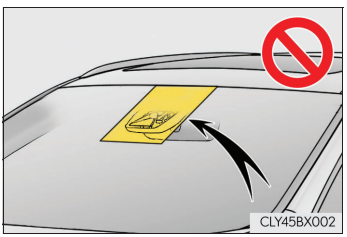
WARNING

■ To avoid malfunction of the camera sensor

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the camera sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  - If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clear the windshield.
  - If a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets from the area of the windshield in front of the camera sensor.
  - If the inner side of the windshield where the camera sensor is installed is dirty, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not install an antenna or attach stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the area of the windshield in front of the camera sensor (shaded area in the illustration).



- If the part of the windshield in front of the camera sensor is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation or ice. (→P. 540)
- If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the camera sensor by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade.
  - To replace the wiper insert: →P. 630
  - If the wiper blades need to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not attach window tinting to the windshield.
- Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked.
  If the windshield needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not get the camera sensor wet.
- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the camera sensor.
- Do not dirty or damage the camera sensor.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens.
  If the lens is dirty or damaged, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

- Do not subject the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the camera sensor or remove it.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not install an electronic device or device that emits strong electric waves near the camera sensor.
- Do not modify any components of the vehicle around the camera sensor (inside rear view mirror, sun visors, etc.) or ceiling.
- Do not attach any accessories that may obstruct the camera sensor to the hood, front grille or front bumper. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.
- If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the camera sensor.
- Do not modify the headlights or other lights.

■ Certification

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html
Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR008 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR008 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR008 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR008 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR008 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR008 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR008 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR008 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR008 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR008 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR008 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR008 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR008 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR008 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR008 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR008 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR008 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR008 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarē, ka DNMWR008 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR008 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR008 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret DNMWR008 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че DNMWR008 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul DNMWR008 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je DNMWR008 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je DNMWR008 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)*

The pre-crash safety system uses a radar sensor and camera sensor to detect vehicles and pedestrians*1 in front of your vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied*2 to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact to the vehicle occupants and the vehicle in the collision.

The pre-crash safety system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P. 302)

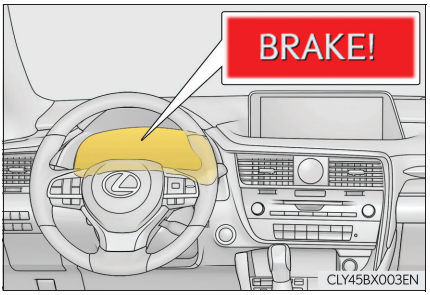
*1: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pedestrian detection function may not be available. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

*2: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pre-crash braking function (automatic braking function) may not be available. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

*: If equipped

Pre-crash warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



Pre-crash brake assist

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-crash braking*3

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system warns the driver. If the system determines that the possibility of a collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the collision speed.

*3: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pre-crash braking function may not be available.

Suspension control (if equipped)

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the Adaptive Variable Suspension System (→P. 421) will control the damping force of the shock absorbers.

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the pre-crash safety system

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.
  Do not use the pre-crash safety system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen collision damage or injury in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Although this system is designed to help avoid and reduce the impact of a collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions, therefore the system may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance.
  Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision: →P. 305
  - Conditions under which the system may not operate properly: →P. 308
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the pre-crash safety system yourself, as the system may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.

■ Pre-crash braking*3

- The pre-crash braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-crash braking function from operating.
- In some situations, while the pre-crash braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- A large amount of braking force is applied while the pre-crash braking function is operating. Additionally, as the vehicle may creep if it has been stopped by the pre-crash braking function, the driver should depress the brake pedal as necessary.
- If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-crash braking function.

*3: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pre-crash braking function may not be available.

WARNING

■ When to disable the pre-crash safety system

In the following situations, disable the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- When the vehicle is being towed
- When your vehicle is towing another vehicle
- When transporting the vehicle via truck, boat, train or similar means of transportation
- When the vehicle is raised on a lift with the engine running and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When a strong impact is applied to the front bumper or front grille, due to an accident or other reasons
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed
- When tire chains are installed
- When a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used
- If the suspension is modified
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when loaded with heavy luggage

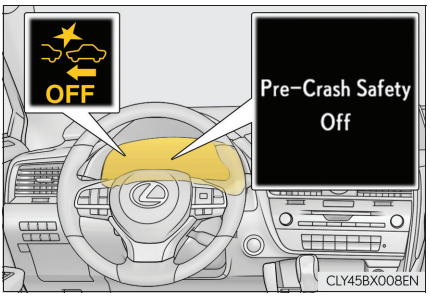
Changing settings of the pre-crash safety system

Enabling/disabling the pre-crash safety system

The pre-crash safety system can be enabled/disabled on (→P. 109) of the multi-information display.

The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



Changing the pre-crash warning timing

The pre-crash warning timing can be changed on (→P. 109) of the multi-information display.

The operation timing setting is retained when the engine switch is turned off.

① Far

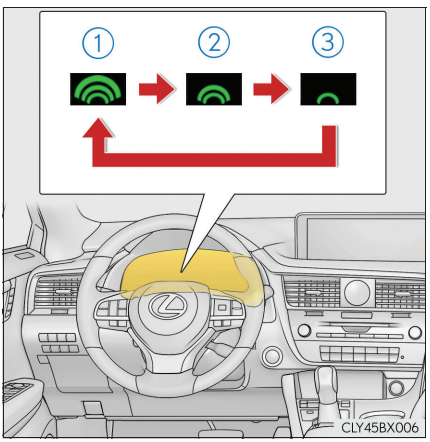
The warning will begin to operate earlier than with the default timing.

② Middle

This is the default setting.

③ Near

The warning will begin to operate later than with the default timing.



■ Operational conditions

Availability of the pedestrian detection function and pre-crash braking function depend on the region in which the vehicle was sold.

Regions	Function availability
Region A	The pedestrian detection function and pre-crash braking function are available
Region B	The pedestrian detection function is not available and the pre-crash braking function is available
Region C	The pedestrian detection function and pre-crash braking function are not available

Read the following for details:

▶ Region A
(The pedestrian detection function and pre-crash braking function are available)

The pre-crash safety system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is high.

Each function is operational at the following speeds:

● Pre-crash warning:
- Vehicle speed is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more. (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 80 km/h [7 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

● Pre-crash brake assist:
- Vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more. (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 30 and 80 km/h [19 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more.

● Pre-crash braking:
- Vehicle speed is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more. (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 80 km/h [7 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

● If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time

● If the shift lever is in R

● If VSC is disabled (only the pre-crash warning function will be operational)

● If the PCS warning light is flashing or illuminated

▶ Region B
(The pedestrian detection function is not available and the pre-crash braking function is available)

The pre-crash safety system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high.

Each function is operational at the following speeds:

● Pre-crash warning:
  • Vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more.
  • The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.
● Pre-crash brake assist:
  • Vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more.
  • The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more.
● Pre-crash braking:
  • Vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more.
  • The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

● If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
● If the shift lever is in R
● If VSC is disabled (only the pre-crash warning function will be operational)
● If the PCS warning light is flashing or illuminated

▶ Region C
(The pedestrian detection function and pre-crash braking function are not available)

The pre-crash safety system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high.

Each function is operational at the following speeds:

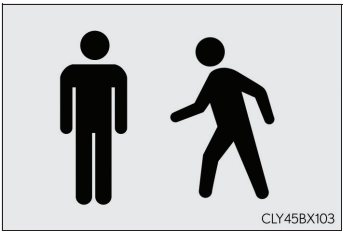
● Pre-crash warning:
  • Vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more.
  • The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.
● Pre-crash brake assist:
  • Vehicle speed is approximately30 km/h (19 mph) or more.
  • The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

● If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
● If the shift lever is in R
● If VSC is disabled (only the pre-crash warning function will be operational)
● If the PCS warning light is flashing or illuminated

Pedestrian detection function*4

The pre-crash safety system detects pedestrians based on the size, profile, and motion of a detected object. However, a pedestrian may not be detected depending on the surrounding brightness and the motion, posture, and angle of the detected object, preventing the system from operating properly. (→P. 310)



*4: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pedestrian detection function may not be available.

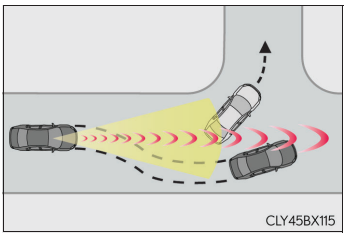
Cancelation of the pre-crash braking*3

- If either of the following occur while the pre-crash braking function is operating, it will be canceled:
  - The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
  - The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-crash braking function, the operation of the pre-crash braking function will be canceled after the vehicle has been stopped for approximately 2 seconds.

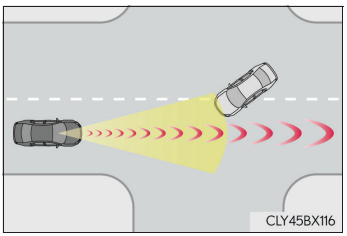
*3: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pre-crash braking function may not be available.

Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

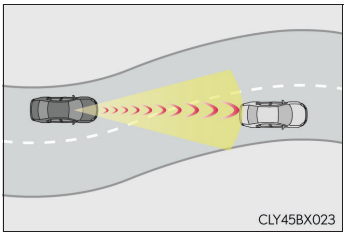
- In some situations such as the following, the system may determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.
  - When passing a vehicle or pedestrian*4
  - When changing lanes while overtaking a preceding vehicle
  - When overtaking a preceding vehicle that is changing lanes
  - When overtaking a preceding vehicle that is making a left/right turn



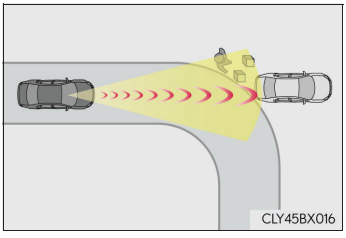
  - When passing a vehicle in an oncoming lane that is stopped to make a right/left turn



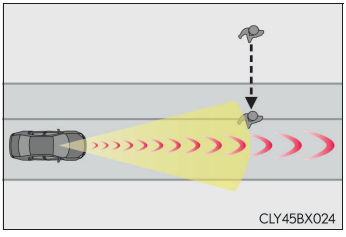
- When driving on a road where relative location to vehicle ahead in an adjacent lane may change, such as on a winding road



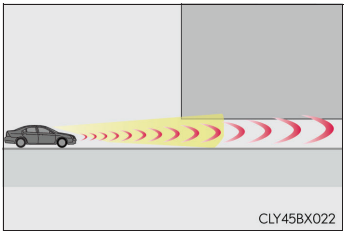
- When a preceding vehicle suddenly decelerates
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when the road surface is uneven or undulating
- When approaching objects on the roadside, such as guardrails, utility poles, trees, or walls
- When there is a vehicle, pedestrian*4, or object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve



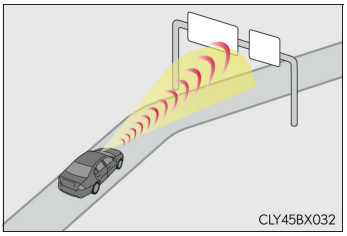
- When driving on a narrow path surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron bridge
- When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.), steps, or a protrusion on the road surface or roadside
- When a crossing pedestrian approaches very close to the vehicle*4



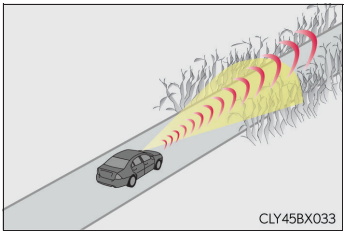
- When passing through a place with a low structure above the road (low ceiling, traffic sign, etc.)



- When passing under an object (billboard, etc.) at the top of an uphill road



- When rapidly closing on an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When using an automatic car wash
- When driving through or under objects that may contact the vehicle, such as thick grass, tree branches, or a banner



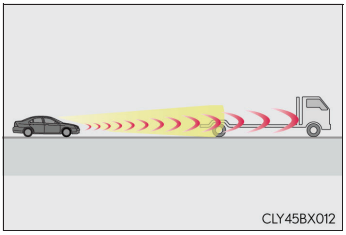
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a vehicle ahead
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When there are patterns or paint on the road or a wall that may be mistaken for a vehicle or pedestrian*4
- When driving near an object that reflects radio waves, such as a large truck or guardrail
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present

*4: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pedestrian detection function may not be available.

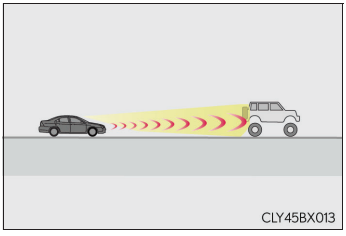
Situations in which the system may not operate properly

In some situations such as the following, a vehicle may not be detected by the radar sensor and camera sensor, preventing the system from operating properly:

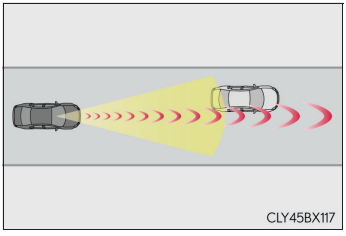
- If an oncoming vehicle is approaching your vehicle
- If a vehicle ahead is a motorcycle or bicycle
- When approaching the side of a vehicle
- If a preceding vehicle has a small rear end, such as an unloaded truck
- If a vehicle ahead has a low rear end, such as a low bed trailer



- If a vehicle ahead is carrying a load which protrudes past its rear bumper
- If a vehicle ahead has extremely high ground clearance



- If a vehicle ahead is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor or side car
- If the sun or other light is shining directly on a vehicle ahead
- If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle or emerges from beside a vehicle
- If a vehicle ahead makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
- When suddenly cutting behind a preceding vehicle
- When a vehicle ahead is not directly in front of your vehicle



- When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a vehicle ahead
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When driving in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel
- When a very bright light, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the camera sensor
- When the surrounding area is dim, such as at dawn or dusk, or while at night or in a tunnel

- After the engine has started the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- While making a left/right turn and for a few seconds after making a left/right turn
- While driving on a curve and for a few seconds after driving on a curve
- If your vehicle is skidding
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when the road surface is uneven or undulating
- If the wheels are misaligned
- If a wiper blade is blocking the camera sensor
- The vehicle is wobbling.
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds.
- When driving on a hill

● In some situations such as the following, sufficient braking force may not be obtained, preventing the system from performing properly:

- If the braking functions cannot operate to their full extent, such as when the brake parts are extremely cold, extremely hot, or wet
- If the vehicle is not properly maintained (brakes or tires are excessively worn, improper tire inflation pressure, etc.)
- When the vehicle is being driven on a gravel road or other slippery surface

- Some pedestrians such as the following may not be detected by the radar sensor and camera sensor, preventing the system from operating properly*4:
  - Pedestrians shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.)
  - Pedestrians wearing oversized clothing (a rain coat, long skirt, etc.), making their silhouette obscure
  - Pedestrians who are carrying large baggage, holding an umbrella, etc., hiding part of their body
  - Pedestrians who are bending forward or squatting
  - Pedestrians who are pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle
  - Groups of pedestrians which are close together
  - Pedestrians who are wearing white and look extremely bright
  - Pedestrians in the dark, such as at night or while in a tunnel
  - Pedestrians whose clothing appears to be nearly the same color or brightness as their surroundings
  - Pedestrians near walls, fences, guardrails, or large objects
  - Pedestrians who are on a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.) on the road
  - Pedestrians who are walking fast
  - Pedestrians who are changing speed abruptly
  - Pedestrians running out from behind a vehicle or a large object
  - Pedestrians who are extremely close to the side of the vehicle (outside rear view mirror, etc.)

*4: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pedestrian detection function may not be available.

If the PCS warning light flashes and a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display

The pre-crash safety system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

- In the following situations, the warning light will turn off, the message will disappear and the system will become operational when normal operating conditions return:
  - When the radar sensor or camera sensor or the area around either sensor is hot, such as in the sun
  - When the radar sensor or camera sensor or the area around either sensor is cold, such as in an extremely cold environment
  - When the radar sensor or front grille emblem is dirty or covered with snow, etc.
  - If the camera sensor is obstructed, such as when the hood is open or a sticker is attached to the windshield near the camera sensor
- If the PCS warning light continues to flash or the warning message does not disappear, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

If VSC is disabled

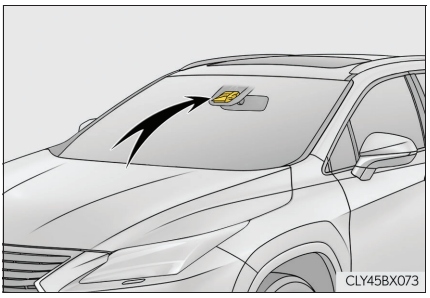
- If VSC is disabled (→P. 423), the pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking functions are also disabled.
- The PCS warning light will turn on and "VSC Turned Off Pre-Crash Brake System Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*

Summary of functions

When driving on highways and freeways with white or yellow lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane. Furthermore, the system also provides steering assistance when dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating to keep the vehicle in its lane.

The LKA system recognizes visible white or yellow lines with the camera sensor on the upper portion of the windshield.



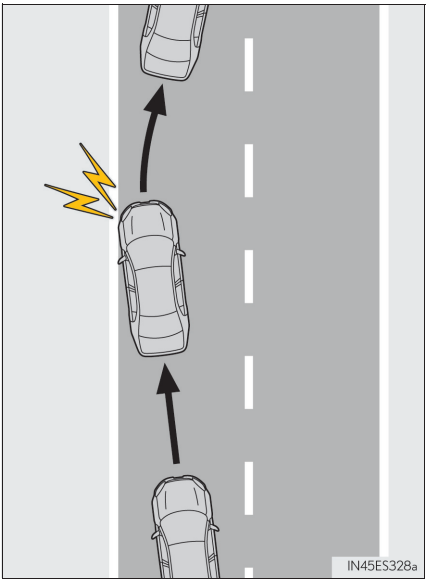
*: If equipped

Functions included in LKA system

Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the surrounding road situation and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center within the white (yellow) lines.

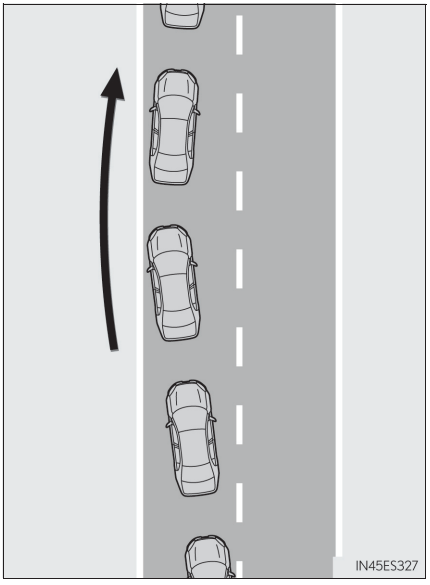


Lane departure control function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

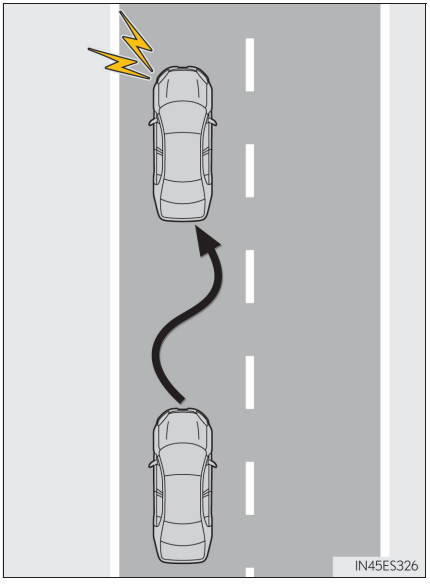
Except for Israel: If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

For Israel: If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the warning buzzer sounds.



Vehicle sway warning

When the vehicle is swaying or appears as if it may depart from its lane multiple times, the warning buzzer sounds and a message is displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.



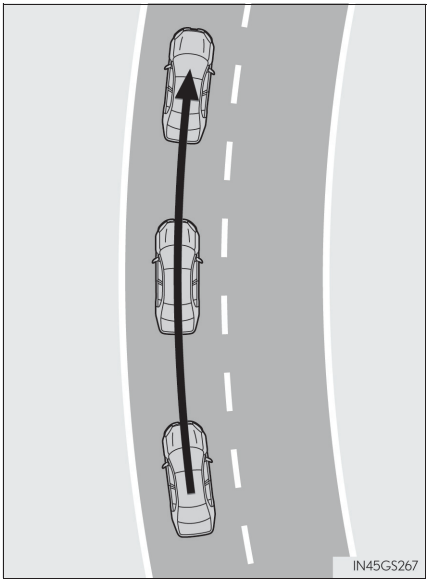
Lane-keeping assist function

This function is linked with radar cruise control and provides the required assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its current lane.

When radar cruise control is not operating, the lane-keeping assist function does not operate.

Except for Israel: If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

For Israel: If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the warning buzzer sounds.



⚠ WARNING

■ Before using LKA system

Do not rely solely upon the LKA system. LKA is not a system which automatically drives the vehicle or reduces the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by always paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, make sure to take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.
Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ To avoid operating LKA by mistake

When not using the LKA system, use the LKA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LKA

Do not use the LKA system in the following situations.
The system may not operate properly and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- A spare tire, tire chains, etc., are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, curbs, reflective poles, etc.).
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Asphalt repair marks, white (yellow) line marks, etc., are present due to road repair.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than on highways and freeways.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

■ Preventing LKA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc., on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

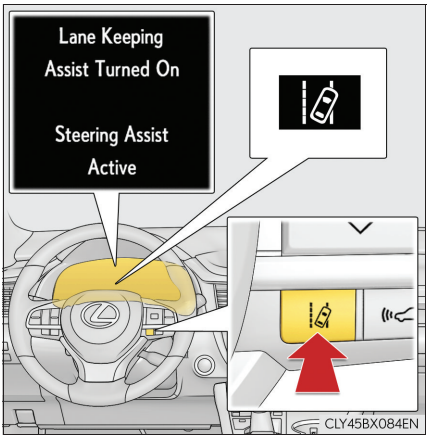
Turning LKA system on

Press the LKA switch to turn the LKA system on.

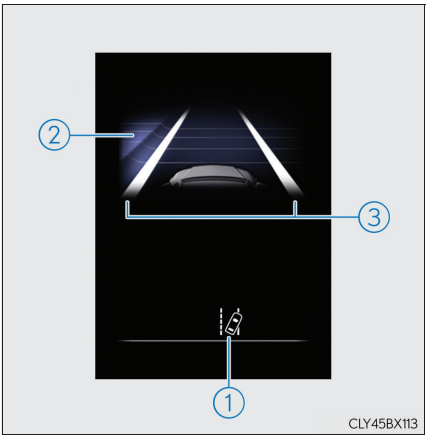
The LKA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LKA switch again to turn the LKA system off.

When the LKA system is turned on or off, operation of the LKA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



① LKA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:
LKA system is operating.

Illuminated in green:
Steering wheel assistance of the lane departure control function or lane-keeping assist function is operating.

Flashing in amber:
Lane departure alert function is operating.

② Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the lane departure control function or lane-keeping assist function is operating.

③ Lane departure alert function display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes amber.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or is temporarily canceled.

■ Operation conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LKA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- System recognizes white (yellow) lines.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is driven on a straight road or around a gentle curve with a radius of more than approximately 150 m (492 ft.).
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P. 660)

● Lane departure control function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Setting for "Steering Assist" in ⚙ of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P. 109)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Except for Israel: Hands off steering wheel alert is not displayed. (→P. 319)

● Vehicle sway warning

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in ⚙ of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P. 109)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P. 660)

● Lane-keeping assist function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LKA is turned on.
- Setting for "Lane Center" in ⚙ of the multi-information display are set to "On". (→P. 109)
- System recognizes white (yellow) lines.
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 2.5 to 4.1 m (8.2 to 13.5 ft.).
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is driven on a straight road or around a gentle curve with a radius of more than approximately 200 m (656 ft.).
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P. 660)
- Vehicle does not accelerate or decelerate by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Except for Israel: Hands off steering wheel alert (→P. 319) is not displayed.
- Lane departure control function is not operating.

■ **Temporary cancellation of functions**

When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P. 318)

■ **Lane departure control function/lane-keeping assist function**

Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the operation of the functions may not be recognized or the functions may not operate.

■ **Lane departure alert function**

The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions, etc.

■ **Hands off steering wheel alert**

Except for Israel: When the system determines that the driver has removed their hands from the steering wheel while the lane departure control function or lane-keeping assist function is operating, a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display.
If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, a warning message is displayed and the function is temporarily canceled. This alert also operates in the same way when the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel lightly gripped. However, depending on the road conditions, etc., the function may not cancel.

For Israel: When the system determines that the driver has removed their hands from the steering wheel while the lane departure control function or lane-keeping assist function is operating, a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the buzzer sounds.

■ **White (yellow) lines are only on one side of road**

The LKA system will not operate for the side on which white (yellow) lines could not be recognized.

■ Conditions in which functions may not operate properly

In the following situations, the camera sensor may not detect white (yellow) lines and various functions may not operate normally.

- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, "Raised pavement marker" or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc., enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The vehicle is driven around a sharp curve.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- The headlight lenses are dirty and emit a faint amount of light at night, or the beam axis has deviated.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Snow tires, etc., are equipped.

■ **If the LKA indicator is illuminated in amber and a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display**

→P. 660

■ **Customization**

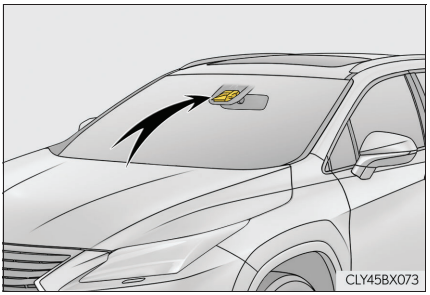
Some functions can be customized. (→P. 109)

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*

Summary of functions

When driving on highways and freeways with white or yellow lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane.

The LDA system recognizes visible white or yellow lines with the camera sensor on the upper portion of the windshield.

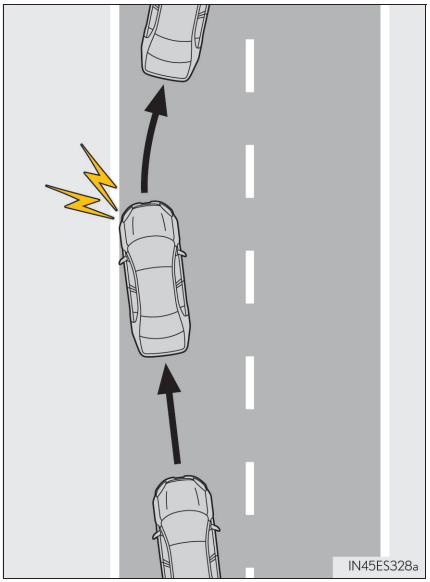


Functions included in LDA system

Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the surrounding road situation and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center within the white (yellow) lines.



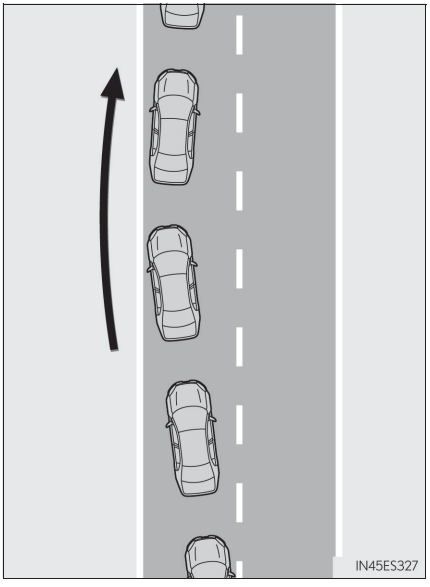
*: If equipped

Steering control function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

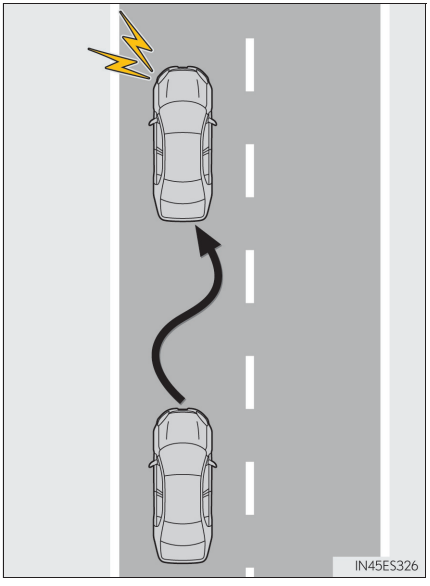
Except for Israel: If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

For Israel: If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the warning buzzer sounds.



Vehicle sway warning

When the vehicle is swaying or appears as if it may depart from its lane multiple times, the warning buzzer sounds and a message is displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.



⚠ WARNING

■ Before using LDA system

Do not rely solely upon the LDA system. LDA is not a system which automatically drives the vehicle or reduces the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by always paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, make sure to take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.
Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ To avoid operating LDA by mistake

When not using the LDA system, use the LDA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LDA

Do not use the LDA system in the following situations.
The system may not operate properly and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- A spare tire, tire chains, etc., are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, curbs, reflective poles, etc.).
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Asphalt repair marks, white (yellow) line marks, etc., are present due to road repair.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than on highways and freeways.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

■ Preventing LDA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc., on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

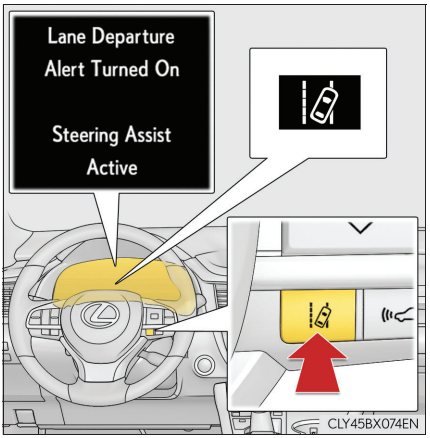
Turning LDA system on

Press the LDA switch to turn the LDA system on.

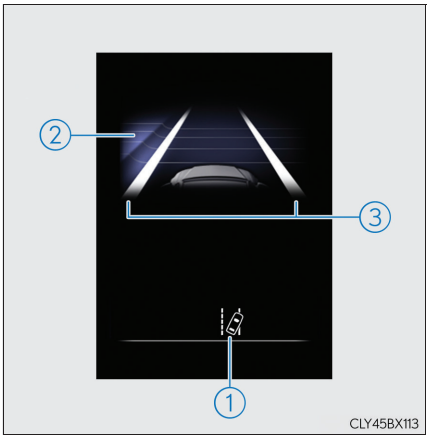
The LDA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LDA switch again to turn the LDA system off.

When the LDA system is turned on or off, operation of the LDA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



① LDA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:
LDA system is operating.

Illuminated in green:
Steering wheel assistance of the steering control function is operating.

Flashing in amber:
Lane departure alert function is operating.

② Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering control function is operating.

③ Lane departure alert function display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes amber.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or is temporarily canceled.

■ Operation conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LDA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- System recognizes white (yellow) lines.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is driven on a straight road or around a gentle curve with a radius of more than approximately 150 m (492 ft.).
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P. 660)

● Steering control function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Setting for "Steering Assist" in of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P. 109)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Except for Israel: Hands off steering wheel alert is not displayed. (→P. 328)

● Vehicle sway warning

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P. 109)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P. 660)

■ **Temporary cancellation of functions**

When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P. 327)

■ **Steering control function**

Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the operation of the functions may not be recognized or the functions may not operate.

■ **Lane departure alert function**

The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions, etc.

■ **Hands off steering wheel alert**

Except for Israel: When the system determines that the driver has removed their hands from the steering wheel while the steering control function is operating, a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display.
If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, a warning message is displayed and the function is temporarily canceled. This alert also operates in the same way when the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel lightly gripped. However, depending on the road conditions, etc., the function may not cancel.

For Israel: When the system determines that the driver has removed their hands from the steering wheel while the steering control function is operating, a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the buzzer sounds.

■ **White (yellow) lines are only on one side of road**

The LDA system will not operate for the side on which white (yellow) lines could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which functions may not operate properly**

In the following situations, the camera sensor may not detect white (yellow) lines and various functions may not operate normally.

- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, "Raised pavement marker" or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc., enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The vehicle is driven around a sharp curve.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- The headlight lenses are dirty and emit a faint amount of light at night, or the beam axis has deviated.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Snow tires, etc., are equipped.

■ **If the LDA indicator is illuminated in amber and a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display**

→P. 660

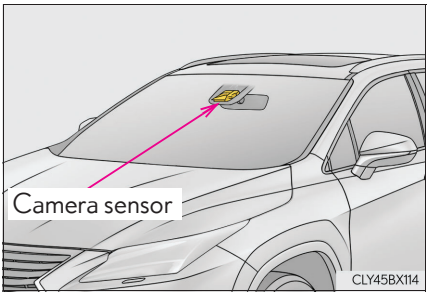
■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 109)

RSA (Road Sign Assist)*

Summary of function

RSA recognizes specific road signs using the camera sensor and provides information to the driver via the multi-information display.



If the system judges that the vehicle is being driven over the speed limit, performing prohibited actions, etc., in relation to the recognized road signs, it alerts the driver using a warning display and warning buzzer*.

*: This setting needs to be customized.

WARNING

■ Before using the RSA

Do not rely solely upon the RSA system. RSA is a system which supports the driver by providing information, but it is not a replacement for a driver's own vision and awareness. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to the traffic rules.

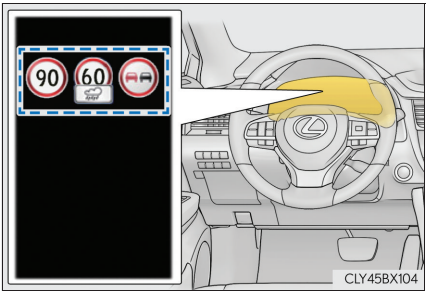
Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an unexpected accident.

*: If equipped

Indication on the multi-information display

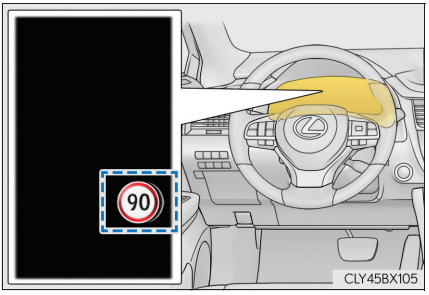
After the camera sensor recognizes a sign, it is displayed on the multi-information display when the vehicle passes the sign.

- When the driving assist system information is selected, a maximum of 3 signs can be displayed. (→P. 99)



- When other than the driving assist system information is selected, a speed limit sign or an all canceled sign can be displayed. (→P. 99)

  A no overtaking sign and a speed limit sign with supplemental mark are not displayed. However, if signs other than speed limit signs are recognized, they are mentioned in a stack under the current speed limit sign.



Types of recognized road signs

The following types of road signs, including electronic signs and blinking signs, are recognized.

Type		Multi-information display
Speed limit begins/ends		
Speed limit with supplemental mark (Displayed simultaneously with speed limit)  (Display example)	Wet	
	Rain	
	Ice	
	On/off ramp*	
	Supplemental mark exists (Contents not recognized)	
No overtaking begins/ends		
No-entry		
All canceled (All restrictions canceled. Returns to default road regulation.)		

*: If the turn signal indicator is not operated when changing lanes, the mark does not display.

Warning display

In the following situations, the RSA system alerts the driver using a warning display.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds the speed warning threshold applied to the speed limit of the sign displayed on the multi-information display, the sign color becomes inverted.
- If it is detected that your vehicle is overtaking when a no overtaking sign is displayed on the multi-information display, the sign flashes.
- When the RSA system recognizes a no-entry sign and detects that the vehicle has entered a no-entry area based on the map information of the navigation system, the no-entry sign flashes.

Automatic turn-off of RSA sign display

One or more signs automatically turn off in the following situations.

- A new sign is not recognized for a certain distance.
- The road changes due to a left or right turn, etc.

Conditions in which the function may not operate or detect correctly

In the following situations, RSA does not operate normally and may not recognize signs, display the incorrect sign, etc. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- The camera sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.
- Dirt, snow, stickers, etc., are on the windshield near the camera sensor.
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- Light from an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc., enters the camera sensor.
- The sign is dirty, faded, tilted or bent, and if an electronic sign, the contrast is poor.
- All or part of the sign is hidden by the leaves of a tree, a pole, etc.
- The sign is only visible to the camera sensor for a short amount of time.
- The driving scene (turning, lane change, etc.) is judged incorrectly.
- Even if it is a sign not appropriate for the currently traveled lane, such a sign exists directly after a freeway branches, or in an adjacent lane just before merging.
- Stickers are attached to the rear of the preceding vehicle.
- A sign resembling a system compatible sign is recognized.
- The vehicle is driven in a country with a different direction of traffic.

■ **When driving vehicle in country with different speed unit**

Since RSA recognizes signs based on the set unit of the meter, it is necessary to change the set unit of the meter. Adjust the set unit of the meter to the speed unit of signs in the current location. (→P. 734)

■ **Speed limit sign display**

If the engine switch was last turned off while a speed limit sign was displayed on the multi-information display, the same sign displays again when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When "Check RSA system" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 109)

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

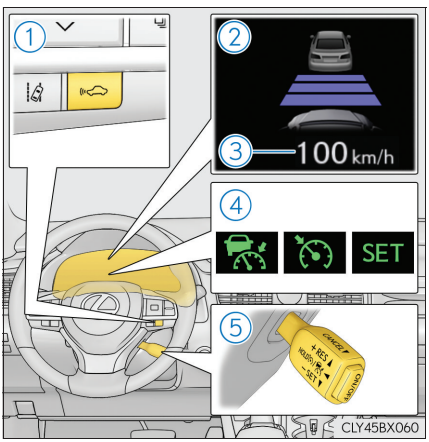
Summary of functions

In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates and stops to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P. 339)
- Constant speed control mode (→P. 344)

① Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
② Display
③ Set speed
④ Indicators
⑤ Cruise control switch



*: If equipped

⚠ WARNING

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.

Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range has limited capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ To avoid inadvertent dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activation

Switch the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

⚠ WARNING

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

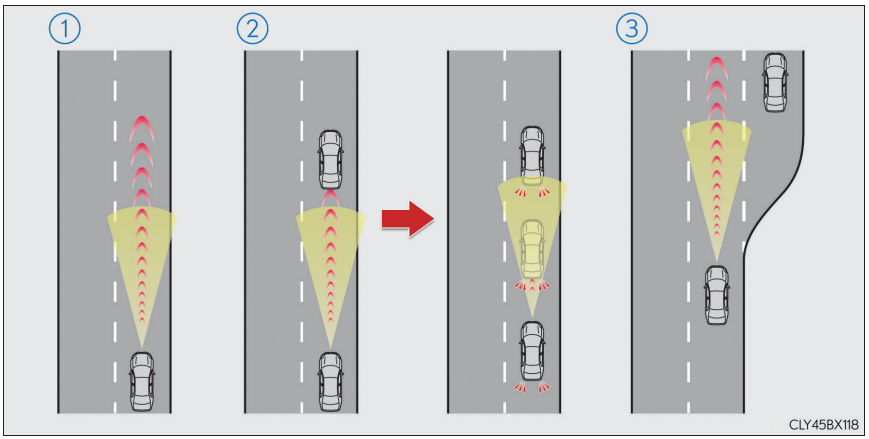
Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclers, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar sensor or camera sensor
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 120 m (400 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



① Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance button.

② Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead. When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop (vehicle is stopped by system control). After the vehicle ahead starts off, pushing the cruise control lever up or depressing the accelerator pedal will resume follow-up cruising.

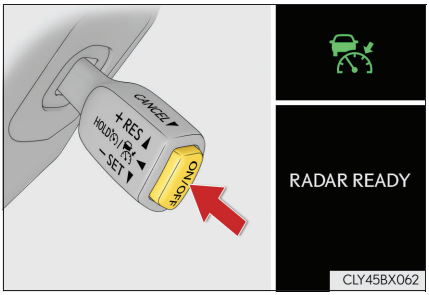
③ Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

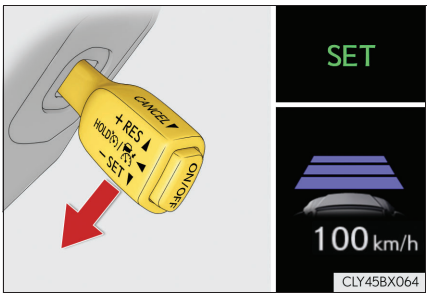


Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the "ON/OFF" button is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P. 344)

2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.



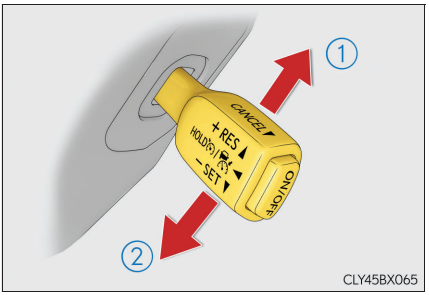
Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

If the lever is operated while the vehicle speed is below approximately 50 km/h (30 mph) and a preceding vehicle is present, the set speed will be adjusted to approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



① Increases the speed

(Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever up or down to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

▶ For Europe

Fine adjustment: By 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the lever is held

▶ Except for Europe

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 344), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the lever is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

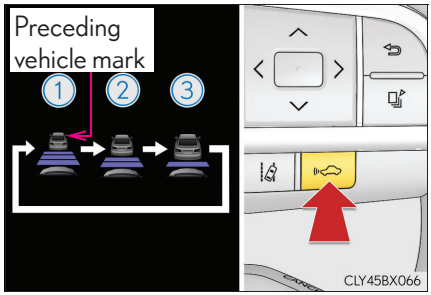
Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

① Long

② Medium

③ Short



The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

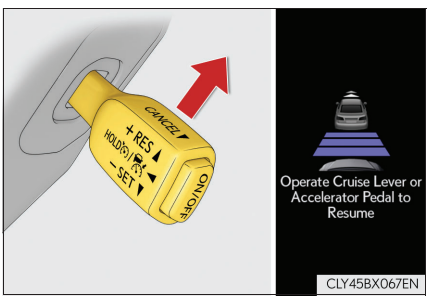
Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance will be about 3 m (10 ft.) to 5 m (16 ft.) regardless of the vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

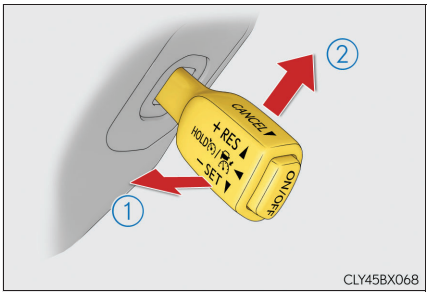
Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, push the lever up.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.



Canceling and resuming the speed control



① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.

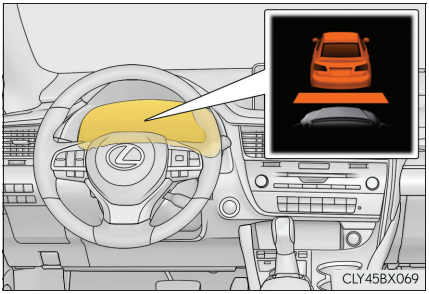
The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

(When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the setting.)

② Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, when a vehicle ahead is not detected, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or less.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)



When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

■ Warnings may not occur when

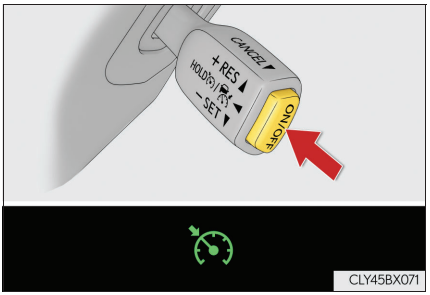
In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar sensor, etc.

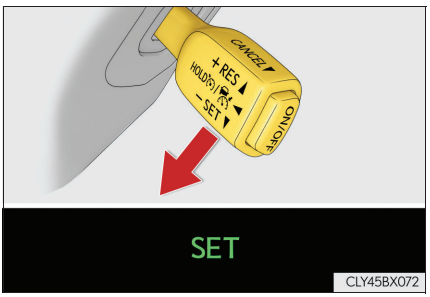
1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the "ON/OFF" button for 1.5 seconds or more.



Immediately after the "ON/OFF" button is pressed, the radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the lever with the cruise control off.

2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.



Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 341

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 343

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph). However, when a preceding vehicle is detected, the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set even if the vehicle speed is at or below approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) when there are no vehicles ahead.
- The preceding vehicle leaves the lane when your vehicle is following at a vehicle speed below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph). Otherwise, the sensor cannot properly detect the vehicle.
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- Pre-crash braking is activated.
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
  - The driver's door is opened.
  - The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- Pre-crash braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

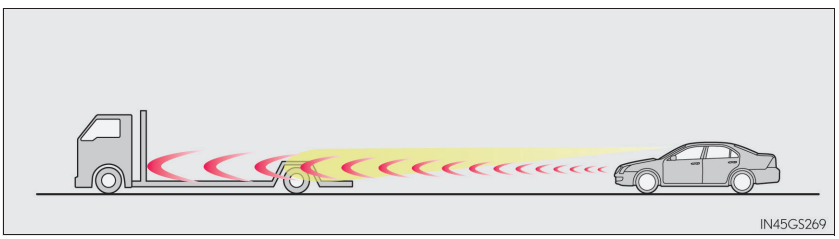
■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

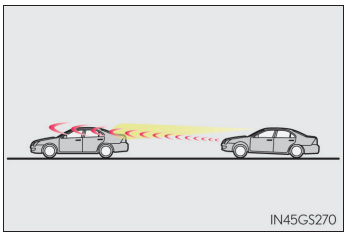
■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 343) may not be activated.

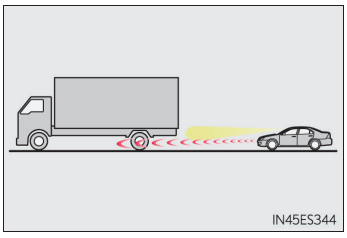
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance

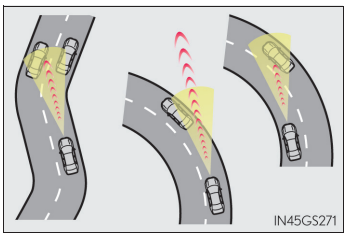


Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly

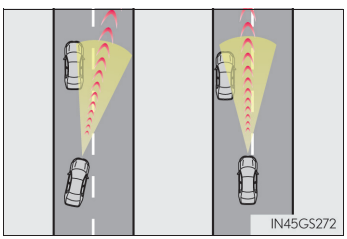
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

Dynamic radar cruise control*

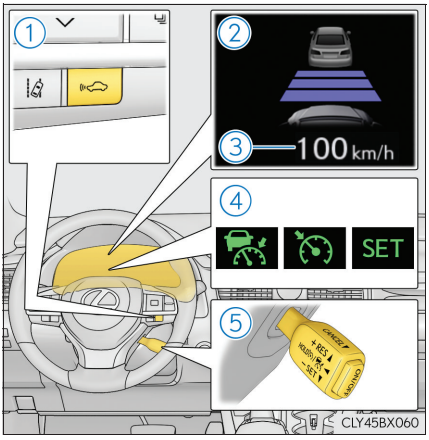
Summary of functions

In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates and decelerates to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P. 351)
- Constant speed control mode (→P. 356)

① Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
② Display
③ Set speed
④ Indicators
⑤ Cruise control switch



*: If equipped

⚠ WARNING

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.

The dynamic radar cruise control provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.

Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has limited capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ To avoid inadvertent dynamic radar cruise control activation

Switch the dynamic radar cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

⚠ WARNING

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

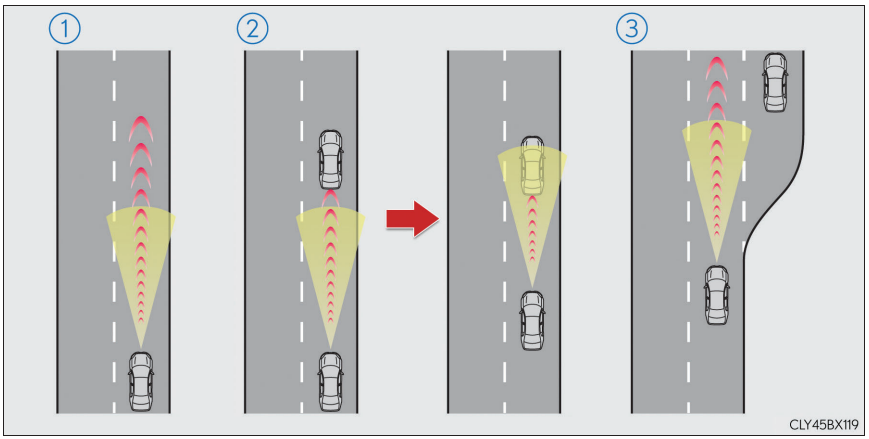
Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclers, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar sensor or camera sensor
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 120 m (400 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



① Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance button.

② Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

③ Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

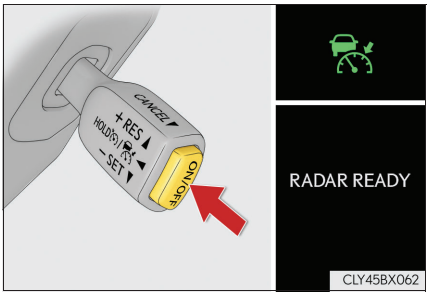
Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

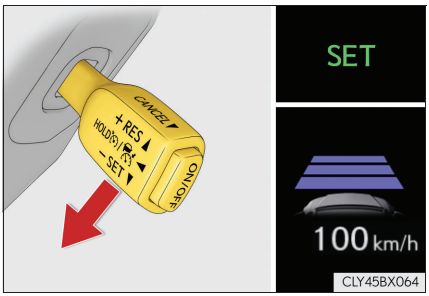
If the "ON/OFF" button is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P. 356)



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

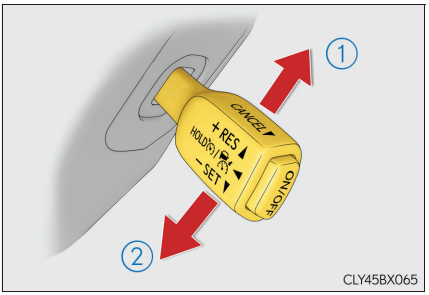
To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.

① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever up or down to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.



In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

▶ For Europe

Fine adjustment: By 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the lever is held

▶ Except for Europe

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 356), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the lever is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

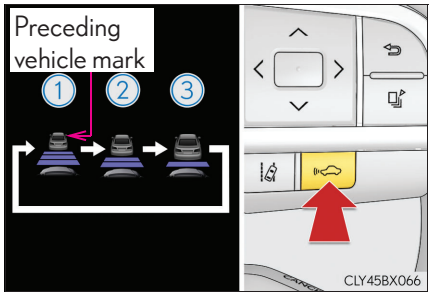
Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

① Long

② Medium

③ Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

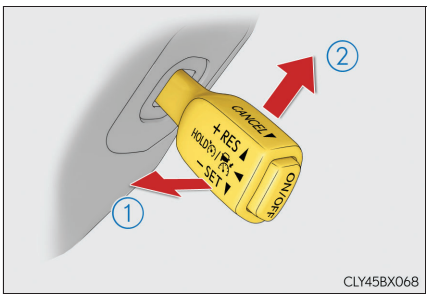
Canceling and resuming the speed control

① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

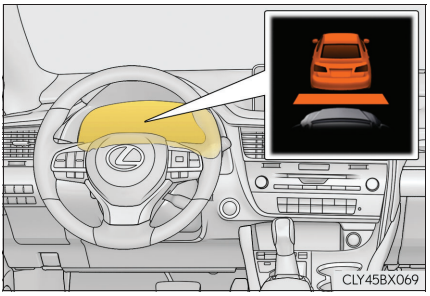
② Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or less.



Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



Warnings may not occur when

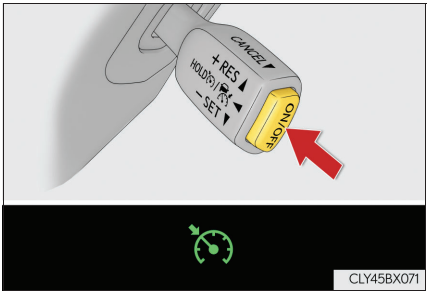
In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar sensor, etc.

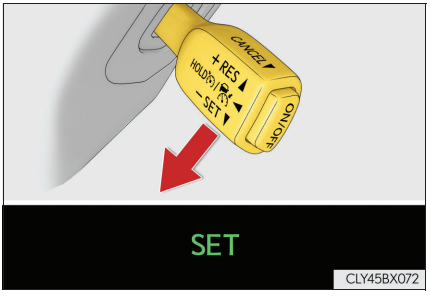
1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the "ON/OFF" button for 1.5 seconds or more.



Immediately after the "ON/OFF" button is pressed, the radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the lever with the cruise control off.

2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.



Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 353

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 354

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- Pre-crash braking is activated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- Pre-crash braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

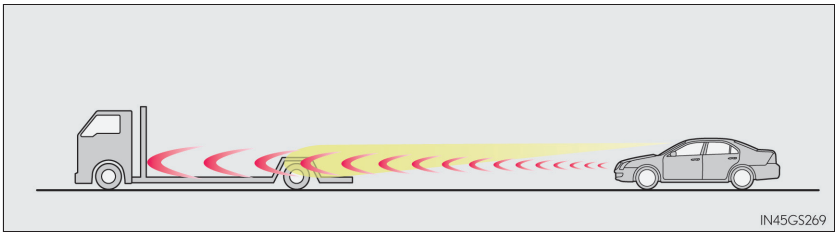
■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

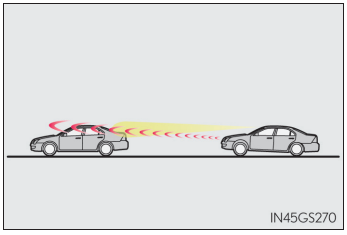
■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 355) may not be activated.

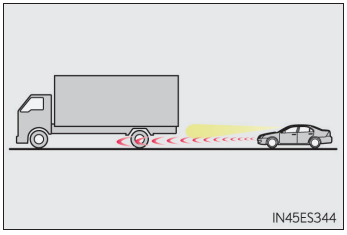
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)


IN45GS269

- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)


IN45GS270

- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance

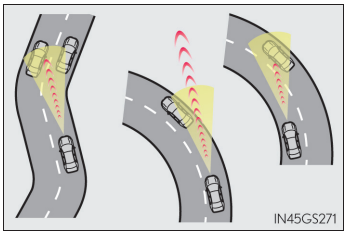

IN45ES344

■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

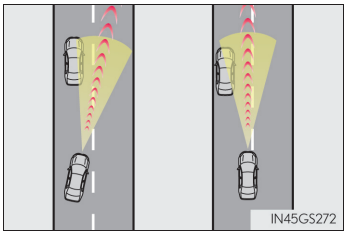
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



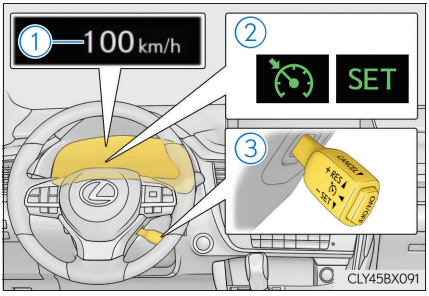
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

Cruise control*

Summary of functions

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without operating the accelerator pedal.

① Set speed
② Indicators
③ Cruise control switch

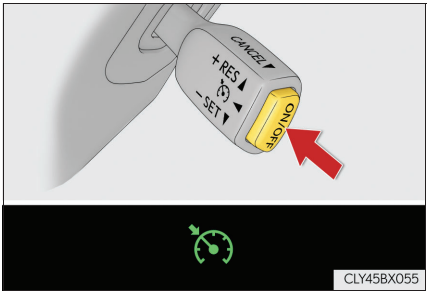


Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

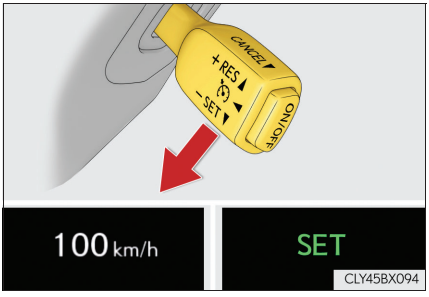
Cruise control indicator will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 40 km/h [25 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator and set speed will be displayed on the multi-information display.



The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

*: If equipped

Adjusting the set speed

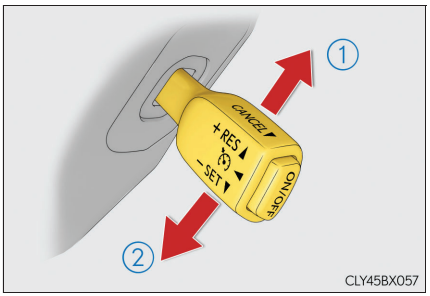
To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.

① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.



The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

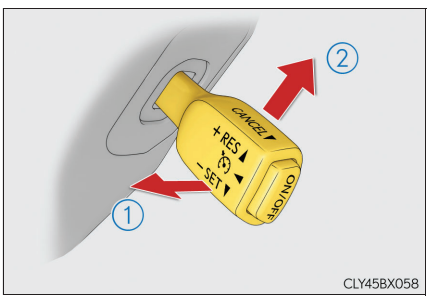
Canceling and resuming the constant speed control

① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

② Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

However, resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).



■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated by operating accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cancelation of cruise control**

Cruise control is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

■ **If "Cruise Control Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

Press the "ON/OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Stop & Start system*

The Stop & Start system stops and restarts the engine according to the brake pedal operation and other operations when the vehicle is stopped.

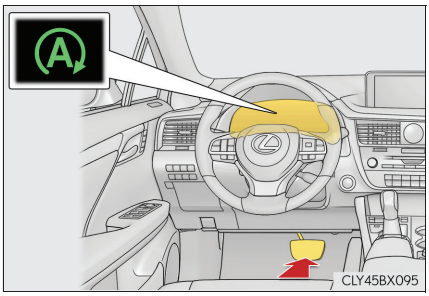
Stop & Start system operation

◆ When the brake hold system is disabled

■ Stopping the engine

While driving with the shift lever in D or M, depress the brake pedal, and stop the vehicle.

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.



■ Restarting the engine

Release the brake pedal.

The Stop & Start indicator will turn off.

*: If equipped

When the brake hold system is enabled

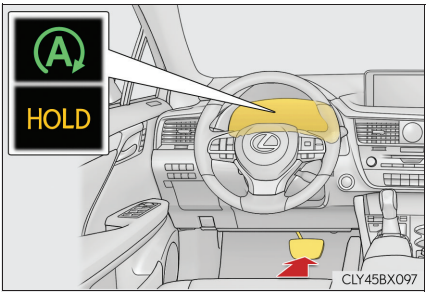
The Stop & Start system is operational when the brake hold system is operating. (→P. 261)

Stopping the engine

While driving with the shift lever in D or M, depress the brake pedal, and stop the vehicle.

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.

While the brake hold system is operating, the brake hold operated indicator (yellow) will come on. If the brake pedal is released, the engine will remain stopped by the Stop & Start system.



Restarting the engine

Depress the accelerator pedal. (Releasing the brake pedal will not restart the engine.)

The Stop & Start indicator and brake hold operated indicator (yellow) will turn off.

Stop & Start system operation when the brake hold system is operating

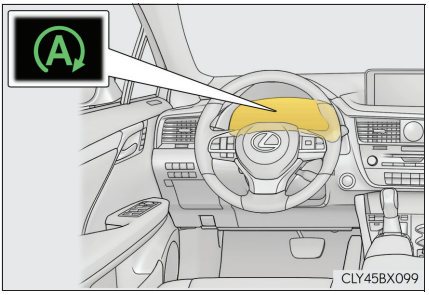
- If the engine is restarted automatically by the Stop & Start system when the brake hold system is operating, the brake hold system will continue to apply the brakes.
- If the operation conditions of the brake hold system are no longer met (→P. 261) while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the brake hold system will stop operating.

  At this time, the parking brake will be applied automatically and the engine will be restarted automatically.

When the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating (if equipped)

The Stop & Start system is operational during a controlled stop by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range. (→P. 339)

Stopping the engine



While driving with the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the engine will stop automatically if the vehicle comes to a complete stop through a controlled stop. (The engine will stop automatically even though the brake pedal is not depressed.)

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.

Restarting the engine

When the preceding vehicle starts off, the engine will restart automatically.

The Stop & Start indicator will turn off.

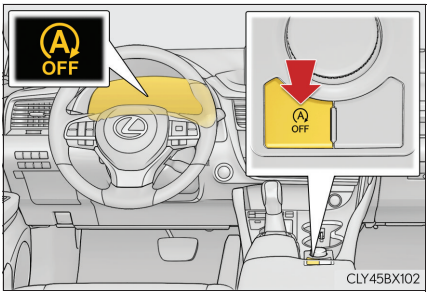
Stop & Start system operation during a controlled stop by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

If the engine is restarted automatically by the Stop & Start system during a controlled stop by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, the controlled stop will continue. (Resuming follow-up cruising after a controlled stop: →P. 342)

Disabling the Stop & Start system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

The Stop & Start cancel indicator will come on.
Pressing the switch again will enable the Stop & Start system and the Stop & Start cancel indicator will turn off.



Automatic reactivation of the Stop & Start system

Even if the Stop & Start system is disabled by the Stop & Start cancel switch, it will be automatically enabled when the engine switch is turned off, and then to the engine started.

If the Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed

- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will restart the engine.
- With the Stop & Start system disabled, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will enable the system but not stop the engine. From the next time the vehicle is stopped (after the Stop & Start system has been enabled), the engine will be stopped.

Hill-start assist control

If the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system when the vehicle is on an incline, brake force is temporarily maintained to prevent rolling backwards until the engine is restarted and drive force is generated. When drive force is generated, the maintained brake force is automatically canceled.

- This function operates on flat surfaces as well as steep inclines.
- Sound may be generated from the brakes, but this is not a malfunction.
- Brake pedal response may change and vibration may occur, but these are not malfunctions.

■ Operating conditions

● The Stop & Start system is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The brake pedal is being depressed firmly. (Except when the vehicle comes to a controlled stop while driving with the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode [if equipped])
- The shift lever is in D or M.
-  is off.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The engine is adequately warmed up.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The accelerator pedal is not being depressed.
- The outside temperature is -5°C (23°F) or higher.
- The hood is closed.

● In the following situations the engine may not be stopped by the Stop & Start system. This is not a malfunction of the Stop & Start system.

- The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low.
- The battery is not sufficiently charged, such as if the vehicle has been parked for a long time and the battery charge has decreased, the electric load is large, the battery temperature is excessively low or the battery has deteriorated, or is undergoing a periodic recharge.
- The brake booster vacuum is low.
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The steering wheel is being operated.
- Due to traffic or other circumstances the vehicle is being stopped repeatedly.
- The vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.
- Engine coolant temperature or transmission fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- The battery fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- For a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected.
- For a while after the battery replacement.

● In the following situations, the engine will restart automatically if the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system. (To enable stopping of the engine by the Stop & Start system, drive the vehicle.)

- The air conditioning system is turned on.
-  is turned on.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The shift lever is shifted to a position other than D or M.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed.
- The vehicle starts to roll on an incline.

- In the following situations, the engine may restart automatically if the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system. (To enable stopping of the engine by the Stop & Start system, drive the vehicle.)
  - The brake pedal is pumped or strongly depressed.
  - The air conditioning system is being used.
  - The battery is not sufficiently charged.

■ **Hood**

- If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P. 245)
- If the hood is closed after the engine is started with the hood open, the Stop & Start system will not operate. Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.

■ **When to use the Stop & Start system**

- Use the Stop & Start system when stopping the vehicle temporarily at red lights, intersections, etc. When stopping the vehicle for a longer period of time, stop the engine completely.
- When the system cannot operate, is canceled, or is malfunctioning, warning messages and a warning buzzer are used to inform the driver. (→P. 371)
- If the engine switch is pressed when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P. 245)
- When the engine is restarted by the Stop & Start system, the power outlets may be temporarily unusable, but this is not a malfunction.
- Installation and removal of electrical components and wireless devices may affect the Stop & Start system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

■ **If the windshield is fogged up while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

Turn  on. (→P. 540)

If the windshield fogs up frequently, press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the system.

■ **Air conditioning system while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

While the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the air conditioning system (cooling, heating and dehumidifying functions) is canceled and will only blow air or will stop blowing air. In order to prevent the air conditioning system from being canceled, disable the Stop & Start system by pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch.

■ **Changing the idling stop time with the air conditioning system on**

The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is on can be changed on the  (→P. 108) or  (→P. 109). (The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is off cannot be changed.)

■ **The Stop & Start system protection function**

- When an excessively loud sound is being projected by the audio system, the audio system may be automatically cut off in order to reduce battery consumption. If this occurs, turn the engine switch off, wait for 3 seconds or longer and then turn it to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode to re-enable the audio system.
- The audio system may not be activated when the battery terminals are disconnected and then reconnected. If this occurs, turn the engine switch off and then repeat the following operation twice to activate the audio system normally.
  - Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then to OFF.

■ **Replacing the battery**

→P. 711

■ **Displaying the Stop & Start system status**

→P. 108

Multi-information display messages

If the following situations, and a message may be displayed on the multi-information display.

● When the engine cannot be stopped by the Stop & Start system

Message	Details
"Depress Brake Firmly to Activate"	**The brake pedal is not depressed enough.** If the brake pedal is depressed further, the system will operate.
"For Climate Control"	• **The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low.** If the difference between the set temperature and cabin temperature is small, the system will be enabled. • **is ON.**
"Battery Charging"	• **The battery charge amount may be low.** Engine stop is temporarily prohibited to prioritize charging of the battery, but if the engine is operated for a short while, engine stop is allowed. • **A refresh charge may be occurring, such as when the battery is undergoing a periodic recharge, for a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected, for a while after the battery has been replaced, etc.** After a refresh charge of approximately 5 to 60 minutes completes, the system can be operated.
"For Brake System"	• **The vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.** • **The brake booster vacuum is low.** When the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level, the system will be enabled.
"Steering Wheel Turned"	**The steering wheel has been operated.**
"Driver Seat Belt Unbuckled"	**The driver seat belt is not fastened.**
"Stop & Start Unavailable"	• **The Stop & Start system is temporarily disabled.** Operate the engine for a short while. • **The engine may have been started with the hood open.** Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait for 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.
"System Temperature Low"	• **The battery may be cold.** Operate the engine for a short while to increase the temperature in the engine compartment.

Message	Details
 "System Temperature High"	**The battery may be extremely hot.** Turn the engine switch off and allow the engine compartment to cool sufficiently.
 "Non-Dedicated Battery"	**A non-dedicated battery for the Stop & Start system may have been installed.** The Stop & Start system does not operate. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

● When the engine automatically restarts while stopped by the Stop & Start system

Message	Details
 "For Climate Control"	• **The air conditioning system has been turned on or is being used.** • **has been turned on.**
 "For Brake System"	**The brake pedal has been depressed further or pumped.** The system will be enabled after the engine runs and the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level.
 "Battery Charging"	**The battery charge may have become low.** The engine is restarted to prioritize battery charging. Operating the engine for a short while allows the system to recover.
 "Steering Wheel Turned"	**The steering wheel was operated.**
 "Driver Seat Belt Unbuckled"	**The driver seat belt has been unfastened.**

■ **If "Stop & Start System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If the Stop & Start cancel indicator continues to flash**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

When the Stop & Start system is operating

- Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake when necessary while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on). (Except when the brake hold system is operating or when the vehicle comes to a controlled stop while driving with the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode [if equipped])
- Do not allow anyone to leave the vehicle while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on).
  An accident may occur due to the automatic engine start function.
- Ensure that the engine is not stopped by the Stop & Start system while the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area. The engine may restart due to the automatic engine start function, causing exhaust gases to collect and enter the vehicle, possibly resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

If any of the following situations occur, the Stop & Start system may not operate correctly. Have your vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

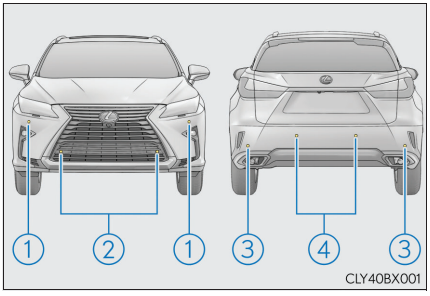
- While the driver's seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light flashes.
- Even though the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light does not illuminate.
- Even though the driver's door is closed, the open door warning is displayed on the multi-information display or the interior light is illuminated when door linked illumination is enabled (→P. 551).
- Even though the driver's door is open, the open door warning is not displayed on the multi-information display or the interior light does not illuminate when door linked illumination is enabled (→P. 551).

Lexus parking assist-sensor*

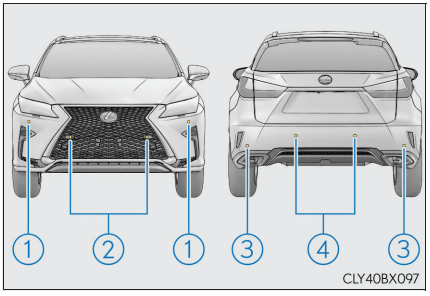
The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the displays and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Types of sensors

▶ Except F SPORT models



▶ F SPORT models



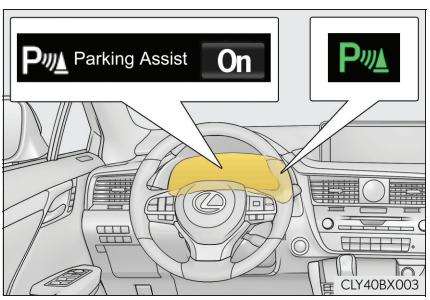
① Front corner sensors
② Front center sensors
③ Rear corner sensors
④ Rear center sensors

Turning Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

1 Press "<" or ">" of the meter control switches, select ⚙.

2 Press "∧" or "∨" of the meter control switches, select "Parking Assist".

When on, the Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator comes on to inform the driver that the system is operational.



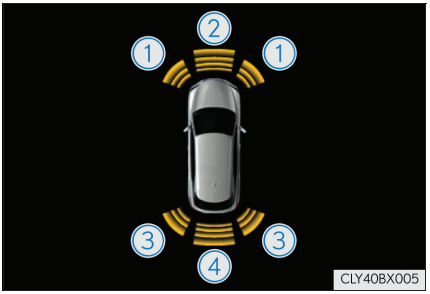
*: If equipped

Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, the following displays inform the driver of the position and distance to the obstacle.

■ Multi-information display

① Front corner sensor operation
② Front center sensor operation
③ Rear corner sensor operation
④ Rear center sensor operation



■ Lexus Display Audio screen

① Lexus parking assist-sensor display

When the vehicle is moving forward.

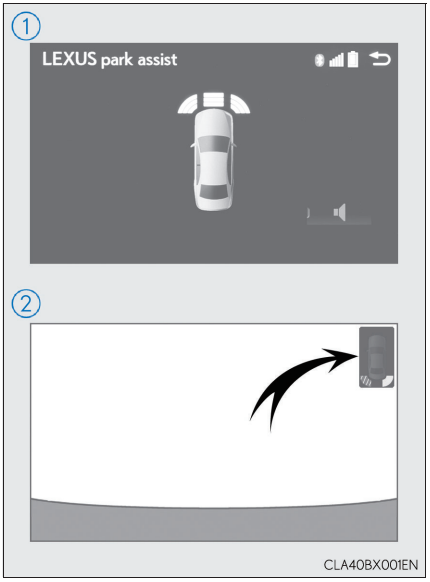
A graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 379)

: Select to mute the buzzer sounds.

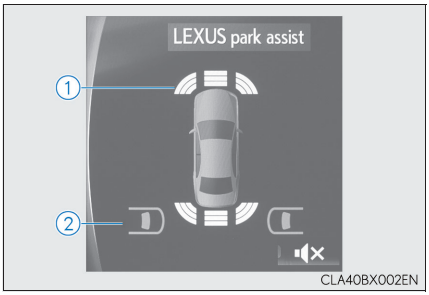
② Insert display

When the vehicle is moving backward.

A simplified image is displayed on the upper part of the screen when an obstacle is detected.



Navigation system screen



① Lexus parking assist-sensor

② Rear Crossing Traffic Alert (if equipped)

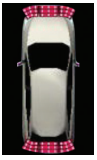
A graphic is automatically displayed on the side display when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 379)

: Select to mute the buzzer sounds. This function is available when the vehicle is moving forward.

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

Distance display

Sensors that detect an obstacle will illuminate continuously or blink.

Display*1	Insert display		Approximate distance to obstacle	
	Lexus parking assist monitor	Panoramic view monitor	Front and rear center sensor	Front and rear corner sensor
 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)	 (blinking slowly)	Front center sensor: 100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.) Rear center sensor: 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)	—
 (continuous)	 (blinking)	 (blinking)	60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)	60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)
 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)	 (blinking rapidly)	45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 35 cm (1.2 ft.)	45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 35 cm (1.2 ft.)
 (blinking*2 or continuous*3)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	Less than 35 cm (1.2 ft.)	Less than 35 cm (1.2 ft.)

*1: The images may differ from that shown in the illustrations. (→P. 375)

*2: Multi-information display

*3: Audio system screen

■ Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer sounds faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously: Approximately 35 cm (1.2 ft.).
- When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.

Detection range of the sensors

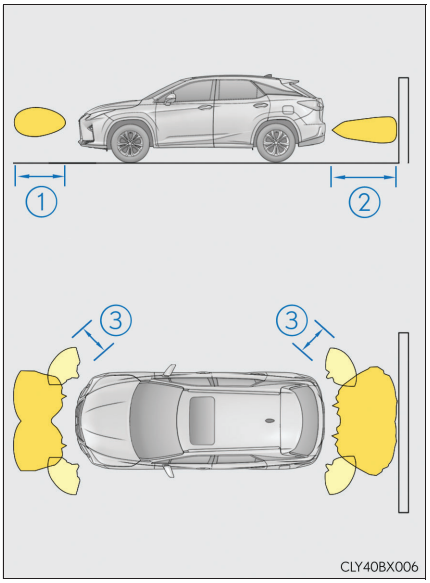
① Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

② Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

③ Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.



Setting up Lexus parking assist-sensor

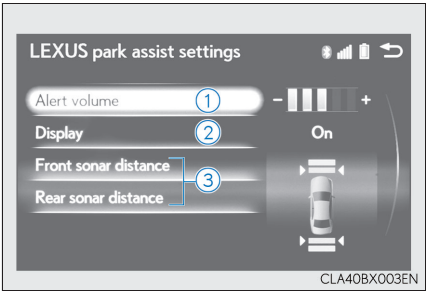
You can change the buzzer sounds volume and the screen operating conditions when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Lexus Display Audio controller/Remote Touch, and then select on the screen.

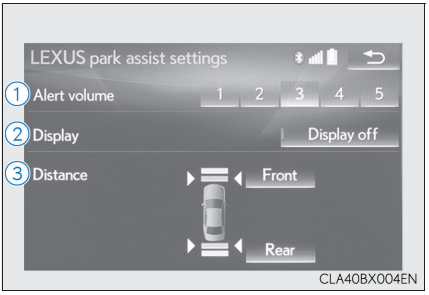
2 Select "Vehicle", and then select "LEXUS park assist" on the screen.

3 Select the desired item.

▶ Lexus Display Audio screen



▶ Navigation system screen



① The buzzer sounds volume can be adjusted.

② On or off can be selected for Lexus parking assist-sensor display.

③ Both the front or rear center sensors display and tone indication can be set.

■ **The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when**

● Front corner sensors:

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in other than P.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph). (At any speed when the shift lever is in R)

● Front center sensors:

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in other than P or R.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).

● Rear corner and rear center sensors:

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in R.

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor display**

● Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system: When an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist monitor is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the upper part of the screen even if the display setting has been set to off.

● Vehicles with a navigation system: If the Lexus parking assist-sensor display is set to on, detected objects will also be displayed on the panoramic view monitor. For details, refer to "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

■ **Sensor detection information**

● The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's bumper.

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor. (Wiping the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- The sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.) In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the screen may show an abnormal display, or obstacles may not be detected.
- The sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- The sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
- If obstacles draw too close to the sensor.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.
- People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shape, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
  - Sharply-angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle
- The following situations may occur during use.
  - Depending on the shape of the obstacle and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
  - Obstacles may not be detected if they are too close to the sensor.
  - There will be a short delay between obstacle detection and display. Even at slow speeds, there is a possibility that the obstacle will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the buzzer sounds.
  - Thin posts or objects lower than the sensor may not be detected when approached, even if they have been detected once.
  - It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.

If "Clean Parking Assist Sensor" is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In such cases, if it is removed from the sensor, the system should return to normal.
Also, due to the sensor being frozen at low temperatures, a malfunction display may appear or an obstacle may not be detected. If the sensor thaws out, the system should return to normal.

If "Parking Assist Malfunction" is displayed on the multi-information display

Depending on the malfunction of the sensor, the device may not be working normally.
Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 379, 734)

⚠ WARNING

When using the Lexus parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.

NOTICE

■ When using Lexus parking assist-sensor

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction, etc. Have the vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- The Lexus parking assist-sensor operation display flashes, and a buzzer sounds when no obstacles are detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.
- If the bumper collides with something.
- If the display shows continuously without beeping, except when the buzzer mute switch has been turned on.
- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
  If the error occurs even if there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

Lexus parking assist monitor*

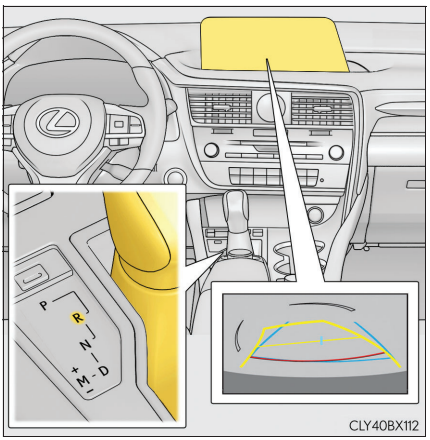
The parking assist monitor assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while backing up, for example while parking.

The screen illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the screen.

The rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in R and the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

The parking assist monitor system will be deactivated when the shift lever is in any position other than R.

When the shift lever is shifted to R and any mode button (such as "MENU") is pressed, the parking assist monitor system is canceled, and the screen is switched to the mode of the button that was pressed.



*: If equipped

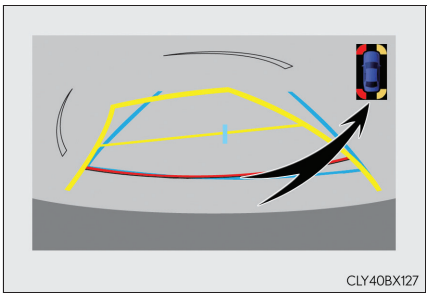
Using the Lexus parking assist monitor

Screen display

The parking assist monitor screen will be displayed if the shift position is shifted to R while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

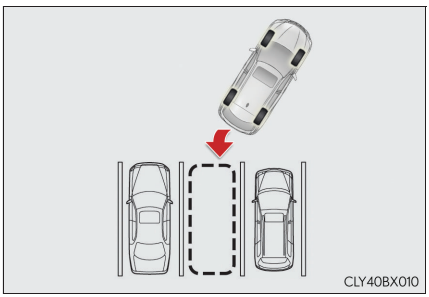
Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)

A simplified image is displayed on the upper part of the screen when an obstacle is detected.


CLY40BX127

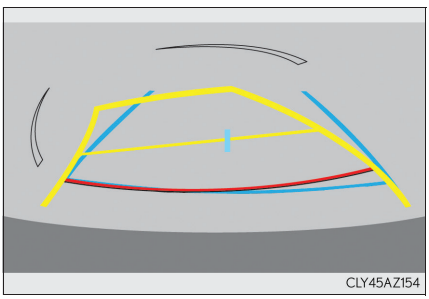
Using the system

Use any of the following modes.


CLY40BX010

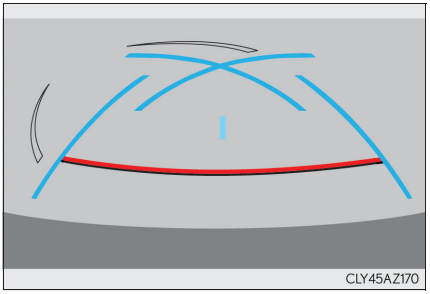
- Estimated course line display mode (→P. 386)

  Estimated course lines are displayed which move in accordance with the operation of the steering wheel.


CLY45AZ154

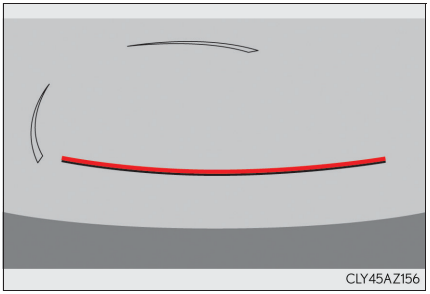
● Parking assist guide line display mode (→P. 388)

The steering wheel return points (parking assist guide lines) are displayed.


CLY45AZ170

● Distance guide line display mode

Distance guide lines only are displayed.


CLY45AZ156

Switching the display mode

When the shift lever is in any position other than R, the display mode can be changed in the following procedure.

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Lexus Display Audio controller, and then select "Setup" on the screen.

2 Select "Vehicle", and then select "Back camera guide line setting" on the screen.

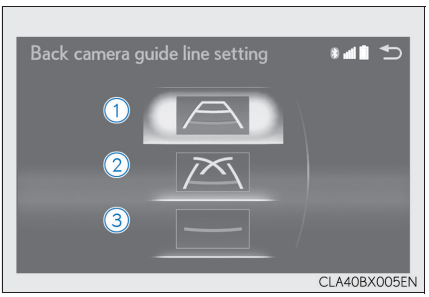
3 Select the desired display mode.

① Estimated course line display mode (→P. 386)

② Parking assist guide line display mode (→P. 388)

③ Distance guide line display mode

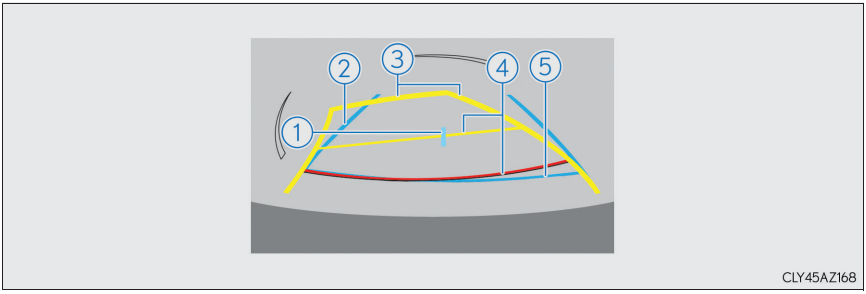
Distance guide lines only are displayed.



CLA40BX005EN

Estimated course line display mode

■ Screen description



① Vehicle center guide line

The line indicates the estimated vehicle center on the ground.

② Vehicle width guide line

The line indicates a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up.
The displayed width is wider than the actual vehicle width.
The line aligns with the estimated course lines when the steering wheel is straight.

③ Estimated course lines

The lines show an estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

④ Distance guide line

The line moves, together with the estimated course lines, in sync with the steering wheel. The line shows points approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) and approximately 1 m (3 ft.) (yellow) from the center of the edge of the bumper.

⑤ Distance guide line

The line shows distance behind the vehicle, a point approximately 0.5 m. (1.5 ft.) (blue) from the edge of the bumper.

Parking operation

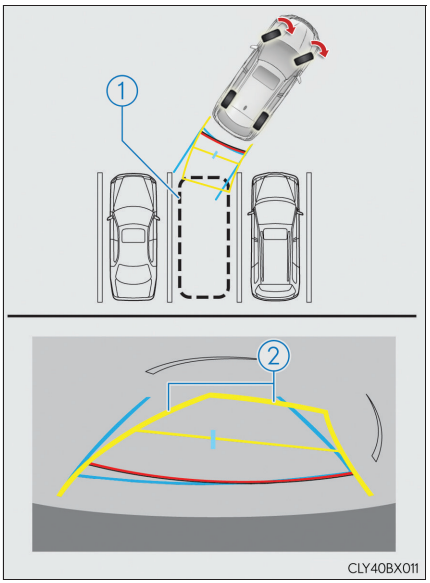
When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to R.

2 Turn the steering wheel so that the estimated course lines are within the parking space, and back up slowly.

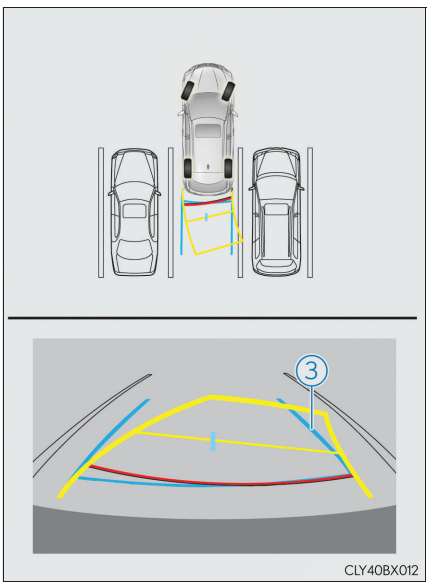
① Parking space

② Estimated course lines



3 When the rear position of the vehicle has entered the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width guide lines are within the left and right dividing lines of the parking space.

③ Vehicle width guide line

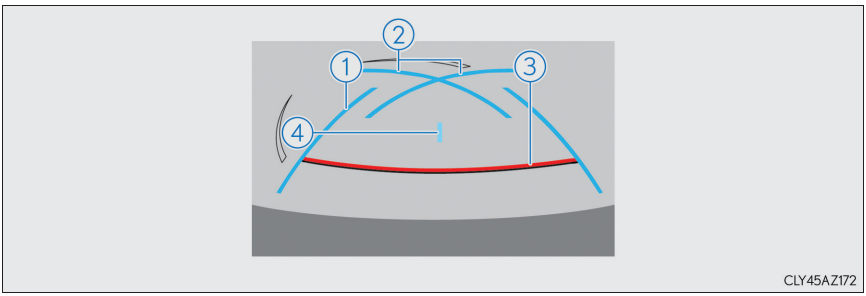


4 Once the vehicle width guide lines and the parking space lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

Parking assist guide line display mode

Screen description



① Vehicle width guide lines
These lines indicate a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up. The displayed width is wider than the actual vehicle width.

② Parking assist guide lines
These lines indicate the path of the smallest turn possible behind the vehicle.
These lines also indicate the approximate position of the steering wheel when parking.

③ Distance guide line
This line (red) indicates points approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) behind the rear bumper of your vehicle.

④ Vehicle center guide line
The line indicates the estimated vehicle center on the ground.

Parking operation

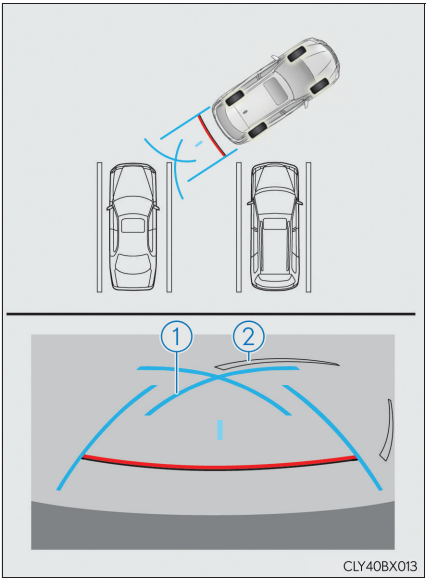
When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to R.

2 Back up until the parking assist guide line meets the edge of the left-hand dividing line of the parking space.

① Parking assist guide line

② Parking space dividing line



3 Turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and back up slowly.

4 Once the vehicle is parallel with the parking space, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

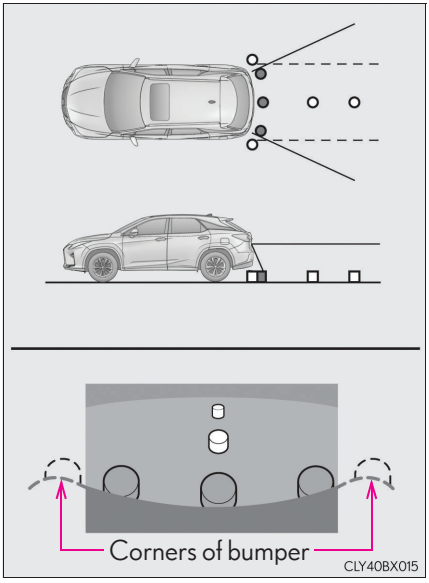
5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

Lexus parking assist monitor precautions

Area displayed on screen

The parking assist monitor displays an image of the view from the bumper of the rear area of the vehicle.

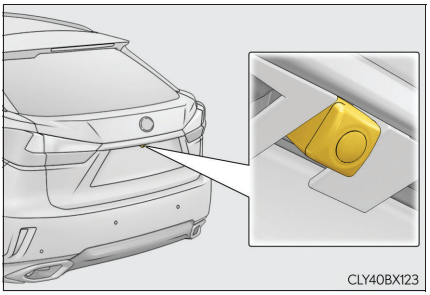
The image of the Lexus parking assist monitor can be adjusted.
(→P. 451)



- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation conditions.
- Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- Items which are located higher than the camera may not be displayed on the monitor.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a backlit license plate, it may interfere with the display.

Lexus parking assist monitor camera

The camera for the parking assist monitor is located above the license plate.



- Using the camera

  If dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud etc.) is adhering to the camera, it cannot transmit a clear image. In this case, flush it with a large quantity of water and wipe the camera lens clean with a soft and wet cloth.

Differences between the screen and the actual road

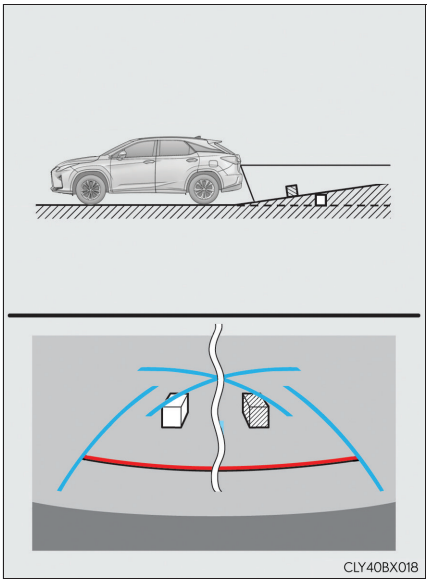
The distance guide lines and the vehicle width guide lines may not actually be parallel with the dividing lines of the parking space, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

The distances between the vehicle width guide lines and the left and right dividing lines of the parking space may not be equal, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

The distance guide lines give a distance guide for flat road surfaces. In any of the following situations, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.

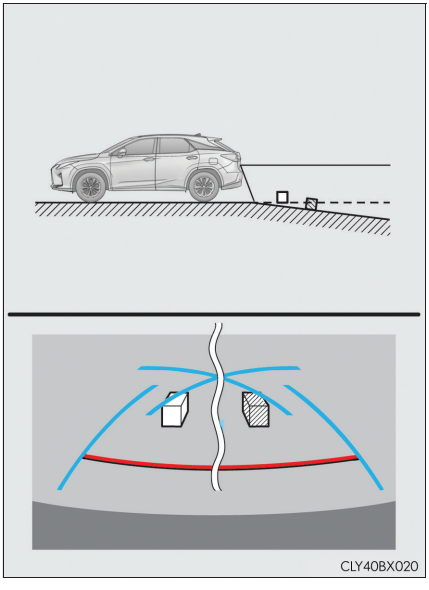
● When the ground behind the vehicle slopes up sharply

The distance guide lines will appear to be closer to the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be farther away than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guidelines and the actual distance/course on the road.


CLY40BX018

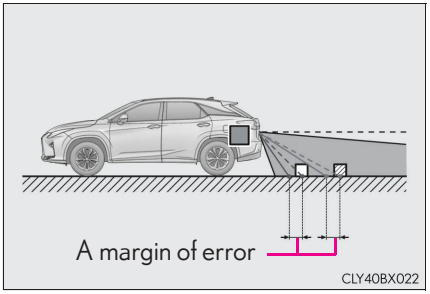
● When the ground behind the vehicle slopes down sharply

The distance guide lines will appear to be further from the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be closer than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guidelines and the actual distance/course on the road.


CLY40BX020

● When any part of the vehicle sags

When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.

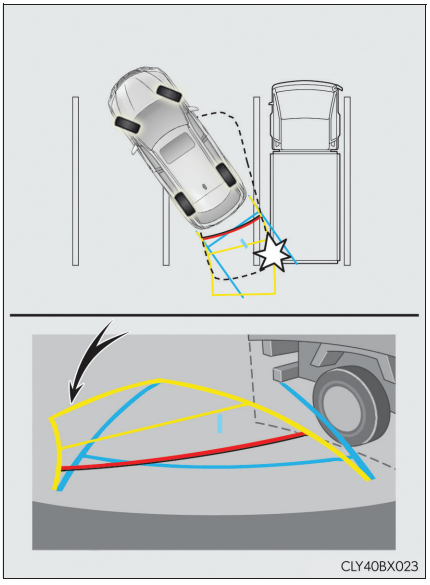


When approaching three-dimensional objects

The estimated course lines target a flat surfaced objects (such as the road). It is not possible to determine the position of three-dimensional objects (such as vehicles) using the estimated course lines and distance guide lines. When approaching a three-dimensional object that extends outward (such as the flatbed of a truck), be careful of the following.

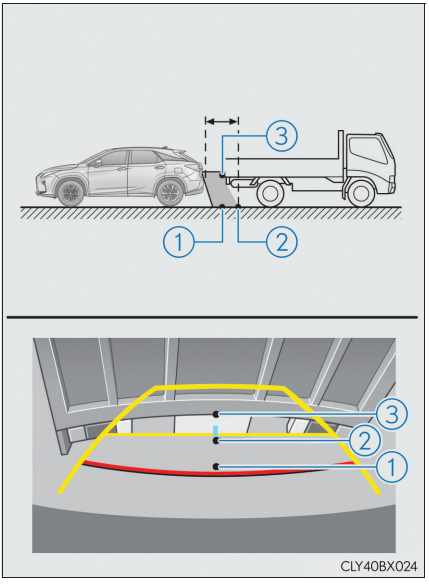
● Estimated course lines

Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. In the case shown in the illustration, the truck appears to be outside of the estimated course lines and the vehicle does not look as if it will hits the truck. However, the rear body of the truck may actually cross over the estimated course lines. In reality if you back up as guided by the estimated course lines, the vehicle may hit the truck.



● Distance guidelines

Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. On the screen, it appears that a truck is parking at point ②. However, in reality if you back up to point ①, you will hit the truck. On the screen, it appears that ① is closest and ③ is farthest away. However, in reality, the distance to ① and ③ is the same and ② is farther than ① and ③.



Things you should know

If you notice any symptoms

If you notice any of the following symptoms, refer to the likely cause and the solution, and re-check.

If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Likely cause	Solution
❑ **The image is difficult to see**	
• The vehicle is in a dark area • The temperature around the lens is either high or low • The outside temperature is low • There are water droplets on the camera • It is raining or humid • Foreign matter (mud, etc.) is adhering to the camera • There are scratches on the camera • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc.	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings. (Use the monitor again once conditions have been improved.) The image on the Lexus parking assist monitor system screen can be adjusted. (→P. 451)
❑ **The image is blurry**	
Dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud, etc.) is adhering to the camera.	Flush the camera with a large quantity of water and wipe the camera lens clean with a soft and wet cloth.
❑ **The image is out of alignment**	
The camera or surrounding area has received a strong impact.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
❑ **The guide lines are very far out of alignment**	
The camera position is out of alignment.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
• The vehicle is tilted (there is a heavy load on the vehicle, tire pressure is low due to a tire puncture, etc.) • The vehicle is used on an incline.	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings.

Likely cause	Solution
❑ The estimated course lines move even though the steering wheel is straight	
There is a malfunction in the signals being output by the steering sensor.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
❑ Guide lines are not displayed	
The back door is open.	Close the back door. If this does not resolve the symptom, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
❑ The estimated course lines are not displayed	
• The steering wheel has been moved while the battery was being reinstalled. • Battery power is low. • The steering sensor has been reinstalled. • There is a malfunction in the signals being output by the steering sensor.	Stop the vehicle, and turn the steering wheel as far as it will go to the left and right. If this does not resolve the symptom, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

When using the Lexus parking assist monitor system

The parking assist monitor is a supplemental device intended to assist the driver when backing up. When backing up, be sure to check visually behind and all around the vehicle before proceeding.

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend on the parking assist monitor entirely when backing up. The image and the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state.
  Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
- Be sure to back up slowly, depressing the brake pedal to control vehicle speed.
- If you seem likely to hit nearby vehicles, obstacles, people or mount the shoulder, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- The instructions given are only guidelines.
  When and how much to turn the steering wheel will vary according to traffic conditions, road surface conditions, vehicle condition, etc. when parking. It is necessary to be fully aware of this before using the parking assist system.
- When parking, be sure to check that the parking space will accommodate your vehicle before maneuvering into it.
- Do not use the parking assist monitor in the following cases:
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires
  - When the back door is not closed completely
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.
- In low temperatures, the screen may darken or the image may become faint. The image could distort when the vehicle is moving, or you may become unable to see the image on the screen. Be sure to check direct visually and with the mirrors all around the vehicle before proceeding.
- If the tire sizes are changed, the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distances between objects and pedestrians that appear in the image displayed on the screen will differ from the actual distances. (→P. 391)
- Estimated course line display mode: If the steering wheel is straight and the vehicle width guide lines and the estimated course lines are not in alignment, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ How to use the camera

● The parking assist monitor may not operate properly in the following cases.

- If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- When cleaning the camera lens, flush the camera with a large quantity of water and wipe it with a soft and wet cloth. Strongly rubbing the camera lens may cause the camera lens to be scratched and unable to transmit a clear image.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.
- When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium light or mercury light etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

● Do not expose the camera to strong impact as this could cause a malfunction. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

Summary of the Blind Spot Monitor

The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that has 2 functions:

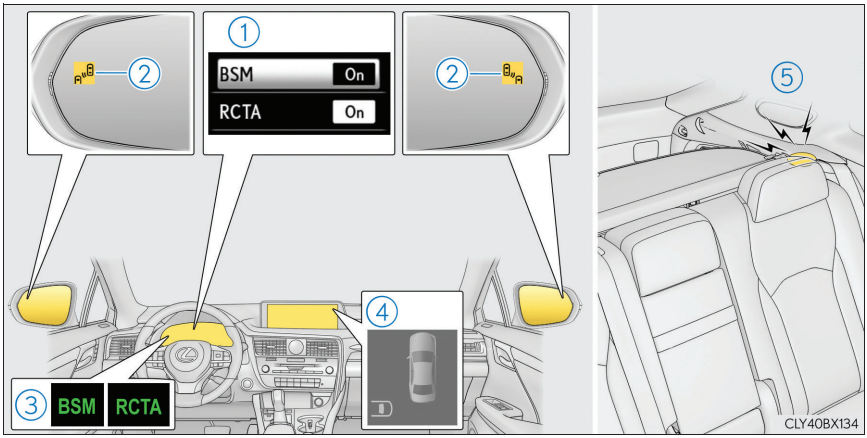
- The BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) function

  Assists the driver in making a decision when changing lanes
- The RCTA (Rear Crossing Traffic Alert) function

  Assists the driver when backing up

These functions use same sensors.

*: If equipped



① Multi-information display

Turning the BSM function/RCTA function on/off. (→P. 401)

The RCTA function is available when the BSM function is on.

② Outside rear view mirror indicators

BSM function:
When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator will flash.

RCTA function:
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

③ "BSM" indicator/"RCTA" indicator

When the BSM function/RCTA function is turned on, the indicator illuminates.

④ Monitor screen display (RCTA function only) (if equipped)

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the RCTA icon (→P. 410) for the detected side will be displayed on the monitor screen. This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from the left at the rear of the vehicle.

⑤ RCTA buzzer (RCTA function only)

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer will sound. The buzzer also sounds for approximately 1 second immediately after the BSM function is operated to turn the system on.

Turning the BSM function/RCTA function on/off

1 Press "<" or ">" of the meter control switches, select .

2 Press "∧" or "∨" of the meter control switches, select "BSM".

3 Press "∧" or "∨" of the meter control switches, select "BSM" or "RCTA".

Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

Hearing the RCTA buzzer

The RCTA buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

When there is a malfunction in the Blind Spot Monitor

If a system malfunction is detected due to any of the following, a warning message will be displayed: (→P. 667)

- A sensor is malfunctioning
- A sensor is dirty or covered with snow or a sticker
- The outside temperature is extremely high or low
- Sensor voltage is abnormal
- A sensor is misaligned

Certification for the Blind Spot Monitor

▶ For vehicles sold in Israel

Name of permit owner: **Toyota** Telephone: **+972 362 55410**
Model: SRR3-A Manufacturer: **Continental** Country of manufacture: **Germany**
Type approval No.: **52-71514** Valid from: **23/02/2015**
Permit No.: **511487761**

▶ For vehicles sold in Ukraine

004

Type approval number: UA.086.00840-14

▶ Except for vehicles sold in Israel and Ukraine

CE0682

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY"(DoC) is available at the following:
DoC address : http://continental.automotive-approvals.de/index.php?produkt=SRR3-A

CONTINENTAL tímto prohlašuje, že tento SRR3-A je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede CONTINENTAL erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr SRR3-A overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt CONTINENTAL, dass sich das Gerät SRR3-A in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigeneinschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab CONTINENTAL seadme SRR3-A vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, CONTINENTAL, declares that this SRR3-A is in compliance with the essential
Por medio de la presente CONTINENTAL declara que el SRR3-A cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ CONTINENTAL ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ SRR3-A ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente CONTINENTAL déclare que l'appareil SRR3-A est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Con la presente CONTINENTAL dichiara che questo SRR3-A è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Ar šo CONTINENTAL deklarē, ka SRR3-A atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo CONTINENTAL deklaruoja, kad šis SRR3-A atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hierbij verklaart CONTINENTAL dat het toestel SRR3-A in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Hawnhekk, CONTINENTAL, jiddikjara li dan SRR3-A jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Alulírott, CONTINENTAL nyilatkozom, hogy a SRR3-A megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Niniejszym CONTINENTAL oświadcza, że SRR3-A jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
CONTINENTAL declara que este SRR3-A está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
CONTINENTAL izjavlja, da je ta SRR3-A v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
CONTINENTAL týmto vyhlasuje, že SRR3-A spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
CONTINENTAL vakuuttaa täten että SRR3-A tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar CONTINENTAL att denna SRR3-A står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir CONTINENTAL yfir því að SRR3-A er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
CONTINENTAL erklærer herved at utstyret SRR3-A er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, CONTINENTAL, декларира, че SRR3-A е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, CONTINENTAL, declară că aparatul SRR3-A este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
"Ovim , CONTINENTAL, izjavljuje da ovaj SRR3-A je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC."
Ovim CONTINENTAL, izjavljuje da je SRR3-A u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi(NN25/2012)

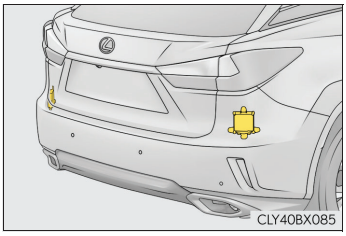
Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 414, 734)

⚠ WARNING

■ Handling the radar sensor

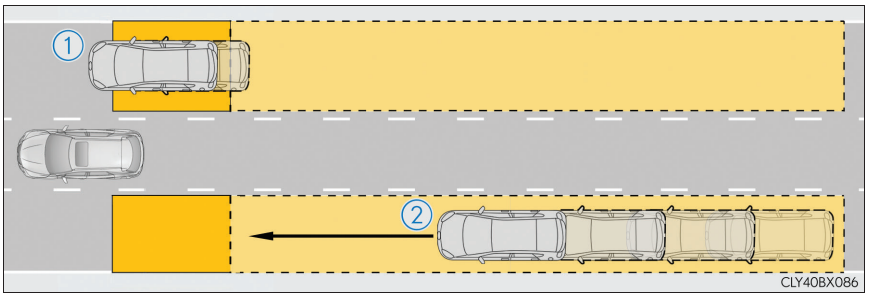
Blind Spot Monitor sensors are installed behind the left and right sides of the rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can function correctly.



- Keep the sensors and the surrounding areas on the rear bumper clean at all times.
  If a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate and a warning message (→P. 667) will be displayed. In this situation, clear off the dirt or snow and drive the vehicle with the operation conditions of the BSM function (→P. 407) satisfied for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper to a strong impact.
  If a sensor is moved even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles may not be detected correctly.
  In the following situations, have your vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - A sensor or its surrounding area is subject to a strong impact.
  - If the surrounding area of a sensor is scratched or dented, or part of them has become disconnected.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.

BSM function

The BSM function uses radar sensors to detect the following vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes and advises the driver of the presence of such vehicles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors.



① Vehicles that are traveling in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

② Vehicles that are approaching rapidly from behind in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

BSM function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of each detection area is:

① Approximately 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) to 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from either side of the vehicle*

*: The area between the side of the vehicle and 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle cannot be detected.

② Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper

③ Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

④ Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) to 60 m (197 ft.) from the rear bumper*

*: The greater the difference in speed between your vehicle and the detected vehicle is, the farther away the vehicle will be detected, causing the outside rear view mirror indicator to illuminate or flash.

⚠ WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the function

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The BSM function is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or is approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot. Do not overly rely on the BSM function. As the function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

As the system may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

■ **The BSM function is operational when**

The BSM function is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The BSM function is on.
- The shift lever is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).

■ **The BSM function will detect a vehicle when**

The BSM function will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ **Conditions under which the BSM function will not detect a vehicle**

The BSM function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles traveling 2 lanes away from your vehicle*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ Conditions under which the BSM function may not function correctly

● The BSM function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:

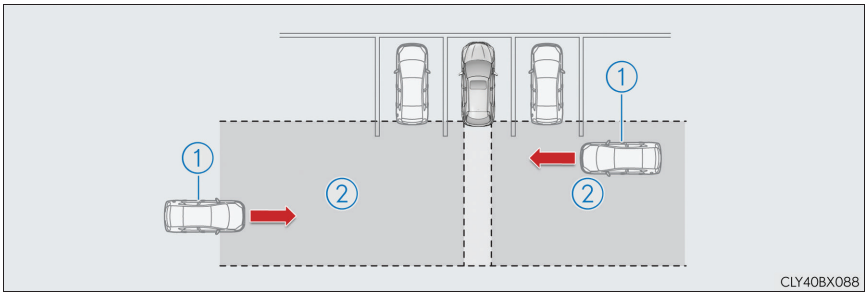
- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
- When a vehicle enters a detection area traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
- As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
- When towing a trailer (vehicles with towing package)
- When items such as a bicycle carrier are installed on the rear of the vehicle
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- Immediately after the BSM function is turned on

● Instances of the BSM function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc. that enters the detection area is short
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When the tires are slipping or spinning
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When a bicycle carrier or other accessory is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When towing a trailer (vehicles with towing package)

RCTA function

The RCTA function uses radar sensors to detect vehicles approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and alerts the driver of the presence of such vehicles by flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.

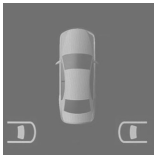


① Approaching vehicles

② Detection areas of approaching vehicles

RCTA icon display (if equipped)

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be displayed on the audio system screen.

Display	Content
	A vehicle is approaching from the left at the rear of the vehicle
	A vehicle is approaching from the right at the rear of the vehicle
	Vehicles are approaching from both sides of the vehicle
	The RCTA function is malfunctioning (→P. 401)

⚠ WARNING

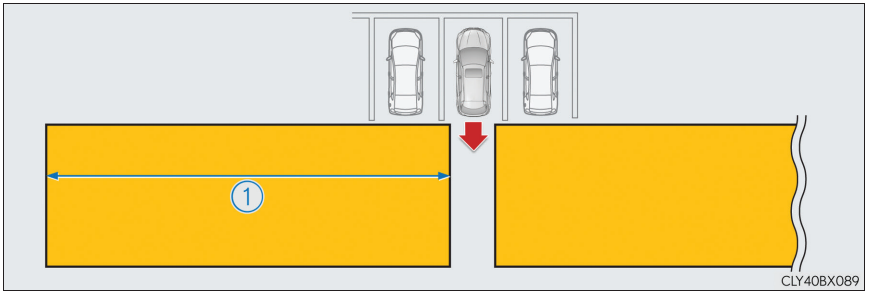
Cautions regarding the use of the function

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The RCTA function is only a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle. As the RCTA function may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary. Over reliance on this function may lead to an accident resulting death or serious injury.

RCTA function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The buzzer can alert the driver of faster vehicles approaching from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle	Speed	① Approximate alert distance
Fast	28 km/h (18 mph)	20 m (65 ft.)
Slow	8 km/h (5 mph)	5.5 m (18 ft.)

The RCTA function is operational when

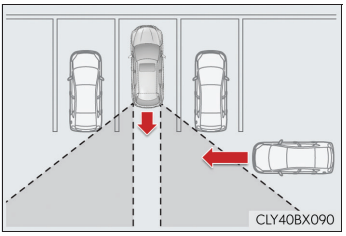
The RCTA function operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The RCTA function is on.
- The shift lever is in R.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 28 km/h (18 mph).

■ **Conditions under which the RCTA function will not detect a vehicle**

The RCTA function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space next to your vehicle
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions

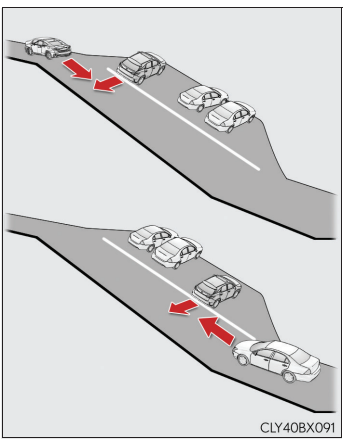


- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*

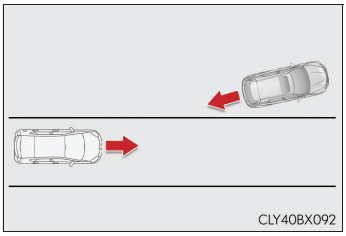
*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ **Conditions under which the RCTA function may not function correctly**

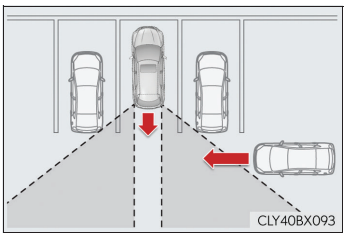
- The RCTA function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
  - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
  - When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
  - When towing a trailer (vehicles with towing package)
  - When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



- When backing out of a shallow angle parking spot

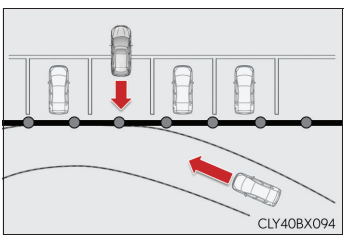


- Immediately after the RCTA function is turned on
- Immediately after the engine is started with the RCTA function on
- When the sensors cannot detect a vehicle due to obstructions



● Instances of the RCTA function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle
- When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street



- When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short

Setting up BSM function/RCTA function (vehicles with a navigation system)

You can change the BSM function/RCTA function settings.

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, and then select  on the screen.

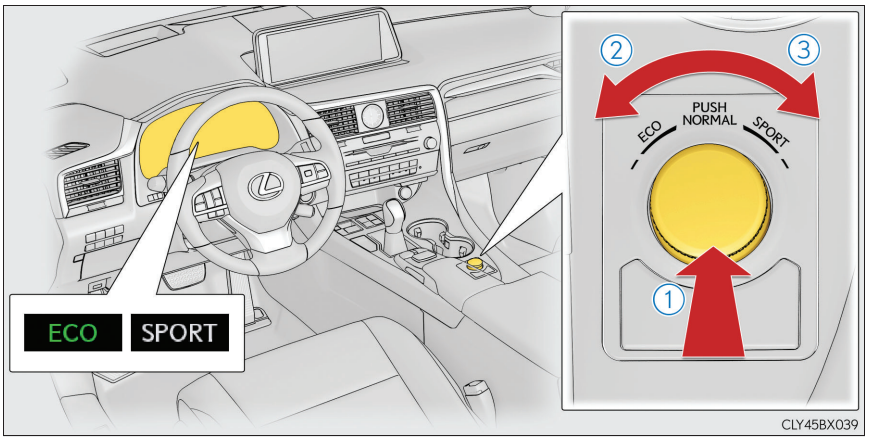
2 Select "Vehicle", and then select "Blind Spot Monitor" on the screen.

3 Select the desired setting. (→P. 742)

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving conditions.

▶ Vehicles without Adaptive Variable Suspension System



① Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when Eco drive mode or sport mode is selected.

② Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

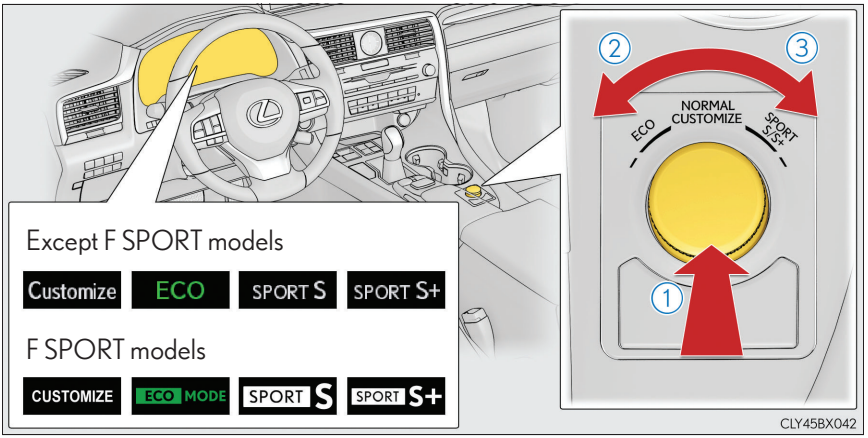
When not in Eco drive mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, the Eco drive mode indicator will come on.

③ Sport mode

Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. This mode also changes the steering feel, making it suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

When not in sport mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "SPORT" indicator will comes on.

▶ Vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension System



① Normal mode/Customized mode

Normal mode and customized mode are selected by pressing the driving mode select switch. Each time the switch is pressed, the driving mode changes between normal mode and customized mode. When customized mode is selected, the "Customize/CUSTOMIZE" indicator will be illuminated.

When Eco drive mode or sport mode is selected, pressing the switch changes the driving mode to normal mode.

- Normal mode
  Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.
- Customized mode
  Allows you to drive with the following functions set to your preferred settings.
  Customized mode settings can only be changed on the drive mode customization display of the audio system screen.
  (Displaying the drive mode customization display: →P. 734)

Function	Setting
Powertrain	Normal
	Power
	Eco
Chassis	Normal
	Sport
Air conditioning system	Normal
	Eco

② Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

When not in Eco drive mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, the Eco drive mode indicator will come on.

③ Sport mode

- SPORT S mode

  Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. This mode is suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

  When not in SPORT S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "SPORT S" indicator will come on.

- SPORT S+ mode

  Helps to ensure steering performance and driving stability by simultaneously controlling the steering and suspension in addition to the transmission and engine. Suitable for sportier driving.

  When in SPORT S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "SPORT S+" indicator will come on.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ **Automatic deactivation of sport mode and customized mode**

If the engine switch is turned off after driving in sport mode or customized mode, the drive mode will be changed to normal mode.

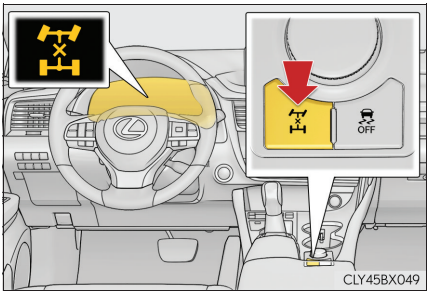
■ **Driving mode pop-up display (12.3-inch display only)**

When the driving mode is changed, the selected driving mode will be temporarily displayed on the side display. (→P. 531)

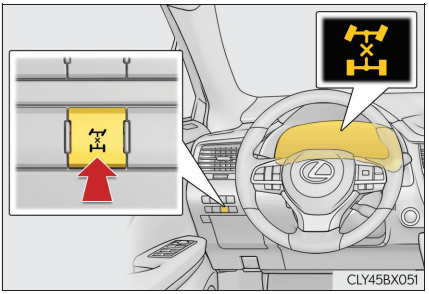
All-wheel drive lock switch (AWD models)

All-wheel drive lock mode can be used when a large amount of drive power needs to be applied to all the wheels, such as when the vehicle gets stuck in mud and you need to free it.

▶ RX350



▶ RX200t



Press the switch.

The torque of the engine is distributed to the rear wheels to the maximum extent possible in accordance with driving conditions.

Pressing the switch again cancels all-wheel drive lock mode and returns the Dynamic Torque Control AWD system to normal mode. (→P. 421)

■ **All-wheel drive lock mode can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Automatic release for the all-wheel drive lock mode**

- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the brakes are applied to ensure the ABS and VSC systems operate effectively.
- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph).

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

VSC + (Vehicle Stability Control +)

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS.
Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

Hill-start assist control

Prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an incline or slippery slope

EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

Dynamic Torque Control AWD system (AWD models)

Automatically switches from front-wheel drive to all-wheel drive (AWD) according to the driving conditions, helping to ensure reliable handling and stability. Examples of conditions where the system will switch to AWD are when cornering, going uphill, starting off or accelerating, and when the road surface is slippery due to snow, rain, etc.

Adaptive Variable Suspension System (if equipped)

Controls the damping force of the shock absorber of each wheel according to the road and driving conditions, helping achieve a comfortable ride, excellent driveability and a high level of stability.

If SPORT S+ mode is selected using the driving mode select switch, the damping force will become more suitable for sporty driving. (→P. 416)

VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) (if equipped)

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems

Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine output

Emergency brake signal

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

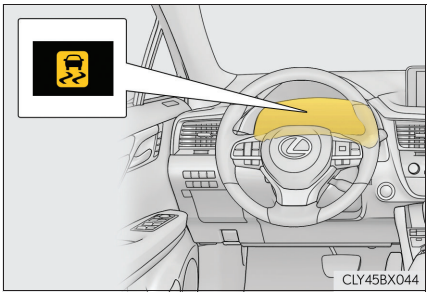
Trailer Sway Control

Helps the driver to control trailer sway by selectively applying brake pressure for individual wheels and reducing driving torque when trailer sway is detected.

Trailer Sway Control is part of the VSC system and will not operate if VSC turned off or experiences a malfunction.

When the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating.

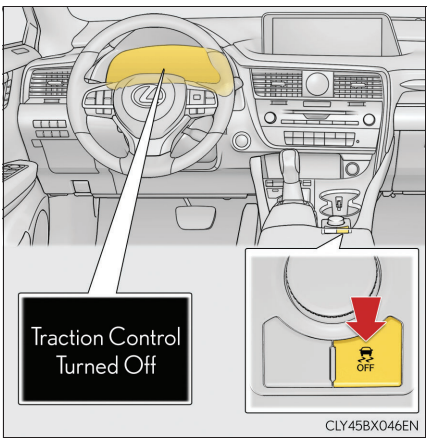


Disabling the TRC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing  to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release  .

The "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display. Press  again to turn the system back on.



■ **Turning off TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems**

To turn the TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems off, press and hold  for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press  again to turn the systems back on.

*: On vehicles with PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system), pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking will also be disabled. (→P. 310)

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if  has not been pressed**

TRC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, Trailer Sway Control and hill-start assist control systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems**

After turning the TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases

  If the TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Reactivation of the TRC system linked to vehicle speed**

When only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases. However, when TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift lever is moved to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is engaged.
- Approximately 2 seconds elapse after the brake pedal is released.

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following three conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed in a manner that cause the system to judge from the vehicle deceleration that this is a sudden braking operation.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal**

The emergency brake signal will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

⚠ WARNING

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ TRC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ When the VSC/Trailer Sway Control is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ When the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems off unless necessary.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

WARNING

■ **Handling of tires and the suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

■ **Trailer Sway Control precaution**

The Trailer Sway Control system is not able to reduce trailer sway in all situations. Depending on many factors such as the conditions of the vehicle, trailer, road surface, and driving environment, the Trailer Sway Control system may not be effective. Refer to your trailer owner's manual for information on how to tow your trailer properly.

■ **If trailer sway occurs**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead.
  Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
- Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
  Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize. (→P. 238)

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

  Ensure that all tires are of the specified size and the same brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

When the parking brake is in automatic mode, release the parking brake after shifting the shift lever to P. (→P. 257)

Selecting tire chains

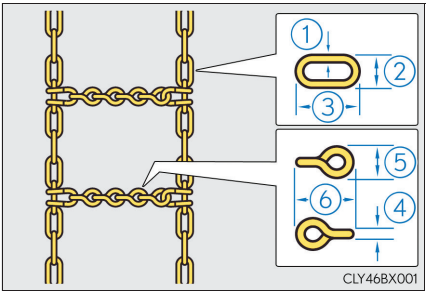
Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.

Side chain:

① 3 mm (0.12 in.) in diameter
② 10.8 mm (0.43 in.) in width
③ 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length

Cross chain:

④ 3.9 mm (0.15 in.) in diameter
⑤ 13.8 mm (0.54 in.) in width
⑥ 25.3 mm (1.00 in.) in length



Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Windshield wipers

To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when heavy snow or icy conditions are expected, change the rest position of the windshield wipers from the retracted position below the hood to the service position using the wiper lever. (→P. 281)

Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires only. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 - 1.0 km (1/4 - 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

WARNING

Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) system. (if equipped)
- Do not use the LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) system. (if equipped)

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ **Fitting tire chains**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Utility vehicle precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity.

Utility vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause the vehicle to rollover.

⚠ WARNING

■ Utility vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should always fasten their seat belts.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Off-road driving

Your vehicle is not designed to be driven off-road. However, in the event that off-road driving cannot be avoided, please observe the following precautions to help avoid the areas prohibited to vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

⚠ WARNING

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent water damage**

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differential, transmission and transfer (AWD models only) case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ **When you drive through water**

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the riverbed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ **Inspection after off-road driving**

- Sand and mud that has accumulated around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water.

5-1. Basic Operations
Lexus Display Audio system 436
Steering wheel audio switches 442
USB/AUX ports 443
5-2. Setup
Setup menu 446
General settings 447
Voice settings 450
Display settings 451
5-3. Using the audio system
Selecting the audio source 453
Optimal use of the audio system 454
Audio settings 455
Audio menu screen operation 459
5-4. Using the radio
Radio operation 462
5-5. Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA/AAC discs
CD player operation 464

Lexus Display Audio system

5

5-6. Using an external device

Listening to an iPod 470

Using USB memory device 474

Using the AUX port 479

5-7. Connecting Bluetooth®

Steps for using Bluetooth® devices 480

Registering a Bluetooth® device 482

Selecting a Bluetooth® device 483

Connecting a Bluetooth® audio player 484

Connecting a Bluetooth® phone 485

Displaying a Bluetooth® device details 486

Detailed Bluetooth® settings 487

5-8. Bluetooth® Audio

Listening to Bluetooth® Audio 488

5-9. Bluetooth® Phone

Using a Bluetooth® Phone 490

Making a call 492

Receiving a call 495

Speaking on the phone 496

Using a Bluetooth® phone messages 498

Using the steering wheel switches 501

Bluetooth® phone settings 502

5-10. Phonebook

Contact settings 504

Messaging setting 507

5-11. Bluetooth®

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 508

Bluetooth® 511

5-12. Other function

"Information" screen 517

MirrorLink™ 518

USB photo 522

Speech command system 524

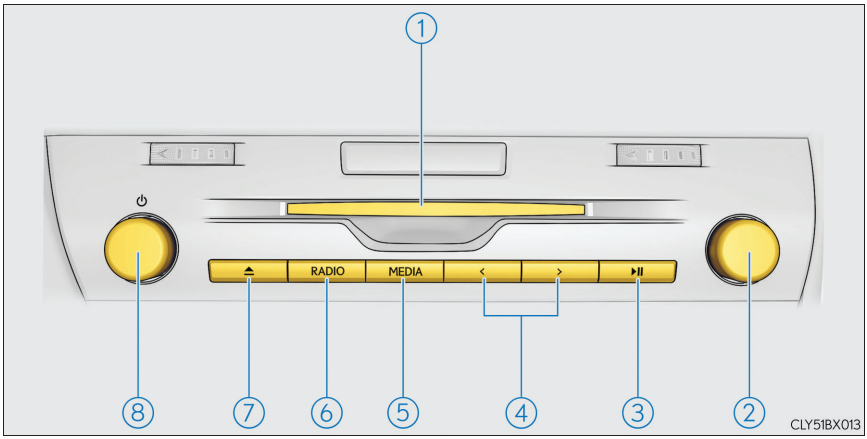
Some of the functions cannot be operated while driving.

Lexus Display Audio system*

Use the following buttons to start listening to the audio system.

Lexus Display Audio operation buttons

The illustration below is for left-hand drive vehicles.
The button positions and shapes may differ slightly for right-hand drive vehicles.



① Disc slot

② "TUNE•SCROLL" knob
Select a radio station band, track or file.

③ Except radio and A/V mode: Pause or resume playing a track or file.
Radio and A/V mode: Turn mute on/off.

④ Select preset radio stations, or access a desired track or file.

⑤ Display the media top screen.

⑥ Display the radio top screen.

⑦ Eject a disc.

⑧ "POWER•VOLUME" knob
Press to turn the audio system on/off, and turn to adjust the volume.

*: If equipped

■ “MENU” screen

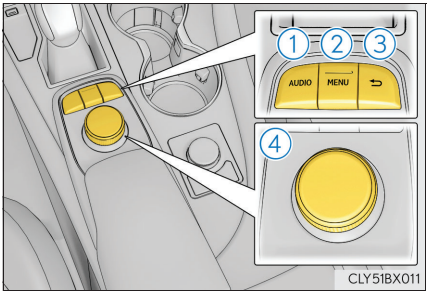
To display the “MENU” screen, press the “MENU” button on the controller unit.



Button	Function
“Audio”	Display the audio top screen (→P. 462, 464, 470, 474, 479, 488)
“Climate”	Display the air conditioning control screen (→P. 534)
“Telephone”	Display the phone top screen (→P. 490)
“Car”	Display the fuel consumption screen (→P. 127)
“Info”	Display the “Information” screen (→P. 517)
“Setup”	Display the “Setup” screen (→P. 446)
“Display”	Display the display settings screen (→P. 451)

Lexus Display Audio controller

By using the Lexus Display Audio controller, you can control the audio system, hands-free system, etc.



① Display the "Source" screen or audio top screen (→P. 453)

② Display the "MENU" screen (→P. 437)

③ Back button

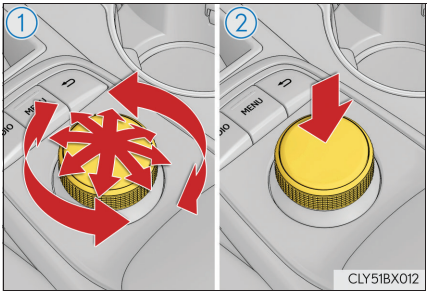
Display the previous screen

④ Turn or move the controller to select a function and number.

Move the controller to display the left or right side of the screen.

Push the controller to enter the selected function and number.

Using the Lexus Display Audio controller

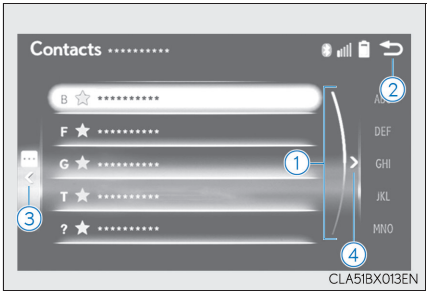


① Select: Turn or move the controller.

② Enter: Push the controller.

Basic screen operation

When a list is displayed, use the appropriate button to scroll through the list.



① Select the list by turning the controller.

② Return to the previous screen.

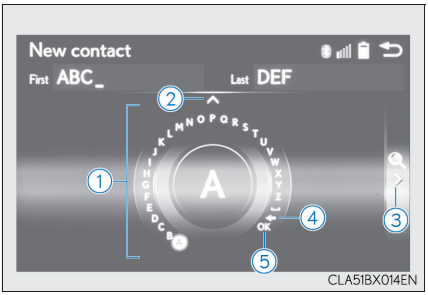
③ Indicator turns on when you can move the controller left to view additional screen text.

④ Indicator turns on when you can move the controller right to view additional screen text.

Inputting letters and numbers

Input mode

Letters and numbers are inputted via the screen.



① Turn the controller to select the desired character and press the controller to input the character.

② When this indicator is shown, you can change input fields by moving the controller forward.

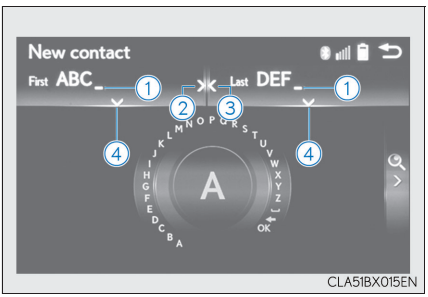
③ When this indicator is shown, you can change character types by moving the controller to the right and then selecting the desired character type.

④ Select to erase characters one by one. Select and hold to erase all characters.

⑤ Select to complete data input.

Input field mode

When in the input field you can move the cursor to the desired position.



① Turn the controller to move the cursor left or right.

② When this indicator is shown, you can move the cursor to the right input field by moving the controller to the right.

③ When this indicator is shown, you can move the cursor to the left input field by moving the controller to the left.

④ When this indicator is shown, you can change to input mode by moving the controller backward.

■ When using the screen

- Under extremely cold conditions, the Lexus Display Audio controller may react slowly.
- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the "Display" screen (→P. 451) or remove your sunglasses.

■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

⚠ WARNING

■ Using the Lexus Display Audio controller

Be careful when touching the Lexus Display Audio controller in extreme temperatures as it may become very hot or cold due to the temperature inside the vehicle.

■ Laser product

- CAUTION
  EN/IEC 60825-1:2007
  Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
  A warning label is affixed on the back of this product.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent Lexus Display Audio controller malfunction

- Do not allow the Lexus Display Audio controller to come into contact with food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes as doing so may cause it to change color, emit a strange odor or stop functioning.
- Do not subject the Lexus Display Audio controller to excessive pressure or strong impact as the controller may bend or break off.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

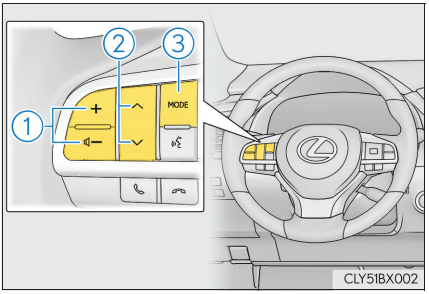
■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

Steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.
Operation may differ depending on the type of audio system or navigation system. For details, refer to the manual provided with the audio system or navigation system.

Operating the audio system using the steering wheel switches



① Volume switch
- Increases/decreases volume
- Press and hold: Continuously increases/decreases volume

② Radio mode:
- Press (except manual mode): Select a radio station
- Press (manual mode): Seek up/down
- Press and hold (manual mode): Continuously seek up/down

CD, MP3/WMA/AAC disc, Bluetooth®, iPod or USB mode:
- Press: Select a track/file/song/video
- Press and hold: Select a folder/album (MP3/WMA/AAC disc or USB)

③ "MODE" switch
- Turns the power on, selects audio source
- Press and hold this switch to mute or pause the current operation. To cancel the mute or pause, press and hold.

⚠ WARNING

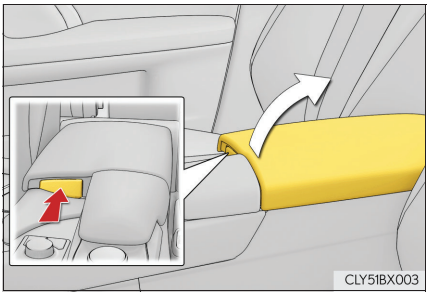
■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**
Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

USB/AUX ports

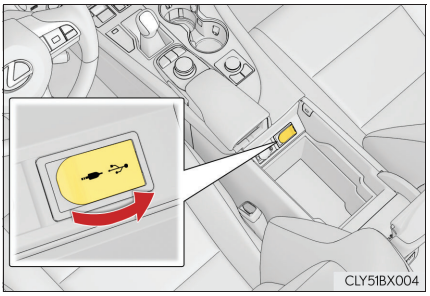
Connect an iPod, USB memory device or portable audio player to the USB/AUX port as indicated below. Select “iPod”, “USB”, “AUX” or “A/V” on the audio source selection screen and the device can be operated via Lexus Display Audio system.

Connecting using the USB/AUX port

1 Press the knob.



2 Open the cover.



■ iPod

Open the cover and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.

■ USB memory

Open the cover and connect the USB memory device.

Turn on the power, if applicable, of the USB memory device if it is not turned on.

■ Portable audio player

Open the cover and connect the portable audio player.

Turn on the power of the portable audio player if it is not turned on.

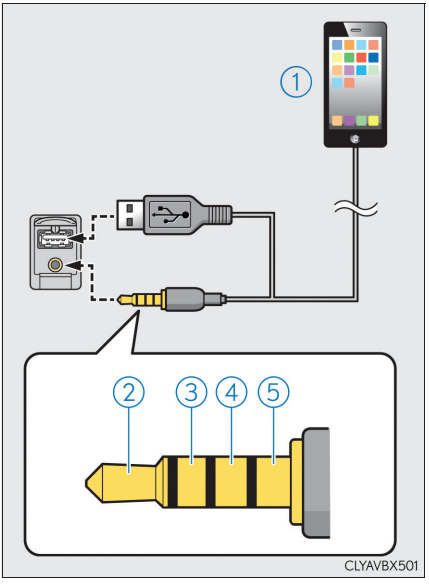
Using a 4-pole AUX cable

To view a video on an iPod video or VTR, it is necessary to use a 4-pole AUX cable to connect the portable audio device.

When connecting a portable audio device to the AUX port, use a 4-pole AUX cable with a plug that matches the exact layout shown in the illustration.

① Connected device (portable audio device, etc.)
② Left audio
③ Right audio
④ Ground
⑤ Video

When using an iPod video, a cable that has a 4-pole AUX plug and a USB connector is necessary. Connect the plug and connector to the AUX and USB ports.

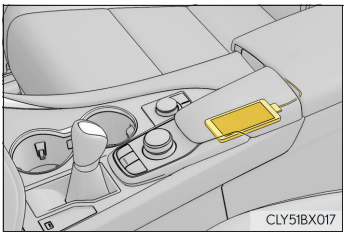


■ **When using a 4-pole AUX cable**

If a 4-pole AUX cable with a different layout is used, audio and/or video may not be output properly.

■ **When using the USB/AUX port**

There is clearance between the lid and console box to allow the cable routed to outside the console box.



WARNING

■ **While driving**

Do not connect a device or operate the device controls.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the device or its terminals**

Depending on the size and shape of the device that is connected to the system, the console box/auxiliary box may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the console box/auxiliary box as this may damage the device or the terminal, etc.

Setup menu

The Lexus Display Audio system can be adjusted to the desired settings.

Display "Setup" screen

Go to "Setup": "MENU" button → "Setup"

① Change the settings for operation sounds, screen animation, etc. (→P. 447)

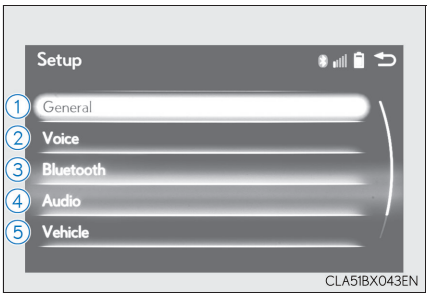
② Adjust the settings for voice guidance volume. (→P. 450)

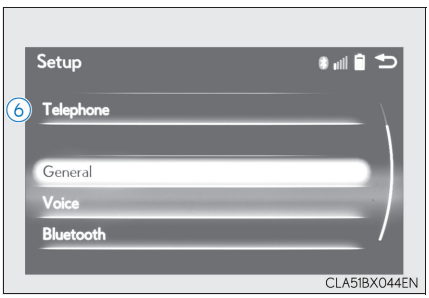
③ Change the settings for registering, removing, connecting and disconnecting Bluetooth® devices. (→P. 481)

④ Change the settings for FM radio, iPod, etc. (→P. 455)

⑤ Change the settings for vehicle customization. (→P. 734)

⑥ Change the settings for phone sound, phonebook, etc. (→P. 502)



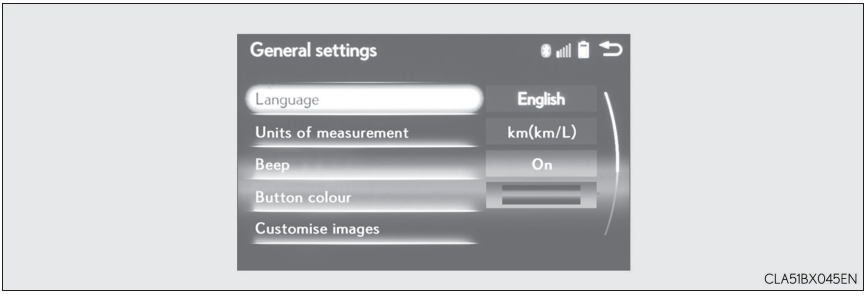


General settings

Settings are available for adjusting the operation sounds, screen animation, etc.

Screen for general settings

Go to “General settings”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “General”



Button	Function
“Language”	Change language. The selectable languages may differ depending on the model or region.
“Units of measurement”	Change the distance unit.
“Beep”	Set the beep sound on/off.
“Button colour”	Change the button color.
“Customise images”	Change the startup image and screen off image. (→P. 448)
“Animation”	Set the animation effect on/off.
“Delete personal data”	Delete personal data (→P. 449)
“Software update”	Update program versions. For details, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
“Gracenote® database update”	Update gracenote database versions. For details, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
“Software information”	Display the open source license.

Customizing images

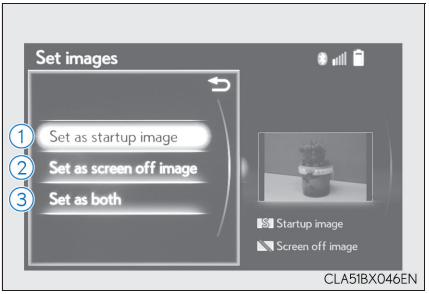
1 Go to “Customise images”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “General” → “Customise images”

2 Select “Set images” and then select the desired image.

① Set as startup image.

② Set as screen off image.

③ Set as startup image and screen off image.



■ Adding an image

1 Connect a USB memory device. (→P. 443)

2 Select “Copy from USB” on the “Customise images” screen and then select the desired image.

3 Move the controller to the left and then select “Copy”.

Up to 10 images can be downloaded.

■ Deleting images

Select “Delete images” on the “Customise images” screen and then select the desired images.

■ USB memory

When saving the images to a USB memory device, name the folder that the images are saved to "Image".

● Compatible device formats

The following device format can be used:

- The image's file format must be JPEG
- USB communication format: USB2.0 FS (480 Mbps)
- File system format: FAT16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

● JPEG file compatibility

Compatible image size: Maximum 10 MB

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB memory device or its terminals

→P. 478

Deleting personal data

1 Go to "Delete personal data": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "General" → "Delete personal data"

2 Select "Delete".

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

The following personal data will be deleted or changed to its default settings.

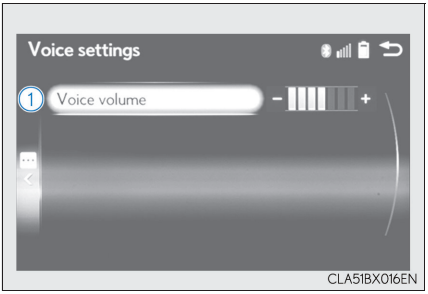
- Phonebook data
- Voice tag
- Call history data
- Favorite data
- Bluetooth® devices data
- Phone sound settings
- Detailed Bluetooth® settings
- Audio/video setting
- Customized image data
- FM info setting
- Software update history
- Software update detail information
- Phone display setting
- Contact/call history setting
- Messaging setting

Voice settings

You can adjust the guidance volume setting.

Go to “Voice settings”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “Voice”

① Adjust the voice guidance volume setting.



■ **Return to the default settings**

Move the controller to the left and select “Default”.

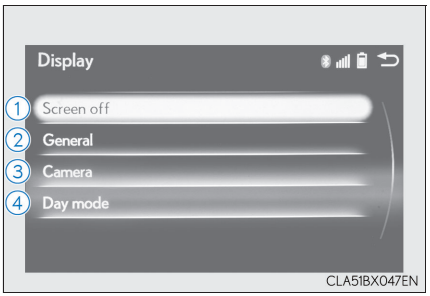
Display settings

Settings are available for adjusting the contrast and brightness of the screen. The display can also be turned off.

Screen for display settings

Go to "Display": "MENU" button → "Display"

① Turn off screen.
② Adjust screen quality.
③ Adjust screen quality of the rear view monitor camera.
④ Change to day mode.



Screen off

This setting turns the screen off. To turn it on, press any button such as the "AUDIO" button or "MENU" button.

If a screen off image has been set, the set image will be displayed.

Day mode

When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims.
However, the screen can be switched to day mode by selecting "Day mode".

The screen will stay in day mode when the headlights are turned on until "Day mode" is selected again.

Adjusting the screen contrast/brightness/color/tone

1 Select “General” or “Camera” on the “Display” screen or select “Display” on audio menu screen. (→P. 459)

2 Adjust the display as desired by turning the controller clockwise (+) or counterclockwise (-).

To select “Contrast”, “Brightness”, “Colour” or “Tone”, move the controller to the left. (“Colour” and “Tone” are available when “Display” on the audio settings screen for each audio source is selected.)

Changing the sample image (when “General” is selected)

Move the controller to the right and select the desired sample image.

Selecting the audio source

Switching between audio sources, such as the radio and CD, is explained in this section.

Changing audio source

1 Press the "AUDIO" button to display the "Source" screen.

If the "Source" screen is not displayed, press the button again.

2 Select the desired audio source.

The audio source can be selected by pressing the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" button.

Using the steering wheel switches to change audio sources

Press the "MODE" switch when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes each time the "MODE" switch is pressed.

■ **Rearranging the list**

The listing order of the source list can be rearranged.

1 Move the controller to the left while on the "Source" screen.

2 Select "Audio source select".

3 Select an item you wish to move and then select where to move the item to.

Optimal use of the audio system

On the "Sound settings" screen, sound quality (Treble/Mid/Bass), volume balance and DSP settings can be adjusted.

How to adjust the sound settings and sound quality

Go to "Sound settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Audio" → "Sound settings"

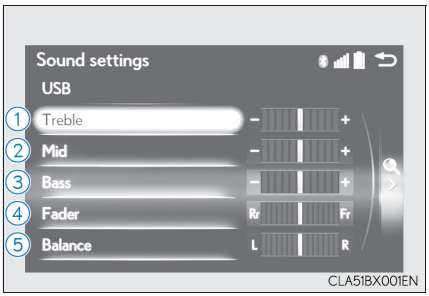
To change between the sound setting screen and DSP setting screen, move the controller to the right then select the desired screen.

▶ "Sound settings"

①②③ Adjusts the treble, mid or bass.

④ Adjusts the front/rear audio balance.

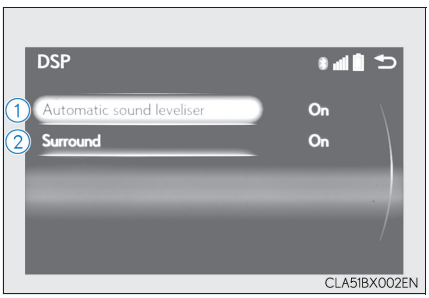
⑤ Adjusts the left/right audio balance.



▶ "DSP"

① Sets the automatic sound leveliser (ASL) on/off

② Sets the surround function on/off



■ **The sound quality level is adjusted individually**

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted for each audio mode separately.

■ **About Automatic Sound Leveliser (ASL)**

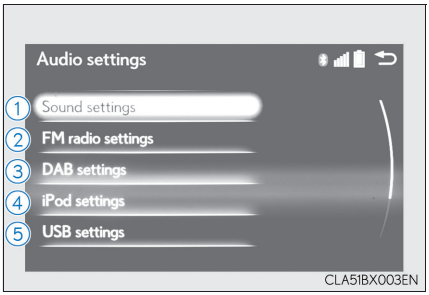
ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed.

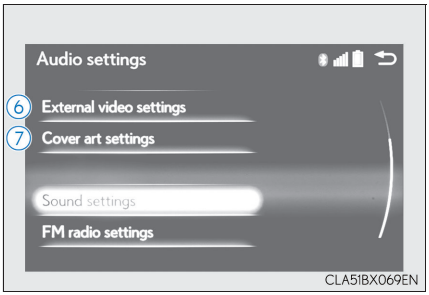
Audio settings

Screen for audio settings

Go to "Audio settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Audio"

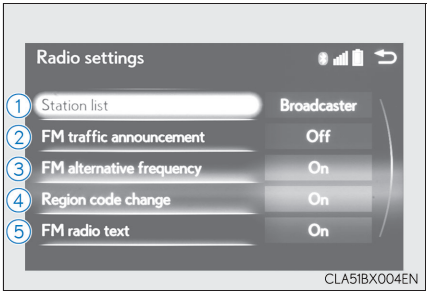
① Change sound settings (→P. 454)
② Change FM radio settings (→P. 456)
③ Change DAB settings (if equipped) (→P. 456)
④ Change iPod settings (→P. 457)
⑤ Change USB settings (→P. 457)
⑥ Change A/V settings (→P. 458)
⑦ Change the cover art settings (→P. 458)





Changing FM radio settings

To display the radio settings screen in a different way, select "FM radio settings" on the audio menu screen. (→P. 459)



① Change the order of the station list

② Select to set the traffic announcement interrupt operation on/off

When traffic announcement is set to on, the radio will begin seeking a TP station. (→P. 463)

③ Select to set the alternative frequency network following operation on/off

When alternative frequency is set to on, a station providing good reception is automatically selected if current reception worsens.

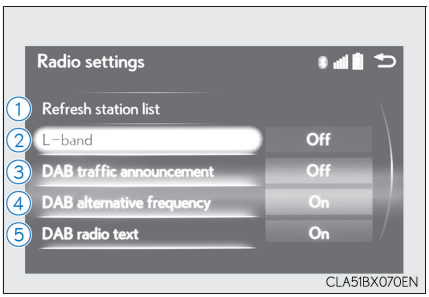
④ Select to set the region code change operation on/off

When region code change operation is set to on, programs will switch over to a broadcasting station within the same local program network.

⑤ Select to set the FM Radio text feature on/off

Changing DAB settings (if equipped)

To display the DAB settings screen in a different way, select "DAB settings" on the audio menu screen. (→P. 459)



① Update the DAB station list

② Select to set the L-band on/off

When set to off, the physical channel range for tune operations is limited to Band III except preset operations.

When set to on, the physical channel range for tune operations is Band III and L-band.

③ Select to set traffic announcement operation on/off

When traffic announcement is set to on, the tuner will automatically seek a station that regularly broadcasts traffic information and the station will broadcast when the traffic information program starts.

④ Select to set alternative frequency network following operation on/off

When alternative frequency is set to on, a station providing good reception is automatically selected if current reception worsens.

⑤ Select to set the DAB radio text feature on/off

Changing iPod settings

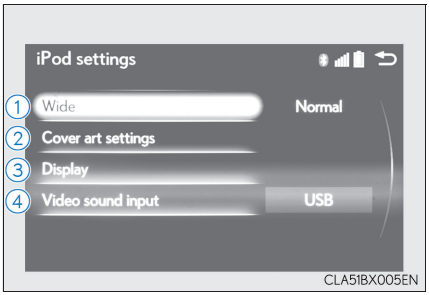
To display the iPod settings screen in a different way, select “iPod settings” on the audio menu screen. (→P. 459)

① Change the screen size (video mode)

② Change the cover art settings (→P. 458)

③ Adjust the screen quality (video mode) (→P. 451)

④ Change video sound input port



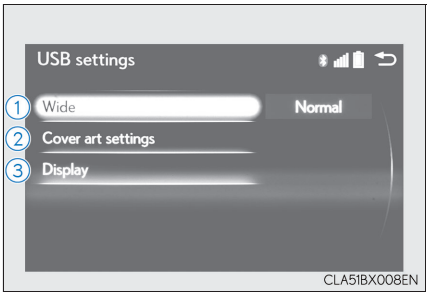
Changing USB settings

To display the USB settings screen in a different way, select “USB settings” on the audio menu screen. (→P. 459)

① Change the screen size (video mode)

② Change the cover art settings (→P. 458)

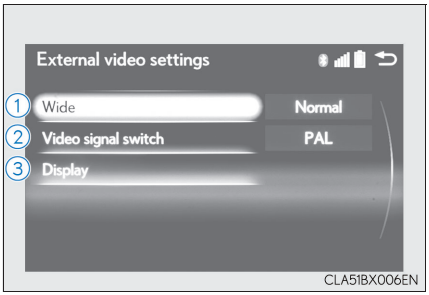
③ Adjust the screen quality (video mode) (→P. 451)



Changing A/V settings

To display the A/V settings screen in a different way, select "A/V settings" on the audio menu screen. (→P. 459)

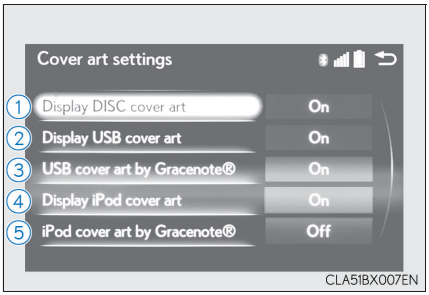
① Change the screen size
② Change the video signal
③ Adjust the screen quality (→P. 451)



Changing the cover art settings

To display the cover art settings screen in a different way, select "Cover art settings" on the audio menu screen. (→P. 459)

① Select to set the cover art display of DISC mode on/off.
② Select to set the cover art display of USB mode on/off.
③ Change the priority of the cover art display for USB mode.
④ Select to set the cover art display of iPod mode on/off.



⑤ Change the priority of the cover art display for iPod mode.

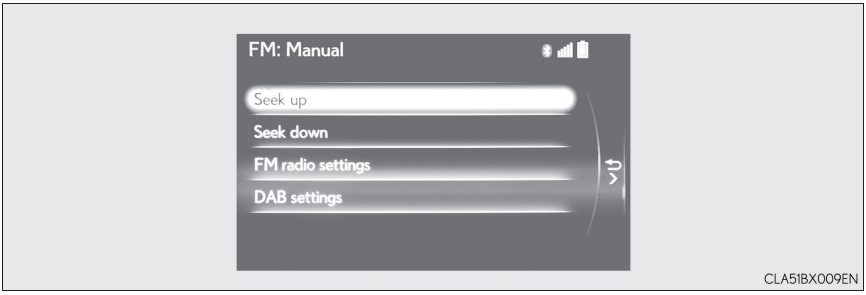
Audio menu screen operation

You can change the settings and control functions for each audio source.

Audio menu screen

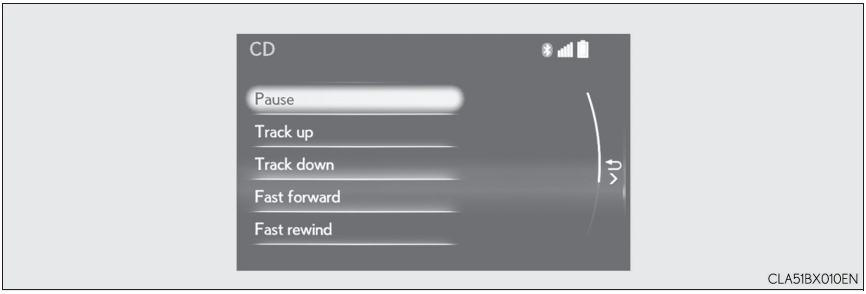
Go to audio menu screen: Move the controller to the left on the audio top screen

▶ Radio mode



Button	Function	Target radio mode
“Seek up”	Seeks a station of the nearest frequency (stops when a station is found) (manual mode)	AM, FM
“Seek down”		
“Rewind”	Adjusts the playback offset time on time shift mode	DAB
“Forward”		
“Time shift off”	Cancels time shift operation	DAB
“Next ensemble”	Selects an ensemble (manual mode)	DAB
“Prev. ensemble”		
“Next station”	Selects a service (manual mode)	DAB
“Prev. station”		
“FM radio settings”	Changes FM radio settings (→P. 456)	All mode
“DAB settings”	Changes DAB settings (→P. 456)	All mode

▶ Media mode



Button	Function	Target audio source
“Play”	Plays or pauses a track/file	All media (except A/V)
“Pause”		
“Track up”	Selects a track/file	All media (except A/V)
“Track down”		
“File up”		
“File down”		
“Folder up”	Selects a folder/album	MP3/WMA/AAC disc, USB audio
“Folder down”		
“Fast forward”	Selects and hold: Fast-forward or rewind a track/file	All media (except A/V)
“Fast rewind”		
“Repeat”	Selects a repeat mode (→P. 461)	All media (except A/V)
“Random”	Selects a random/shuffle play mode (→P. 461)	All media (except A/V)
“Shuffle”		
“Full screen”	Selects a full screen mode	iPod, USB video, A/V
“Connect”	Connects a Bluetooth® device (→P. 480)	Bluetooth®
“Cover art settings”	Changes the cover art settings (→P. 458)	CD, MP3/WMA/AAC disc, Bluetooth®
“iPod settings”	Changes iPod settings (→P. 457)	iPod
“USB settings”	Changes USB settings (→P. 457)	USB audio/video
“A/V settings”	Changes A/V settings (→P. 458)	A/V

Repeat play

Mode	Action
“Track repeat”	File/track repeat
“Repeat”	
“On”	
“Folder repeat”	Folder/album repeat
“Album repeat”	

Random/shuffle playback

Mode	Action
“1 CD”	Random/shuffle play of the disc/folder/album
“Random”	
“Shuffle”	
“Folder random”	Random/shuffle play of all folders/albums
“Album random”	
“Album shuffle”	

Radio operation

Select “AM”, “FM” or “DAB” on the “Source” screen to begin listening to the radio.

Radio top screen

Pressing the “RADIO” button displays the radio top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 459

Changing the top screen mode

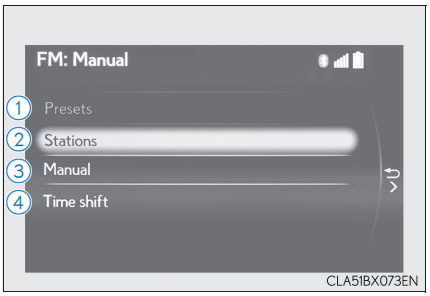
Move the controller to the right to display the right menu screen.

① Change the radio top screen to the preset selection screen.

② Change the radio top screen to the station list selection screen. (FM and DAB)

③ Change the radio top screen to the manual selection screen.

④ Change the radio top screen to the time shift operation screen. (DAB) (→P. 463)



Selecting a station

Tune in to the desired station using one of the following methods.

■ **Seek tuning**

Manual screen: Press or press and hold the “<” or “>” button.

Seek tuning can also be operated on the menu screen. (→P. 459)

The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop when a station is found.

■ **Manual tuning (manual screen)**

Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob or turn the controller.

■ **Station list (preset or station list screen)**

Select the desired station by pressing the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob, or turning and pressing the controller.

Setting station presets (preset screen)

Radio stations can be preset.

1 Search for desired stations.

2 Turn the controller to select one of the stations and then press the controller until you hear a beep while on the preset selection screen.

Time shift operation (DAB) (if equipped)

The broadcast you are currently listening to can be re-listened to at any time.

1 Move the controller to the right and then select "Time shift".

2 Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to set the desired offset.

An offset playback time can also be set on the menu screen. (→P. 459)

To cancel the time shift operation while in time shift mode, move the controller to the left and select "Time shift off". If the time shift display is left showing "-0' 00"" for 6 seconds without any operation, the time shift operation will be canceled.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ **Traffic announcement operation**

When traffic announcement is set to on, "TP" will appear on the screen and the radio will begin seeking a TP station. If the radio seeks out a TP station, a pop-up massage is displayed. To listen the program, select "Continue". When the program ends, the initial operation will resume.

CD player operation

Insert a disc, press the "MEDIA" button or select "DISC" on the "Source" screen with a disc inserted to begin listening to a disc.

Audio disc top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the audio disc top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 459

■ **Selecting a track/file**

Press the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired track/file number.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

■ **Selecting the track by the list (CD)**

Move the controller to the right and then select the desired track.

■ **Selecting a folder (MP3/WMA/AAC disc)**

1. Move the controller to the right and then select "Folders".
2. Select the desired folder. Then select a file to begin using the selected folder.

■ **Selecting a file by the selected folder (MP3/WMA/AAC disc)**

1. Move the controller to the right and then select "Files".
2. Select the desired file.

■ **Error messages**

If the following error messages appear on the screen, refer to the table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause	Correction procedures
"Check disc"	• The disc is dirty or damaged. • The disc is inserted upside down. • The disc is not playable with the player.	• Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly. • Confirm the disc is playable with the player.
"DISC error"	There is a malfunction within the system.	Eject the disc.
"No music files found."	No playable data is included on the disc.	Eject the disc.

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

■ **Music disc player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **If a disc is left inside the Music disc player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

Disc may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the Music disc player.

■ **MP3, WMA and AAC files**

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

AAC is short for Advanced Audio Coding and refers to an audio compression technology standard used with MPEG2 and MPEG4.

MP3, WMA and AAC file and media/formats compatibility are limited.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 8-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9 (only compatible with Windows Media Audio Standard)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48-192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48-320 (kbps)

● AAC file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MPEG4/AAC-LC
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  11.025/12/16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  16-320 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: 1 ch and 2 ch

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3, WMA and AAC playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  UDF (2.01 or lower)

MP3, WMA and AAC files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows.

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA/AAC and played are those with the extension .mp3, .wma or .m4a.

● Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi session discs, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3, WMA and AAC files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3, WMA and AAC tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

AAC tags can be added to AAC files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3, WMA and AAC playback

When a disc containing MP3, WMA or AAC files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3, WMA or AAC file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write any files to the disc other than MP3, WMA or AAC files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3, WMA or AAC format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3, .wma and .m4a are used for files other than MP3, WMA and AAC files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3, WMA and AAC files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3, WMA and AAC files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3, WMA or AAC files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

The Gracenote® media database

- Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote", MusicID, Playlist Plus and MediaVOCS are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States



Gracenote® End User License Agreement - Music

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

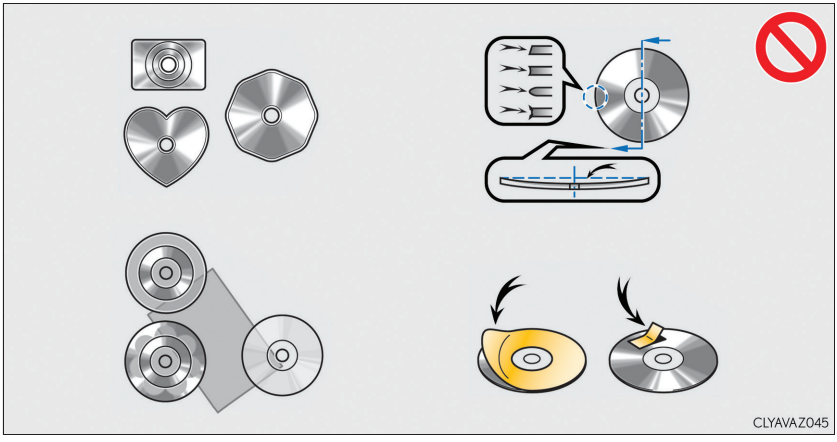
GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2012 Gracenote, Inc. All rights reserved.

NOTICE

■ **Discs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of discs.
Also, do not use 8 cm (3 in.) disc adapters, DualDiscs or printable discs.
Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 12 cm (4.7 in.).
- Low-quality or deformed discs.
- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.
- Discs that have tape, stickers or labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

■ **Player precautions**

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

Listening to an iPod

Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.
Press the "MEDIA" button or select "iPod" on the "Source" screen.

Connecting an iPod

→P. 443

iPod top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the iPod top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 459

■ **Selecting a song**

Press the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired song number.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

■ **Selecting a play mode**

1 Move the controller to the right and then select "Browse".

2 Select the desired play mode, and then select a song to begin using the selected play mode.

■ **Displaying the now playing list**

Move the controller to the right and then select "Now playing list".

■ About iPod



- "Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to an iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.
- iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ iPod cover art

- Depending on the iPod and songs in the iPod, iPod cover art may be displayed.
- This function can be changed to on/off. (→P. 458)
- It may take time to display iPod cover art, and the iPod may not be operated while the cover art display is in process.

■ iPod functions

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it may resolve the problem.
- Depending on the iPod, while connected to the system, the iPod cannot be operated with its own controls. It is necessary to use the controls of the vehicle's audio system instead.
- When the battery level of an iPod is very low, the iPod may not operate. If so, charge the iPod before use.
- Compatible models (→P. 473)

■ Error messages

If the following error messages appear on the screen, refer to the table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause/Correction procedures
"Connection error. Consult your owner's manual for instructions on how to reconnect the iPod."	This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.
"There are no songs available for playback. Add compatible songs to your iPod."	This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.
"No items available."	This indicates that songs are not found in a selected playlist.
"Check the iPod firmware version."	This indicates that the software version is not compatible. Please check the compatible models. (→P. 473)
"iPod authorisation unsuccessful."	This indicates that the Lexus Display Audio system failed to authorize the iPod. Please check your iPod.

iPod problems

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it. For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

Compatible models

The following iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod classic®, iPod touch® and iPhone® devices can be used with this system.

- Made for
  - iPod touch (5th generation)*
  - iPod touch (4th generation)
  - iPod touch (3rd generation)
  - iPod touch (2nd generation)
  - iPod touch (1st generation)
  - iPod classic
  - iPod with video
  - iPod nano (7th generation)*
  - iPod nano (6th generation)
  - iPod nano (5th generation)
  - iPod nano (4th generation)
  - iPod nano (3rd generation)
  - iPod nano (1st generation)
  - iPhone 5s*
  - iPhone 5c*
  - iPhone 5*
  - iPhone 4S
  - iPhone 4
  - iPhone 3GS
  - iPhone 3G
  - iPhone

*: iPod video not supported

Depending on differences between models or software versions, etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the iPod or its terminals

- Depending on the size and shape of the iPod that is connected to the system, the console box may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the console box as this may damage the iPod or the terminal, etc.
- Do not leave the iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

Using USB memory device

Connecting a USB memory device enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Select "USB1" or "USB2" on the "Source" screen.

Connecting a USB memory device

→P. 443

USB top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the USB top screen from any screen of the selected source.

USB audio

Moving the controller to the right and selecting "Play music" while the USB video screen is displayed changes to USB audio mode.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 459

■ **Selecting a file**

Press the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired file number.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

■ **Selecting a play mode**

1 Move the controller to the right and select "Browse".

2 Select the desired play mode, and select a file to begin the selected play mode.

■ **Displaying the now playing list**

Move the controller to the right and select "Now playing list".

USB video

Moving the controller to the right and selecting "Play video" while the USB audio screen is displayed changes to USB video mode.

This function cannot be used while USB photo or MirrorLink™ is in use.

Menu screen

→P. 459

Selecting a file

Press the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired file number.

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

Selecting a folder

1. Move the controller to the right and select "Browse".
2. Select the desired folder, then select a file to begin using the selected folder.

Displaying the now playing list

Move the controller to the right and select "Now playing list".

USB memory functions

- Depending on the USB memory device that is connected to the system, the device itself may not be operable and certain functions may not be available. If the device is inoperable or a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it may resolve the problem.
- If the USB memory device still does not begin operation after being disconnected and reconnected, format the device.

Error messages for USB memory

If the following error messages appear on the screen, refer to the table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause/Correction procedures
"Connection error. Consult your owner's manual for instructions on how to reconnect the USB device."	This indicates a problem with the USB memory device or its connection.
"There are no files available for playback. Add compatible files to your USB device."	This indicates that no MP3/WMA/AAC files are included on the USB memory device.
"No video files found."	This indicates that no video files are included in the USB memory.

USB memory

Compatible devices

USB memory devices that can be used for MP3, WMA and AAC (audio mode) or MP4, WMV and AVI (video mode) playback.

Compatible device formats

The following device format can be used:

- USB communication format: USB2.0 FS (480 Mbps)
- File system format: FAT16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class
  MP3, WMA and AAC files written to a device with any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 3000 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 9999
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

MP3, WMA and AAC files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.
Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format. This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

AAC is short for Advanced Audio Coding and refers to an audio compression technology standard used with MPEG2 and MPEG4.

MP3, WMA and AAC file and media/formats compatibility are limited.

MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERIII, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERIII)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERIII: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERIII: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERIII: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERIII: 8-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9 (only compatible with Windows Media Audio Standard)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48-192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48-320 (kbps)

● AAC file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MPEG4/AAC-LC
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  11.025/12/16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  16-320 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: 1 ch and 2 ch

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA/AAC and played are those with the extension .mp3, .wma or .m4a.

● ID3, WMA and AAC tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

AAC tags can be added to AAC files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3, WMA and AAC playback

- When a device containing MP3, WMA or AAC files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3, WMA or AAC file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3, WMA or AAC files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When a USB memory device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB memory device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reconnected (and the contents have not been changed), the USB memory device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3, .wma and .m4a are used for files other than MP3, WMA and AAC files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3, WMA and AAC files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB memory device or its terminals

- Depending on the size and shape of the USB memory that is connected to the system, the console box may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the console box as this may damage the USB memory or the terminal, etc.
- Do not leave the USB memory device in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory device while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

Using the AUX port

To use the AUX port, connect a portable player, press the "MEDIA" button or select "AUX" or "A/V" on the "Source" screen.

Connecting a portable player

→P. 443

Top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ Menu screen

→P. 459

■ Operating portable players connected to the audio system

Volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable player itself.

■ When using a portable player connected to the power outlet

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable player.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the portable player or its terminal

- Depending on the size and shape of the portable player that is connected to the system, the console box may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the console box as this may damage the portable player or the terminal, etc.
- Do not leave portable player in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

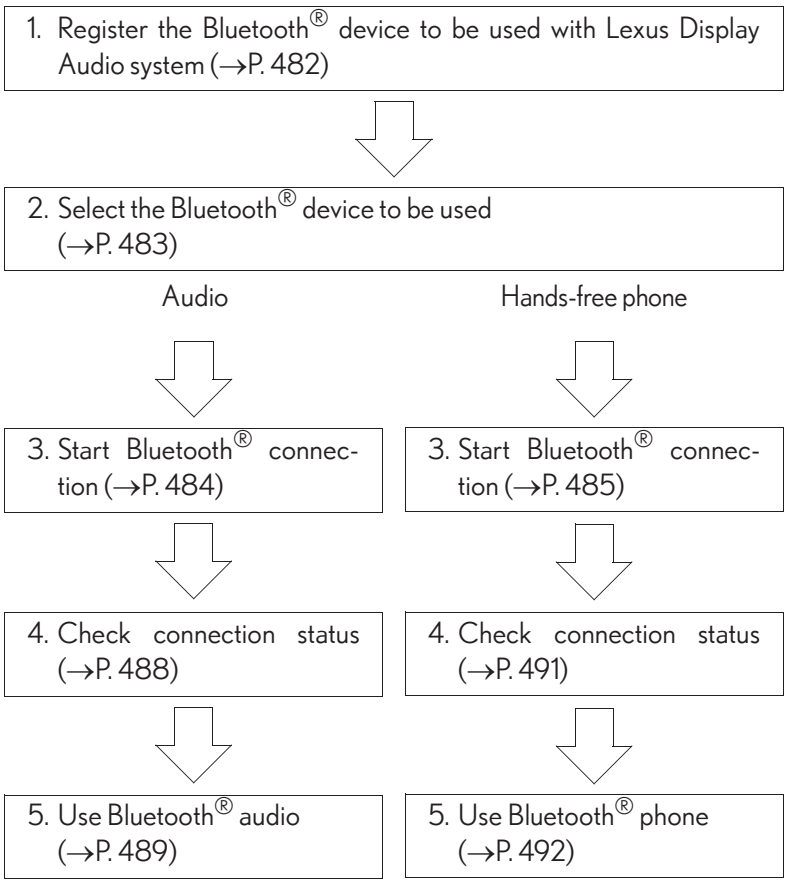
Steps for using Bluetooth® devices

The following can be performed using Bluetooth® wireless communication:

- A portable audio player can be operated and listened to via the Lexus Display Audio system
- Hands-free phone calls can be made via a cellular phone

In order to use wireless communication, register and connect a Bluetooth® device by performing the following procedures.

Device registration/connection flow



“Bluetooth* setup” screen

Go to “Bluetooth* setup”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “Bluetooth*”

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ **When displaying “Bluetooth* setup” screen from the “Bluetooth* audio” screen**

1 Display the “Bluetooth* audio” screen. (→P. 488)

2 Move the controller to the left and select “Connect”.

■ **When displaying “Bluetooth* setup” screen from the phone top screen**

1 Display the phone top screen. (→P. 490)

2 Move the controller to the left and select “Connect telephone”.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Registering a Bluetooth® device

Bluetooth® compatible phones (HFP) and portable audio players (AVP) can be registered simultaneously. You can register up to 5 Bluetooth® devices.

How to register a Bluetooth® device

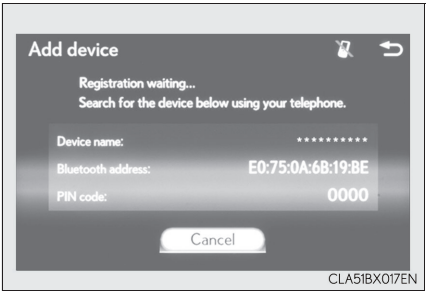
1 Turn the Bluetooth® connection setting of your device set to on.

2 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

3 Move the controller to the left and then select "Add device"

4 When this screen is displayed, search for the device name displayed on this screen on your Bluetooth® device.

For operation of the Bluetooth® device, see the manual that comes with your Bluetooth® device.



5 Register the Bluetooth® device using your Bluetooth® device.

A PIN code are not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth® devices. Depending on the device, you may need to select Yes to register, or No to cancel on the device.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Removing a Bluetooth® device

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Move the controller to the left and then select "Remove device".

3 Select the device to remove.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Selecting a Bluetooth® device

If multiple Bluetooth® devices are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® device to be used. You may only use one device at a time.

How to select a Bluetooth® device

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Select the device to connect.

3 Select "Connect all", "Connect as a telephone" or "Connect as audio player".

"Connect all" means connect both the phone and audio functions of one device.

If the desired Bluetooth® device is not displayed, register the device.
(→P. 482)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Connecting a Bluetooth® audio player

There are 2 portable audio player connection settings available: connecting from the vehicle and connecting from the portable player.

Connecting method is set to "Vehicle"

When the portable audio player is in standby for a connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the engine switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Connecting method is set to "Device"

Operate the portable player and connect it to the Bluetooth® audio system.

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Select the device to connect.

3 Select "Connect all" or "Connect as audio player".

If the desired Bluetooth® device is not displayed, register the device.
(→P. 482)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Connecting a Bluetooth® phone

There are two connecting methods available: automatic and manual.

Auto connection

When you register a phone, auto connection will be activated. It is recommended to have the system set to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone in a place where a good connection can be established.

When the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will search for a nearby cellular phone you have registered.

The system automatically connects with the most recent phone that was connected. The connected result is displayed.

Manual connection

When auto connection has failed or "Bluetooth* power" is turned off, you must connect the Bluetooth® device manually.

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Select the device to connect.

3 Select "Connect all", "Connect as a telephone" or "Connect as audio player".

If the desired Bluetooth® device is not displayed, register the device.
(→P. 482)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Reconnecting a Bluetooth® phone

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.

■ Connecting a phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

- Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.
- It may take time to connect.

Displaying a Bluetooth® device details

You can confirm and change the registered device details.

Bluetooth® device registration status

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Select the desired device and then select "Device info".

① Change the name of the device

② Change the connection method

"Vehicle": Connect the audio system to the portable audio player.

"Device": Connect the portable audio player to the audio system

③ Device address

④ Compatibility profile of the device



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Restoring the default settings

Move the controller to the left and select "Defaults" on the "Device information" screen.

Detailed Bluetooth® settings

You can confirm and change the detailed Bluetooth® settings.

How to check and change detailed Bluetooth® settings

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Move the controller to the left and then select "System settings".

① Select to set the Bluetooth® function on/off.

② Change the name of the device.

③ Change the PIN-code.

You can change the PIN-code that is used to register your Bluetooth® devices in the system.

④ Device address

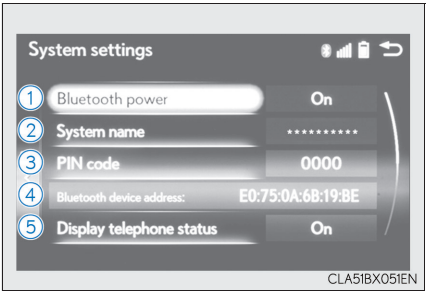
⑤ Select to set the display of the phone status on/off

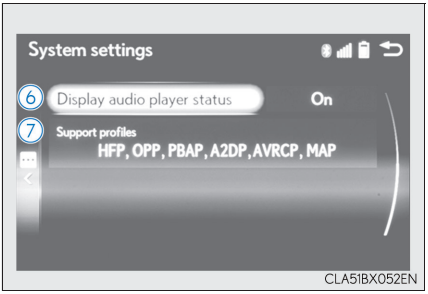
You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting a phone.

⑥ Select to set the display of the audio player status on/off

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting an audio player.

⑦ Compatibility profile of the system





*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Restoring the default settings

Move the controller to the left and select "Defaults" on the "System settings" screen.

Listening to Bluetooth® Audio

The Bluetooth® audio system enables the user to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

When a Bluetooth® device cannot be connected, check the connection status on the "Bluetooth* audio" screen. If the device is not connected, either register or reconnect the device. (→P. 482, 484)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

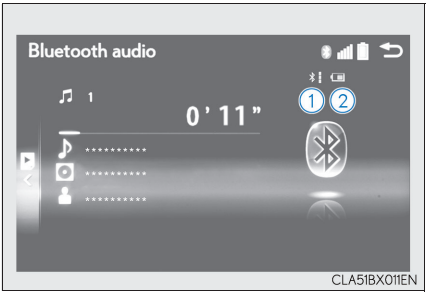
Status display

You can check indicators, such as, signal strength and battery charge on the screen.

① Connection status

② Battery charge

Depending on the type of portable audio player used, some titles may not be displayed.



Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Good ⟷ Not connected
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty

Bluetooth® audio top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the Bluetooth® audio top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 459

■ **Selecting a song**

Press the "<" or ">" button or turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired song number.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

■ **Selecting a play mode**

1 Move the controller to the right and then select "Browse".

2 Select the desired play mode, and then select a song to begin using the selected play mode.

■ **Displaying the now playing list**

Move the controller to the right and then select "Now playing list".

Using a Bluetooth® Phone

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your cellular phone without touching it.

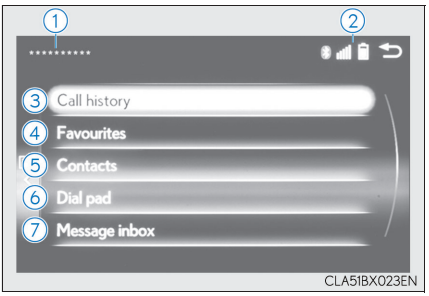
This system supports Bluetooth®. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the cellular phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and make/receive calls.

Before making a phone call, check the connection status, battery charge, call area and signal strength. (→P. 491)

If a Bluetooth® device cannot be connected, check the connection status. If the device is not connected, either register or reconnect it. (→P. 482, 485)

Phone top screen

To display the screen shown below, press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select "Telephone" on the "MENU" screen.



① Phone name

② Bluetooth® connection status (→P. 491)

③ Displays the call history screen (→P. 494)

④ Displays the favorites screen (→P. 494)

⑤ Displays the contacts screen (→P. 492)

⑥ Displays the dial pad screen (→P. 492)

⑦ Displays the message inbox screen (→P. 498)

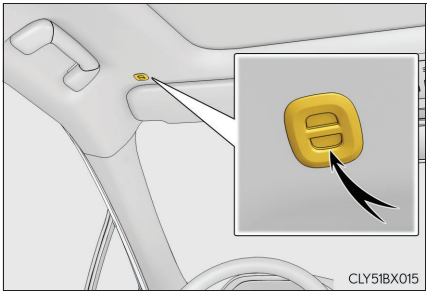
◆ Phone switch (→P. 501)

◆ Microphone

The vehicle's built-in microphone is used when talking on the phone.

The person to whom you are speaking to can be heard from the front speakers.

To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 482)



Status display

You can check indicators such as signal strength and battery charge on any screen.

① Connection status
② Signal strength
③ Battery charge



Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Good (Blue) ⟷ Poor (Gray) ⟷ Not connected
Signal strength	Excellent ⟷ Poor
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty

Making a call

Once a Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

Dialing

1. Go to "Dial pad": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Dial pad"
2. Input a phone number. (→P. 440)
3. Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select  .

Dialing from the phonebook

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your cellular phone. The system has one phonebook for each registered phone. Up to 2500 contacts may be stored in each phonebook. (→P. 493)

1. Go to "Contacts": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Contacts"
2. Choose the desired contact to call from the list.
3. Choose the number and then press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or press the controller.

When the phonebook is empty

You can transfer the phone numbers in a Bluetooth® phone to the system. Operation methods differ between PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) compatible and PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones. If the cellular phone does not support either PBAP or OPP (Object Push Profile) service, you cannot transfer contacts.

1 Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel.

If the phonebook is empty, a message will be displayed.

▶ For a PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phone and "Automatic transfer" is off

2 To enable automatic transfer of new contacts from a cellular phone every time it is connected, select "Always". (→P. 504)
Select "Once" if you want to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone.

▶ For a PBAP incompatible and OPP compatible Bluetooth® phone

2 Select "Transfer" and operate your cellular phone to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone.

Select "Add" if you want to add a new contact manually.

Dialing from favorites

You can make a call using numbers registered in the favorites.

1 Go to "Favourites": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Favourites"

2 Choose the desired contact to call from the list.

3 Choose the number and then press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or press the controller.

Dialing from history

You can make a call using the call history.

1 Go to "Call history": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Call history"

2 Select the desired entry from the list.

3 Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select  .

■ **Call history list**

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the call history.

■ **International calls**

Depending on the mobile phone in use, you may not be able to make international calls.

■ **Calling by using the latest call history entry**

1 Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel to display the phone top screen.

2 Press the switch again to display the "Call history" screen.

3 Press the switch again to select the latest call history entry.

Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.

To answer the phone

Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .



To refuse a call

Press the on-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .

International calls

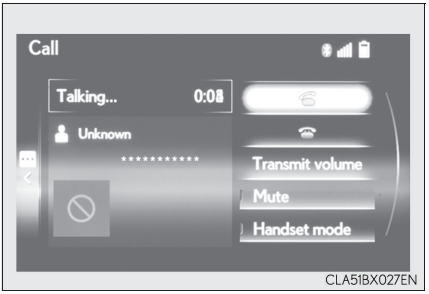
Depending on the cellular phone in use, received international calls may not be displayed correctly.

Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.

To adjust the transmit volume

Select "Transmit volume". To restore default volume, move the controller to the left on the "Transmit volume" screen and then select "Default".



To adjust in call volume

Move the controller to the left and then select "In-call volume". You can also adjust the volume using the "PWR•VOL" knob or the steering switches.

To prevent the other party from hearing your voice

Select "Mute".

Inputting tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the contacts using "p" or "w" symbols (eg. 056133 w 0123p#1).

▶ Contact including a phone number only

1 Move the controller to the left and then select "0-9".

2 Input the number.

▶ Phone number containing a "p" symbol

When the "p" symbol is dialed in an outgoing call, there will be a pause for 2 seconds before the following digits are dialed automatically.

▶ Phone number containing a "w" symbol

When the "w" symbol is dialed in an outgoing call, you need to go to the "Release tones" screen to dial the following digits. Move the controller to the left and then select "Release tones".

To transfer a call

Select "Handset mode" to change from a hands-free call to a cellular phone call or vice versa.

To hang up

Press the on-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .

Call waiting

When a call is interrupted by a third party while talking, an incoming call message will be displayed.

To talk with the other party:

Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .

To refuse the call:

Press the on-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .



Every time you press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select during call waiting, you will be switched to the other party.

Transferring calls

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to the cellular phone while driving.
- If you transfer from the cellular phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the cellular phone used.
- For operation of the cellular phone in use, see the phone's manual.

Call waiting operation

Call waiting operation may differ depending on your phone company and cellular phone.

Using a Bluetooth® phone messages

Once a MAP-profile compatible Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can check the E-mail/SMS/MMS and reply to a message using the following procedures:

Checking messages

1 Go to "Message inbox": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Message inbox"

2 Select a message.

Moving the controller to the left while on the "Message inbox" screen displays the setting screen. (→P. 507)

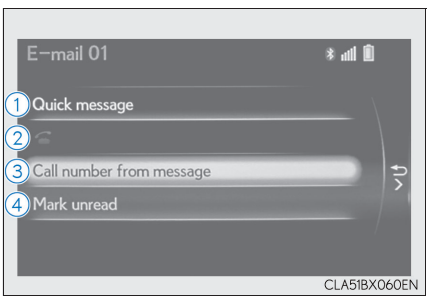
Move the controller to the right while on the "Message inbox" screen and then select an account to display a message list for the selected account.

Message screen

Selecting "Next" or "Previous" displays the next or previous message.
If a message is too long, select "Read more" to display the full text.

■ Option menu

Move the controller to the left while on the message screen.



① Select a prepared message and send a reply message.

② Call a sender.

If more than one phone number is registered for a sender, a phone number selection screen will be displayed.

③ Call a phone number written in a message.

④ Select "Mark unread" to mark E-mail that has been read as unread. Select "Mark read" to mark E-mail that has not been read as read.

Replying to a message

1 Move the controller to the left while on the message screen.

2 Select “Quick message” to display the “Quick message” screen.

3 Select the desired message and then select “Send”.

Editing a quick message

1 Move the controller to the left while on the message screen.

2 Select “Quick message” and then the desired message. Move the controller to the left while the desired message is displayed.

3 Select “Edit”.

To return to the default message after editing, select “Default”.

Receiving a message popup function

This function is available when the “E-mail notification popup” or “SMS/MMS notification popup” are set to on. (→P. 507)

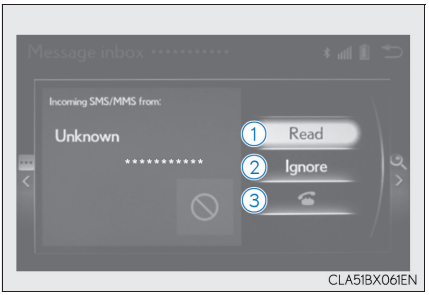
- “Incoming E-mail display” or “Incoming SMS/MMS display” are set to “Drop-down”

When E-mail/SMS/MMS are received, the incoming message is displayed on the upper side of the screen with a sound.

- “Incoming E-mail display” or “Incoming SMS/MMS display” are set to “Full screen”

When E-mail/SMS/MMS are received, the incoming message screen is displayed with a sound and it can be operated on the screen.

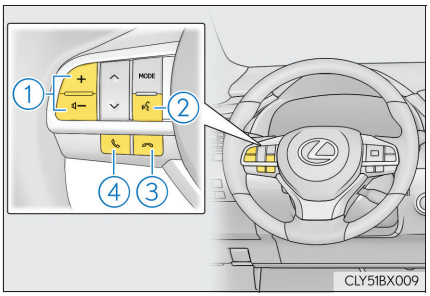
① Check the message.
② Refuse to check the message.
③ Call to receive the message sender’s phone number.



Using the steering wheel switches

The steering wheel switches can be used to operate a connected cellular phone.

Operating a phone using the steering wheel switches



① Volume switch

During an incoming call: Adjusts the ring tone volume

During speaking on the phone: Adjusts in call volume.

The voice guidance volume cannot be adjusted using this button.

② Talk switch

Press: Turns the speech command system on

Press and hold: Turns the speech command system off

③ On-hook switch

- End call
- Refuse call

④ Off-hook switch

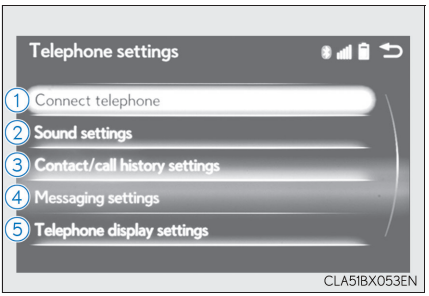
- Start call
- Receiving
- Phone top screen display

Bluetooth® phone settings

You can adjust the hands-free system to your desired settings.

"Telephone settings" screen

Go to "Telephone settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone"



① Register and connect a Bluetooth® device. (→P. 482)

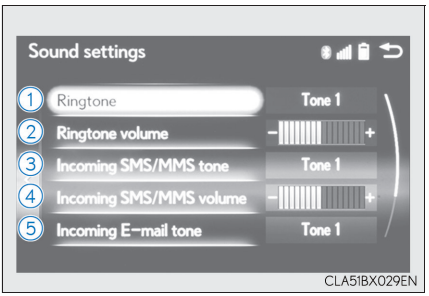
② Adjust the call volume. (→P. 502)

③ Change the contact/call history settings. (→P. 504)

④ Change the messaging settings. (→P. 507)

⑤ Change the phone display settings. (→P. 503)

Sound settings



① Change the ring tone type

② Adjust the ring tone volume

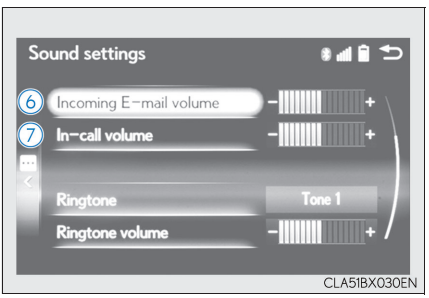
③ Change incoming SMS/MMS tone type

④ Adjust the incoming SMS/MMS tone volume

⑤ Change the incoming e-mail tone type

⑥ Adjust the incoming e-mail tone volume

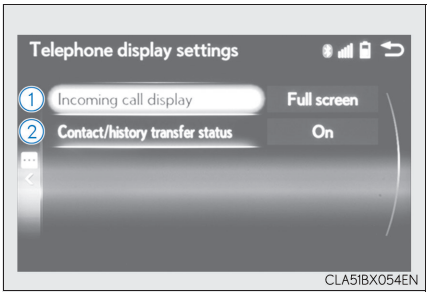
⑦ Adjust in call tone volume



Phone display settings

① Change the incoming call display

② Set the phonebook/history transfer status notification display on/off



■ **To return to the default volume settings**

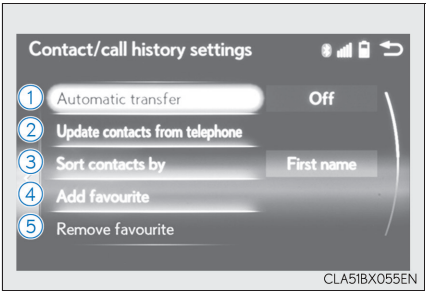
Move the controller to the left and then select “Defaults”.

Contact settings

Individual phonebooks from up to 5 phones can be registered to the system. The data for 2500 contacts (up to 4 numbers per contact) can be registered into the system's phonebook.

"Contact/call history settings" screen

Go to "Contact/call history settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings"

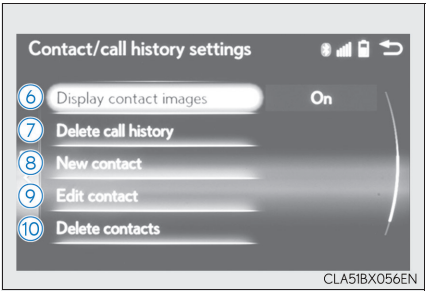


① Select to set the automatic phonebook download on/off

With this setting on, phonebook data will be automatically transferred.

Depending on the cellular phone, call history will be also transferred.

② Update phonebook (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic transfer" off)



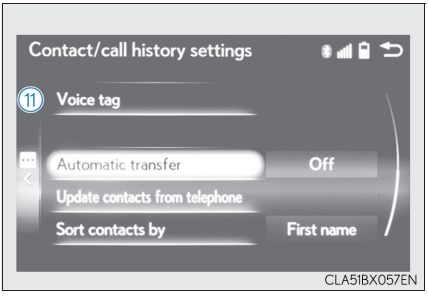
③ Change the sort contacts mode

④ Add a favorite (→P. 506)

⑤ Delete a favorite (→P. 506)

⑥ Select to set the display of contact images on/off

⑦ Delete call history. (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic transfer" off)



⑧ Add a new contact (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic transfer" off)

Input the name, phone number and phone number type to add a new contact.

⑨ Edit a contact (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic transfer" off)

Select the desired contact to edit.

⑩ Delete contacts (→P. 506) (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic transfer" off)

⑪ Edit a voice tag (→P. 524)

■ **Return to the default settings**

Move the controller to the left and select "Defaults".

Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system. Operation methods differ between PBAP compatible and PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones. If your cellular phone does not support either PBAP or OPP services, you cannot transfer contacts.

Go to "Transfer contacts": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings" → "Update contacts from telephone"

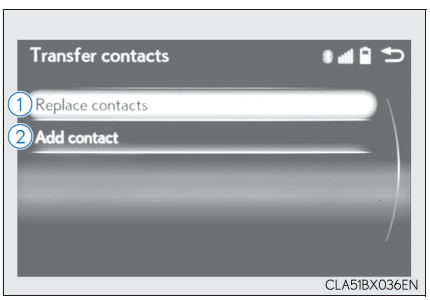
▶ For PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones when "Automatic transfer" is set to on

Start the update automatically.

▶ For PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones when "Automatic transfer" is set to off and PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones

① Select to transfer the contact from the connected cellular phone and replace the current one.

② Select to transfer the desired contact data from the connected cellular phone to add to the current one.



Registering favorites

You can register the desired contact from the phonebook. Up to 15 contacts per phone can be registered.

1 Go to "Add favourite": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings" → "Add favourite"

2 Choose the contact to register.

Removing favorites

1 Go to "Remove favourite": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings" → "Remove favourite"

2 Select the desired contacts.

You can select all contacts by selecting "Select all".

3 Move the controller to the left and select "Remove".

Deleting the contacts data

1 Go to "Delete contacts": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings" → "Delete contacts"

2 Select the desired contacts.

You can select all contacts by selecting "Select all".

3 Move the controller to the left and select "Delete".

■ **Phonebook data**

Phonebook data is managed separately for every registered phone. When one phone is connected, you cannot read the registered data of the other phones.

■ **When transferring contacts**

Transfer contacts while the engine is running.
If the cellular phone is OPP or PBAP compatible, you may need to input "1234" on the cellular phone for OBEX certification.

■ **When you have selected "Replace contacts" or "Add contact" to transfer contacts**

If the cellular phone does not support OPP service, you cannot use these functions. You can transfer the phonebook data only by operating your phone.

■ **Transferring contacts while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when data transfer finishes. It may not reconnect depending on the phone which is connected.

Messaging setting

Go to “Messaging settings”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “Telephone” → “Messaging settings”

① Select to set the message forwarding from cellular phones on/off

② Select to set the new SMS/MMS notification display on/off

③ Select to set the new e-mail notification display on/off

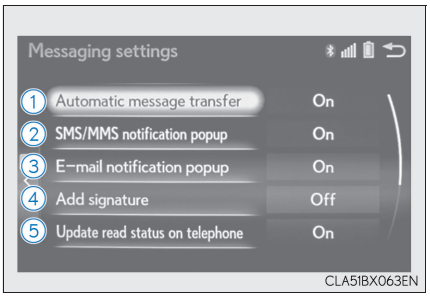
④ Select to set the signature function on/off

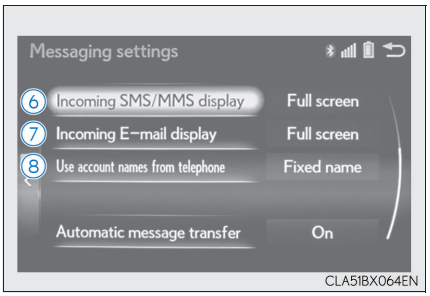
⑤ Select to set the cellular phone’s message read and unread status update function on/off.

⑥ Change the incoming SMS/MMS display.

⑦ Change the incoming e-mail display.

⑧ Change the account name to “Service name” (names from the connected device) or “Fixed name” (pre-defined names).





■ **Restoring the default settings**

Move the controller to the left then select “Defaults” on the “Messaging settings” screen.

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If there is a problem with the hands-free system or a Bluetooth® device, first check the table below.

▶ When using the hands-free system with a Bluetooth® device

The hands-free system or Bluetooth® device does not work.
The Bluetooth® version of the connected cellular phone may be older than the specified version. → **Use a cellular phone with Bluetooth® version 2.0 or higher (recommended: Ver. 3.0 with EDR or higher). (→P. 513)**

▶ When registering/connecting a cellular phone

A cellular phone cannot be registered.
An incorrect passcode was entered on the cellular phone. → **Enter the correct passcode on the cellular phone.**
The registration operation has not been completed on the cellular phone side. → **Complete the registration operation on the cellular phone (approve registration on the phone).**
Old registration information remains on either this system or the cellular phone. → **Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cellular phone, then register the cellular phone you wish to connect to this system. (→P. 482)**
A Bluetooth® connection cannot be made.
Another Bluetooth® device is already connected. → **Manually connect the cellular phone you wish to use to this system. (→P. 485)**
Bluetooth® function is not enabled on the cellular phone. → **Enable the Bluetooth® function on the cellular phone.**
"Check your telephone." message is displayed.
Bluetooth® function is not enabled on the cellular phone. → **Enable the Bluetooth® function on the cellular phone.**
Old registration information remains on either this system or the cellular phone. → **Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cellular phone, then register the cellular phone you wish to connect to this system. (→P. 482)**

▶ When making/receiving a call

A call cannot be made/received.
Your vehicle is in a "No service" area. → **Move to where "No service" no longer appears on the display.**

▶ When using the phonebook

Phonebook data cannot be transferred manually/automatically.
Automatic phonebook transfer function on this system is set to off. → **Set automatic phonebook transfer function on this system to on.** (→P. 504)
Passcode has not been entered on the cellular phone. → **Enter the passcode on the cellular phone if requested (default passcode: 1234).**
Transfer operation on the cellular phone has not completed. → **Complete transfer operation on the cellular phone (approve transfer operation on the phone).**
Phonebook data cannot be edited.
Automatic phonebook transfer function on this system is set to on. → **Set automatic phonebook transfer function on this system to off.** (→P. 504)

▶ When using the Bluetooth® message function

Messages cannot be viewed.
Message transfer is not enabled on the cellular phone. → **Enable message transfer on the cellular phone (approve message transfer on the phone).**
Automatic transfer function on this system is set to off. → **Set automatic transfer function on this system to on.** (→P. 507)
New message notifications are not displayed.
Notification of SMS/MMS/E-mail reception on this system is set to off. → **Set notification of SMS/MMS/E-mail reception on this system to on.** (→P. 507)
Automatic message transfer function is not enabled on the cellular phone. → **Enable automatic transfer function on the cellular phone.**

▶ In other situations

Even though all conceivable measures have been taken, the symptom status does not change.
The cellular phone is not close enough to this system. → **Bring the cellular phone closer to this system.**
The cellular phone is the most likely cause of the symptom. → **Turn the cellular phone off, remove and reinstall the battery pack, and then restart the cellular phone.** → **Enable the cellular phone's Bluetooth® connection.** → **Stop the cellular phone's security software and close all applications.** → **Before using an application installed on the cellular phone, carefully check its source and how its operation might affect this system.**

Bluetooth®

■ When using the Bluetooth® audio system

- In the following situations, the system may not function.
  - If the portable audio player is turned off
  - If the portable audio player is not connected
  - If the portable audio player's battery is low
- There may be a delay if a cellular phone connection is made during Bluetooth® audio play.
- Depending on the type of portable audio player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■ When using the hands-free system

- The audio system is muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the received call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
  If the Bluetooth® phone is too close to the system, quality of the sound may deteriorate and connection status may deteriorate.
- In the following situations, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If there is interference from the network of the cellular phone
- Depending on the type phone, certain functions may not be available.

■ Conditions under which the system will not operate

- If using a cellular phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the cellular phone is turned off
- If you are outside of cellular phone service coverage
- If the cellular phone is not connected
- If the cellular phone's battery is low
- When outgoing calls are controlled, due to heavy traffic on phone lines, etc.
- When the cellular phone itself cannot be used
- When transferring phonebook data from the cellular phone

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the display.
If the portable audio player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects, the connection status may deteriorate.
If the cellular phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, the connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/signal status**

- This display may not correspond exactly with the portable audio player or cellular phone itself.
- This system does not have a charging function.
- The portable audio player or cellular phone battery will be depleted quickly when the device is connected to Bluetooth®.

■ **When using the Bluetooth® audio and hands-free system at the same time**

The following problems may occur.

- The Bluetooth® audio connection may be interrupted.
- Noise may be heard during Bluetooth® audio playback.

■ **About the contact in this system**

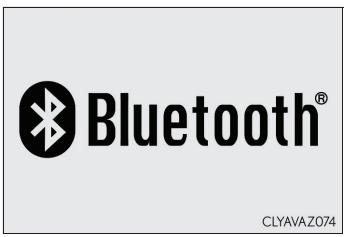
The following data is stored for every registered cellular phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Contact data
- Call history
- Favorite
- Message

When removing a Bluetooth® phone from the system, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

■ **About Bluetooth®**

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by FUJITSU TEN LIMITED is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



■ **Compatible models**

The Bluetooth® audio system supports portable audio players with the following specifications

- Bluetooth® specifications:
  Ver. 2.0, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 3.0 +EDR or higher)
- Profiles:
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
    This is a profile to transmit stereo audio or high quality sound to the audio system.
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.4 or higher)
    This is a profile to allow remote control the A/V equipment.

However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable audio player connected.

The hands-free system supports cellular phones with the following specifications.

- Bluetooth® specification:
  Ver. 2.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 3.0 +EDR or higher)
- Profiles:
  - HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.6 or higher)
    This is a profile to allow hands-free phone calls using a cellular phone or head set. It has outgoing and incoming call functions.
  - OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2)
    This is a profile to transfer phonebook data. When a Bluetooth® compatible cellular phone has both PBAP and OPP, OPP cannot be used.
  - PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.1)
    This is a profile to transfer phonebook data.
  - MAP (Message Access Profile) Ver.1.0 or higher
    This is a profile to using phone message.

If the cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot register it with the hands-free system. OPP, PBAP or MAP services must be selected individually.

■ **Reconnecting the portable audio player**

If the portable audio player is disconnected due to poor reception when the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable audio player.

If you have switched off the portable audio player yourself, follow the instructions below to reconnect:

- Select the portable audio player again
- Enter the portable audio player

■ **When you sell your car**

Be sure to delete your personal data. (→P. 449)

Certification

CE

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY"(DoC) is available at the following:
DoC address:
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED
2-28, Gosho-dori 1-chome, Hyogo-ku, Kobe, 652-8510, Japan

EN/IEC 60825-1:2007

Caution - Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

A warning label is affixed on the back of this product.

С настоящето, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, декларира, че FT0042F е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED tímto prohlašuje, že tento FT0042F je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Ovim FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, izjavljuje da je FT0042F u skladu s bitnim zahtjevima drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Undertegnede FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr FT0042F overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, dass sich das Gerät FT0042F in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab FUJITSU TEN LIMITED seadme FT0042F vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, declares that this FT0042F is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Por medio de la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que el FT0042F cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ FUJITSU TEN LIMITED ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ FT0042F ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED déclare que l'appareil FT0042F est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Con la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dichiara che questo FT0042F è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Ar šo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklarē, ka FT0042F atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklaruoja, kad šis FT0042F atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Hierbij verklaart FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dat het toestel FT0042F in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Hawnhekk, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, jiddikjara li dan FT0042F jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Alulírott, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED nyilatkozom, hogy a FT0042F megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Niniejszym FUJITSU TEN LIMITED oświadcza, że FT0042F jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que este FT0042F está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Prin prezenta, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, declară că aparatul FT0042F este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED izjavlja, da je ta FT0042F v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED týmto vyhlasuje, že FT0042F spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED vakuuttaa täten että FT0042F tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar FUJITSU TEN LIMITED att denna FT0042F står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir FUJITSU TEN LIMITED yfir því að FT0042F er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved at utstyret FT0042F er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Ovim , FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, izjavljuje da ovaj FT0042F je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, deklaroj qe ky FT0042F eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, bu FT0042F in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

⚠ WARNING

■ While driving

Do not operate the portable audio player, cellular phone or connect a device to the Bluetooth® system.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your portable audio player or cellular phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable audio player or cellular phone.

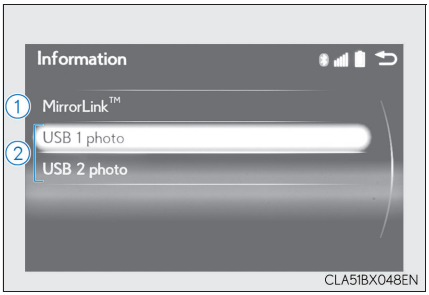
“Information” screen

Display “Information” screen

Go to “Information”: “MENU” button → “Info”

① Display the “MirrorLink™” screen. (→P. 518)

② Display the “USB photo” screen. (→P. 522)



MirrorLink™

The MirrorLink™ function enables operations of some smartphone content via the Lexus Display Audio system.

Depending on differences between models or software version etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

Connect a smartphone to USB port using a USB cable.
For safety reasons, the safe driving screen is displayed while driving depending on the application.

Connecting a smartphone

→P. 443

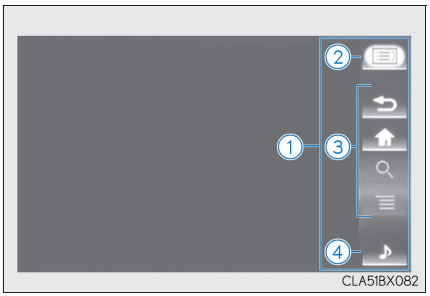
Using MirrorLink™ function

1 Go to "MirrorLink™": "MENU" button → "Info" → "MirrorLink™"

2 Select the desired application on the application list screen.

■ MirrorLink™ screen

Follow the specific operation procedures for the smartphone application.



① Control area

Press the back button on the Lexus Display Audio controller to turn the control area display on/off.

② Return application list screen

If you select the other application, the new application screen will displayed.

③ Displays software buttons that function as the buttons on the smartphone.

④ Change the other audio source (Radio, Disc, etc.).

Menu screen

To display the left menu screen, turn the controller to the left while the MirrorLink™ screen is being displayed.



① Select a device

② Change the screen size

③ Adjust the display settings.

■ Selecting a MirrorLink™ device

If more than one MirrorLink™ device is available, select the desired device.

1 Select "Select MirrorLink™ device" on the left menu screen.

2 Select "MirrorLink™ 1" or "MirrorLink™ 2".

■ Operational conditions

- When MirrorLink™ is activated, previous applications, run with a USB, are closed, and vice versa.
- Compatible devices
  Smartphones, which passed the Car Connectivity Consortium certification program ver1.1 or later. Confirm with the smartphone manufacture or the distributor for the MirrorLink™ compatibility.
- Compatible applications
  Applications, which are certified by Car Connectivity Consortium as MirrorLink™ Base-Certified or Drive-Certified applications.

■ About MirrorLink™

MirrorLink is a registered trademark of Car Connectivity Consortium, Inc.

■ When using MirrorLink™

- Check that the smartphone screen is unlocked. Unlock the smartphone screen before connecting it to the Lexus Display Audio system. (Some smartphones may not be able to be connected via MirrorLink™ if the screen is locked.)
- Make sure that the smartphone has been connected via Bluetooth®. (Some smartphones may not be able to perform hands-free calls using the MirrorLink™ function if it has not been connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth®.
- If a MirrorLink™ application cannot be started, check that the MirrorLink™ application certificate has not expired. The certificates of MirrorLink™ applications have an expiration date. (An internet connection is required to automatically update the certificate.) If a MirrorLink™ application becomes unavailable, it may be due to the certificate expiring. In this case, the certificate must be updated manually. Check with the smartphone manufacturer or application developer for how to update the certificate.
- Make sure the volume of the smartphone is set to an appropriate level. If the MirrorLink™ application volume is excessively low even when the volume of the Lexus Display Audio system is increased, check the volume of the smartphone and increase it as necessary.

⚠ WARNING

■ While driving

Do not connect smartphone or operate the controls.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the smartphone

- Depending on the size and shape of the smartphone that is connected to the system, the console box may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the console box as this may damage the smartphone or the terminal, etc.
- Do not leave your smartphone in the vehicle. The temperature inside may rise to a level that could damage the smartphone.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the smartphone device while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

USB photo

Connecting a USB memory device enables you to enjoy photo on the Lexus Display Audio display.

USB photo screen

Go to "USB photo": "MENU" button → "Info" → "USB 1 photo" or "USB 2 photo"

Connecting a USB memory device

→P. 443

Menu screen

Move the controller to the left to display the menu screen.

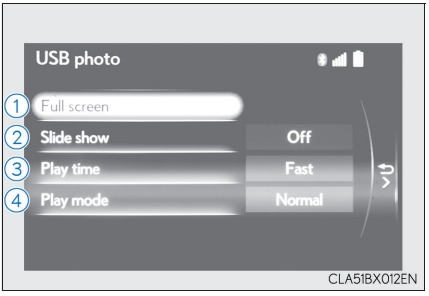
① Change the full screen mode.

② Select to set the slide show display on/off.

Start the slide show at a selected folder.

③ Change the play speed.

④ Change the play mode.



Selecting a folder and a file

1 Move the controller to the right and select "Browse".

2 Select the desired folder, and then select a desired file to begin using the selected folder.

■ USB memory functions
→P. 475

■ USB memory

● Compatible devices

USB memory device that can be used for JPEG display.

● Compatible device formats

The following device format can be used:

- USB communication format: USB2.0 FS (480 Mbps)
- File system format: FAT16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

● JPEG file compatibility

- Compatible image size: Maximum 10MB
- Compatible pixel size: Maximum 10,000,000 pixels

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB memory device or its terminals
→P. 478

Speech command system

Using the speech command system enables you to make a call to contacts that have a voice tag.

Editing a voice tag

You can register desired contacts to enable the speech command system. Up to 50 contacts per phone can be registered.

1 Go to "Voice tags": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings" → "Voice tag" → "New" or "Edit"

2 Select the desired contact.

3 Move the controller to the left and then select "REC".

4 Say the registered voice tag.

To play the registered voice, select "Play".

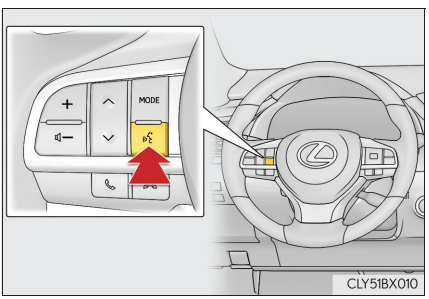
Deleting a voice tag

1 Display the "Voice tags" screen.

2 Select "Delete" and then the desired contact.

3 Move the controller to the left and then select "Delete".

Using the speech command system



1 Press the talk switch.

To cancel the speech command system, press and hold the talk switch.

2 After a beep sounds, say the desired contact name.

When the icon is displayed, you can speak a command.

3 If more than 1 contact name is displayed, select the desired contact name.

If more than 1 phone number is displayed, select the desired phone number.

When the off-hook switch on the steering wheel is pressed, the system calls the first phone number entry of the first contact.

■ Microphone
→P. 491

■ Speech commands may not be recognized if:
- Spoken too quickly
- Spoken at a low or high volume
- Passengers are talking while speech commands are spoken

Interior features 6

6-1. Basic operation of the Remote Touch screen

Remote Touch 528

12.3-inch display 531

6-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Lexus Climate Concierge 533

Automatic air conditioning system 534

Heated steering wheel/ seat heaters/ seat ventilators 547

6-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 550

- Interior lights 551
- Personal lights 552

6-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features 554

- Glove box 555
- Console box 555
- Cup holders 556
- Door pockets 557
- Bottle holders 558
- Coin box 558
- Auxiliary boxes 559

Luggage compartment features 560

6-5. Using the other interior features

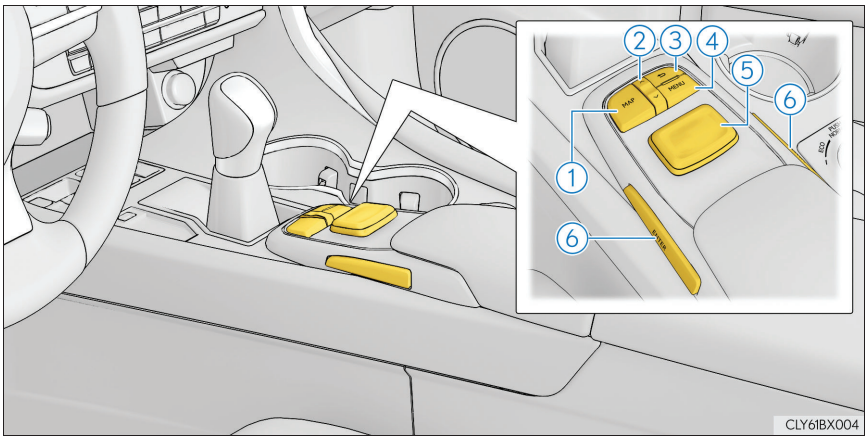
Other interior features 565

- Sun visors 565
- Vanity mirrors 565
- Clock 566
- Wireless charger 566
- Power outlets 572
- Front passenger footwell hooks 573
- Rear door sunshades 574
- Armrest 574
- Assist grips 575
- Coat hooks 575

Remote Touch*

The Remote Touch can be used to operate the Remote Touch screens.
Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

The illustration below is for left-hand drive vehicles.



① "MAP" button

Press this button to display the vehicle's current position.

② "∧•∨" button

Press this button to change map scale and scroll through lists.

③ Back button

Press to display the previous screen.

④ "MENU" button

Press this button to display the "Menu" screen. (→P. 530)

⑤ Remote Touch knob

Move in the desired direction to select a function, letter and screen button.
Press the knob to enter the selected function, letter or screen button.

⑥ "ENTER" button

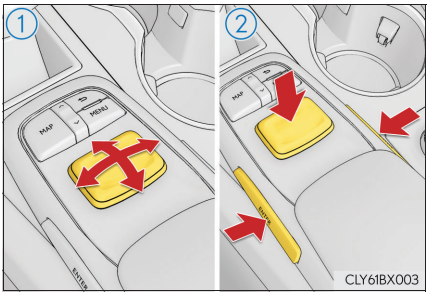
Press to enter the selected function, letter or screen button.

*: If equipped

Remote Touch operation

① Select: Move the Remote Touch knob in the desired direction.

② Enter: Push the Remote Touch knob or an "ENTER" button.



Screen display during low temperatures

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, screen response may be delayed even if the Remote Touch is operated.

WARNING

When using the Remote Touch

- Do not allow fingers, fingernails or hair to become caught in the Remote Touch as this may cause an injury.
- Be careful when selecting the Remote Touch in extreme temperatures as it may become very hot or cold due to the temperature inside the vehicle.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the Remote Touch

- Do not allow the Remote Touch to come into contact with food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes as doing so may cause it to change color, emit a strange odor or stop functioning.
- Do not subject the Remote Touch to excessive pressure or strong impact as the knob may bend or break off.
- Do not allow coins, contact lenses or other such items to become caught in the Remote Touch as this may cause it to stop functioning.
- Items of clothing may rip if they become caught on the Remote Touch knob.
- If your hand or any object is on the Remote Touch knob when the engine switch is in ACCESSORY mode, the Remote Touch knob may not operate properly.

"Menu" screen

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch to display the "Menu" screen.

When the split-screen display is selected, the "Menu" screen will be displayed on the main display. (→P. 531)



Switch	Function
	Select to display the map screen or the navigation menu screen.*
	Select to display the radio control screen.*
	Select to display the media control screen.*
	Select to display the hands-free operation screen.*
	Select to display the fuel consumption screen. (→P. 127)
	Select to display the "Information" screen.*
	Select to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P. 534)
	Select to display the "Setup" screen.*
"Display"	Select to adjust the contrast and brightness of the screens, turn the screen off, etc.*

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

12.3-inch display*

12.3-inch display overview

■ Full screen display

The following functions can be displayed full screen:

- Initial screen
- "Menu" screen (→P. 530)
- Map screen*
- Audio screen*
- Fuel consumption screen (→P. 127)
- Air conditioning control screen (→P. 534)

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

■ Split-screen display

Different information can be displayed on the left and right of the screen. For example, audio screen can be displayed and operated while the fuel consumption information screen is being displayed. The large screen on the left of the display is called the main display, and the small screen to the right is called the side display.



*: If equipped

Split-screen display operation

Selecting the operation screen

When selecting the main display, move the Remote Touch knob to the left. When selecting the side display, move the Remote Touch knob to the right.

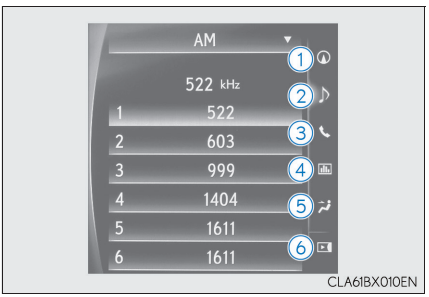
Main display

For details about the functions and operation of the main display, refer to the respective section and "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Side display

▶ Basic screens

To change the screen displayed on the side display, use the screen buttons on the right side of the display.



① Navigation system*
② Audio*
③ Phone*
④ Vehicle information (→P. 131)
⑤ Air conditioning system (→P. 538)
⑥ Select to hide the side display. If the item displayed on the main display is full screen display compatible (→P. 531), it will be displayed full screen.

▶ Interruption screens

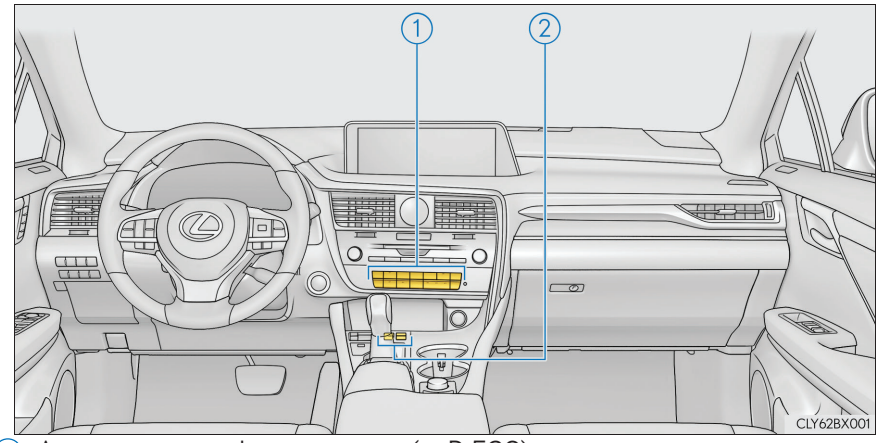
Each of the following screens is displayed automatically in accordance with conditions.

- Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P. 375)
- Phone*
- Driving mode (→P. 415)

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Lexus Climate Concierge*

The climate control seats are automatically controlled according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, cabin temperature, etc. Lexus Climate Concierge allows a comfortable condition to be maintained without adjusting each system.



① Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 539)

Set the air conditioning system to automatic mode.

The temperature for the driver's seat and front passenger's seat can be adjusted individually.

② Seat heaters and ventilators (→P. 548, 549)

Select "AUTO" mode on each seat.

Seat heater or ventilation is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, etc.

*: If equipped

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system: Press the "MENU" button on the Lexus Display Audio controller, then select "Climate" to display the air conditioning control screen.

For details on the Lexus Display Audio controller, refer to "Lexus Display Audio controller" on P. 438.

Vehicles with a navigation system: Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select  to display the air conditioning control screen.

The air conditioning system can be displayed and operated on the side display. (→P. 532)

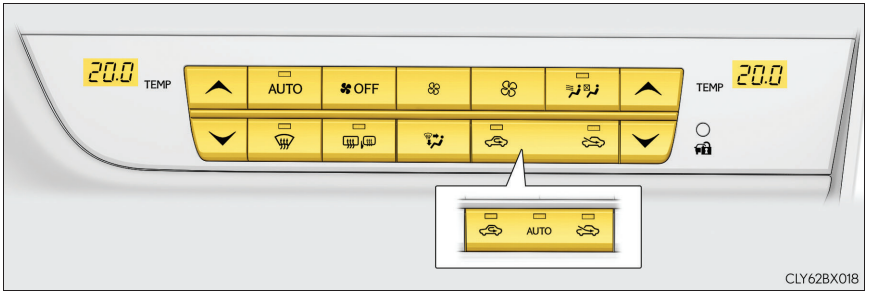
For details on the Remote Touch, refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

The illustrations in this section are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

Control panel



Adjusting the temperature setting

Press ▲ to increase the temperature and ▼ to decrease the temperature.

Adjusting the fan speed setting

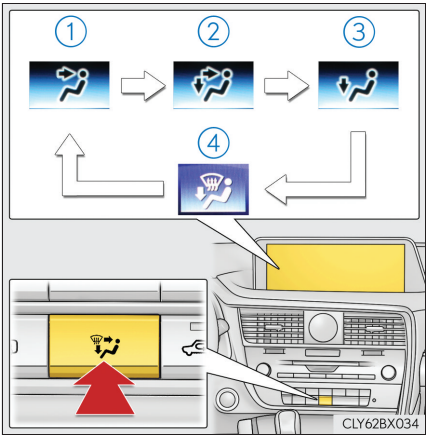
Press ❀ to increase the fan speed and ❀ to decrease the fan speed.

Press the “OFF” button to turn the fan off.

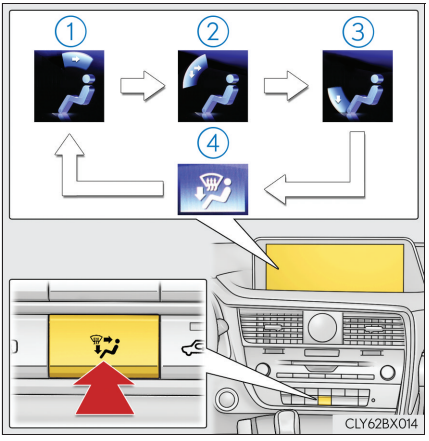
Change the airflow mode

To change the air outlets, press  .

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system



▶ Vehicles with a navigation system



The air outlets used are switched each time the button is pressed.

① Air flows to the upper body.

② Air flows to the upper body and feet.

③ Air flows to the feet.

④ Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

S-FLOW mode

In S-FLOW mode, priority for the airflow is given to the front seats, reducing the airflow and air conditioning effect on the rear seats.

If a passenger is not detected in the front passenger seat, priority for the airflow will be given to the driver's seat only.

In this case, the temperature indicator for the front passenger side will turn off.

S-FLOW mode will be activated automatically according to the set temperature, outside temperature, etc. (→P. 543)

The  indicator comes on when S-FLOW mode is on.

Other functions

- Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes (→P. 539)
- Defogging the windshield (→P. 540)
- Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors (→P. 540)

Control screen

▶ Lexus Display Audio screen



① Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

② Adjust the fan speed setting

③ Select to set auto mode on/off

④ Select to change the fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation. (→P. 541)

⑤ Select to set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

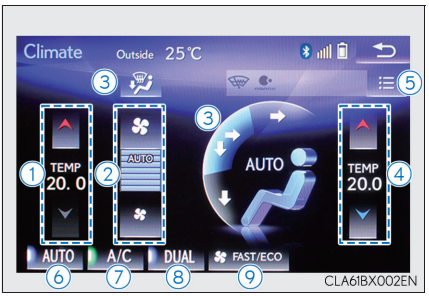
⑥ Adjust the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately (“DUAL” mode) (→P. 539)

⑦ Display the option control screen (→P. 538)

⑧ Select the air flow mode

⑨ Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

▶ Navigation system screen



① Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

② Adjust the fan speed setting

③ Select the air flow mode

④ Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

⑤ Display the option control screen (→P. 538)

⑥ Select to set automatic mode on/off

⑦ Select to set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

⑧ Adjust the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately (“DUAL” mode) (→P. 539)

⑨ Select to change the fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation. (→P. 541)

Option control screen

Select  on the air conditioning control screen to display the option control screen. The functions can be switched on and off.

▶ Lexus Display Audio screen



▶ Navigation system screen

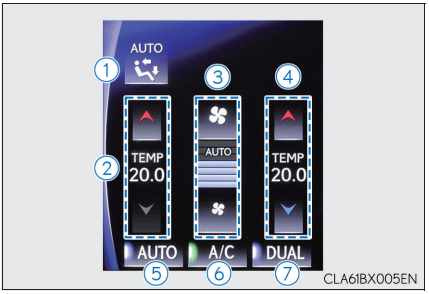


① Prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades (if equipped) (→P. 541)

② Select to set nanoe™* on/off (if equipped) (→P. 545)

*: nanoe™ and the nanoe™ mark are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation.

Side display operation screen (Vehicles with a navigation system)



① Select the air flow mode

② Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

③ Adjust the fan speed setting

④ Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

⑤ Select to set auto mode on/off

⑥ Select to set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

⑦ Adjust the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately (“DUAL” mode) (→P. 539)

Air conditioning controls

Using the automatic mode

1 Press the "AUTO" button or select "AUTO" on the air conditioning control screen.

2 Press 

to switch to automatic air intake mode. (if equipped)

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

3 Adjust the temperature setting.

4 To stop the operation, press the "OFF" button.

Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode)

To turn on the "DUAL" mode, perform any of the following procedures:

- Select "DUAL" on the air conditioning control screen.
- Select "DUAL" on the side display operation screen. (Vehicles with a navigation system)
- Adjust the temperature setting of the passenger side with the passenger side temperature adjustment button.

  The indicator comes on when the "DUAL" mode is on.

Other functions

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

▶ Type A

Press  .

The mode switches between  (recirculated air mode) and  (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

▶ Type B

Press 

.

The mode switches between  (recirculated air mode), automatic and  (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

■ Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press  .

Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press  again when the windshield is defogged.

■ Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press  .

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

Select  on the option control screen.

When the windshield wiper de-icer is on,  is displayed on the air conditioning control screen.

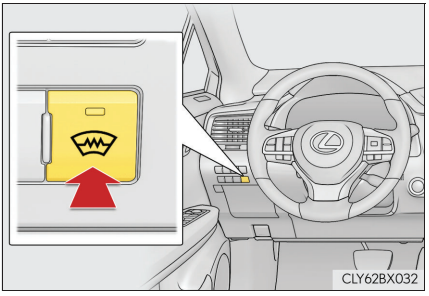
The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after a period of time.

Heated Windshield Defroster (if equipped)

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

Press the switch to turn the system on/off.

The Heated Windshield Defroster will automatically turn off in 4 minutes. The Heated Windshield Defroster will not operate if the outside temperature is 5°C (41°F) or higher.



Blower customization

Fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation can be customized.

To change the fan speed setting mode, select "FAST/ECO" on the air conditioning control screen.

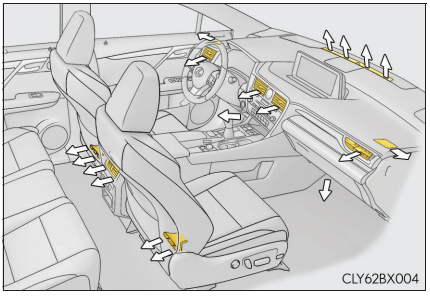
Each time "FAST/ECO" is selected, the fan speed setting mode changes as follows.

"NORMAL" → "ECO" → "FAST" → "NORMAL"

Air outlets

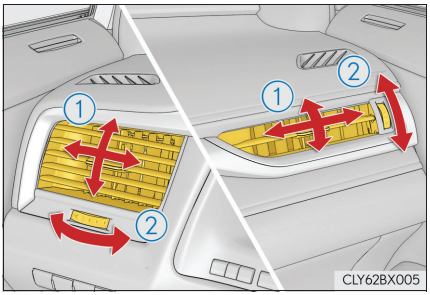
Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.

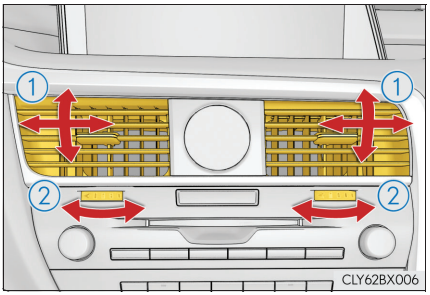


Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

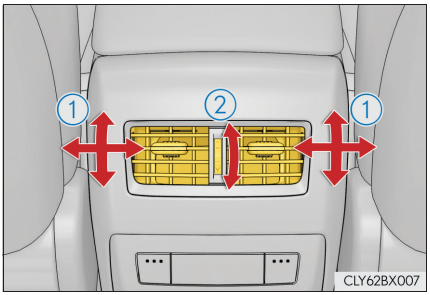
▶ Front side



▶ Front center



▶ Rear



① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent

■ **Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys (vehicles with driving position memory)**

- Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart entry & start system is used to unlock a passenger door.
- The doors that can recall the air conditioning setting when unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be changed.* For details, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: The doors that can recall the driving position memory are changed at the same time.

■ **Using automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.
Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after the "AUTO" button is pressed or "AUTO" is selected.

■ **Operation of S-FLOW mode**

In automatic mode, S-FLOW mode will be turned off if a rear door has been opened and closed. To activate S-FLOW mode again, press  .

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control (if equipped)**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function.

■ **Fogging up of the windows**

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Selecting "A/C" will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.
- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ **Outside/recirculated air mode**

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ **When the outside temperature is low**

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is selected.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

- In the Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency
  - Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
  - Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected
- To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations
  - Adjust the fan speed
  - Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ **nanoe™ (if equipped)**

Your vehicle incorporates a nanoe™ device, which is considered a biocidal product.

The nanoe™ device generates charged water particles from the ambient air. These particles purify the air in the cabin by suppressing bacteria.

The nanoe™ device is considered a biocidal product in the EU according to the interpretation of Regulation (EU) No 528/2012.

Active substances: Charged water particles (nano) containing hydroxyl radicals, generated from ambient air

nanoe™ helps to provide purified air by emitting electrically charged water particles through the window side air outlet of the driver's seat*.

- When the fan is turned on and "nanoe" on the option control screen is selected, the nanoe™ is activated.
- When the fan is operated in the following conditions, system performance will be maximized. If the following conditions are not met, the nanoe™ may not operate at full capacity.
  - The upper body, the upper body and feet or the feet air outlets are being used. (→P. 536)
  - The window side air outlet of the driver's seat is open.
- When nanoe™ is generated, a small amount of ozone is emitted and may be faintly smelled in some situations. However, this is approximately the same as the amount that already exists in nature, such as in forests, and it has no affect on the human body.
- A slight noise may be heard during operation. This is not a malfunction.

*: According to temperature and humidity conditions, fan speed and direction of the air flow, the nanoe™ may not operate at full capacity.

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P. 627

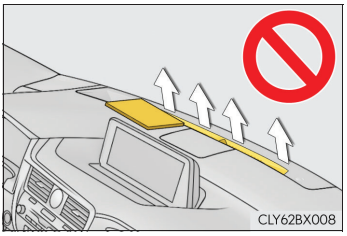
■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

WARNING

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

- Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.
- Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



To prevent burns

- Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces when the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on.
- Do not touch the glass at lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars when the windshield wiper de-icer is on. (if equipped)

nanoe™ (if equipped)

Do not disassemble or repair the generator because it contains high voltage parts. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if the generator needs repair.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

To prevent damage to the nanoe™ (if equipped)

Do not insert anything into the driver's side vent, attach anything to it, or use sprays around the driver's side vent. These things may cause the generator not to work properly.

Heated steering wheel*/seat heaters*/seat ventilators*

Heated steering wheel and seat heaters heat the side grips of the steering wheel and seats, respectively. Seat ventilators maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.

⚠ WARNING

- Care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel and seats when the heater is on:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Observe the following precautions to prevent minor burns or overheating:
  - Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
  - Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

NOTICE

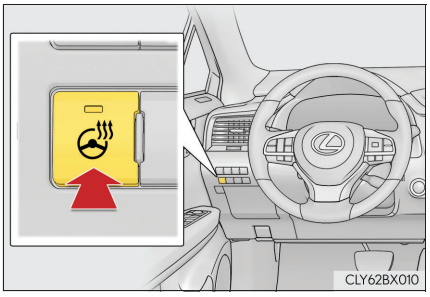
- Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not use the functions when the engine is off.

*: If equipped

Heated steering wheel

Turns the heated steering wheel on/off

The indicator light comes on when the heated steering wheel is operating.



Operation condition

The heated steering wheel can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

Timer

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

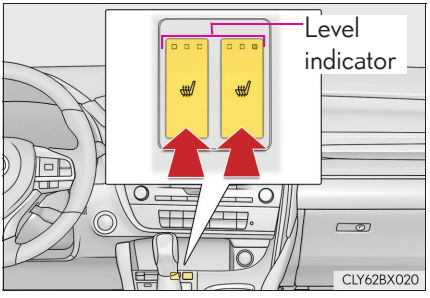
Front seat heaters

▶ Vehicles without seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The level indicator (amber) lights up during operation.



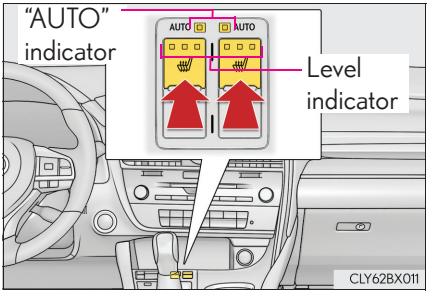
▶ Vehicles with seat ventilators

When any switch is pressed, the system is set to automatic mode and the "AUTO" indicator (green) lights up.

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The level indicator (amber) lights up during operation.



■ Operation condition

The front seat heaters can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Customization

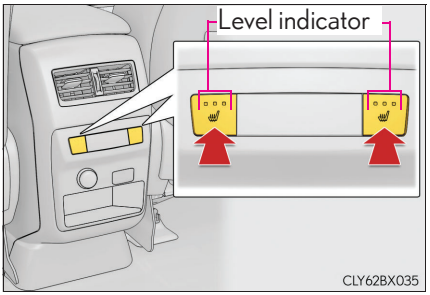
Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

Rear seat heaters

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The level indicator (amber) lights up during operation.



■ Operation condition

The rear seat heaters can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

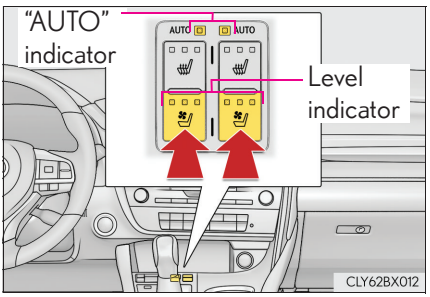
Seat ventilators

When any switch is pressed, the system is set to automatic mode and the "AUTO" indicator (green) lights up.

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The level indicator (green) lights up during operation.



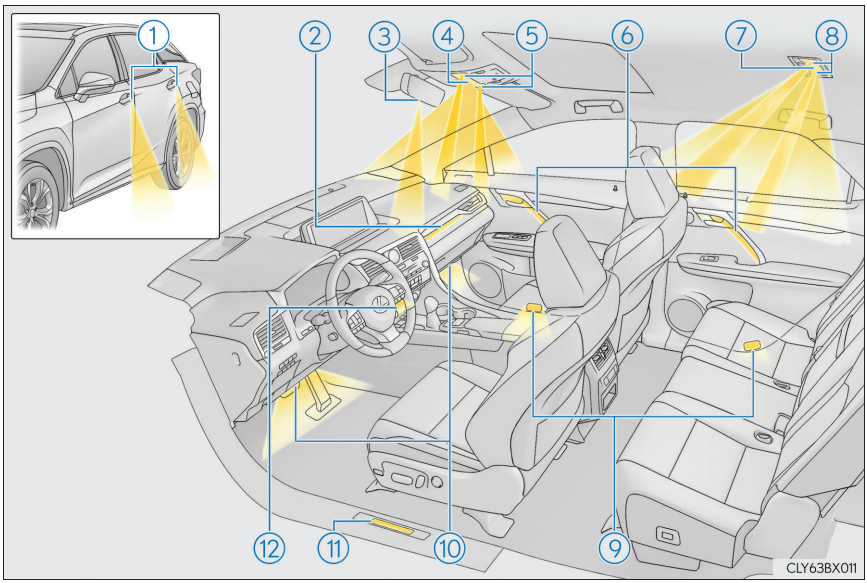
■ Operation condition

The seat ventilators can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

Interior lights list

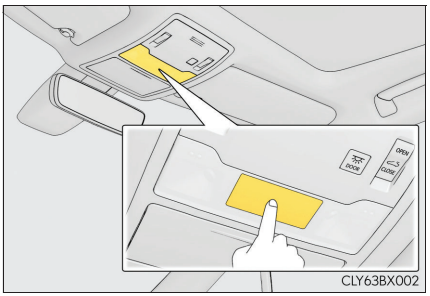


① Outer foot lights
② Instrument panel ornament light (if equipped)
③ Shift lever light (if equipped)
④ Front interior light (→P. 551)
⑤ Front personal lights (→P. 552)
⑥ Door trim ornament lights (if equipped)
⑦ Rear interior light (→P. 551)
⑧ Rear personal lights (→P. 552)
⑨ Door courtesy lights
⑩ Footwell lights
⑪ Scuff lights (if equipped)
⑫ Front center console light

Interior lights

The rear interior light turns on/off together with the front interior light.

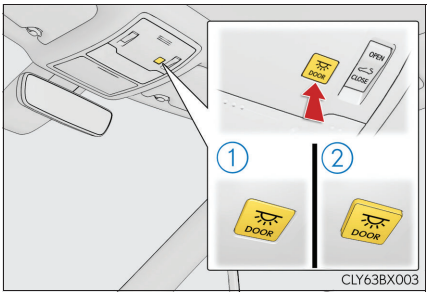
Turns the lights on/off (touch the light)



Turns the door position on/off

① On

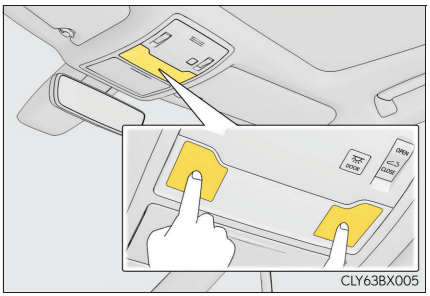
② Off



Personal lights

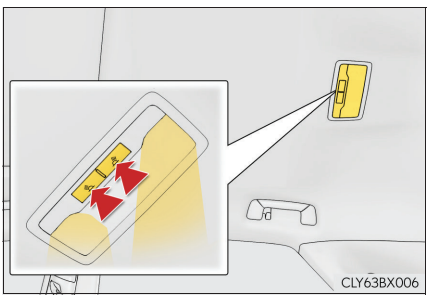
▶ Front

Turns the lights on/off (touch the lights)



▶ Rear

Turns the lights on/off

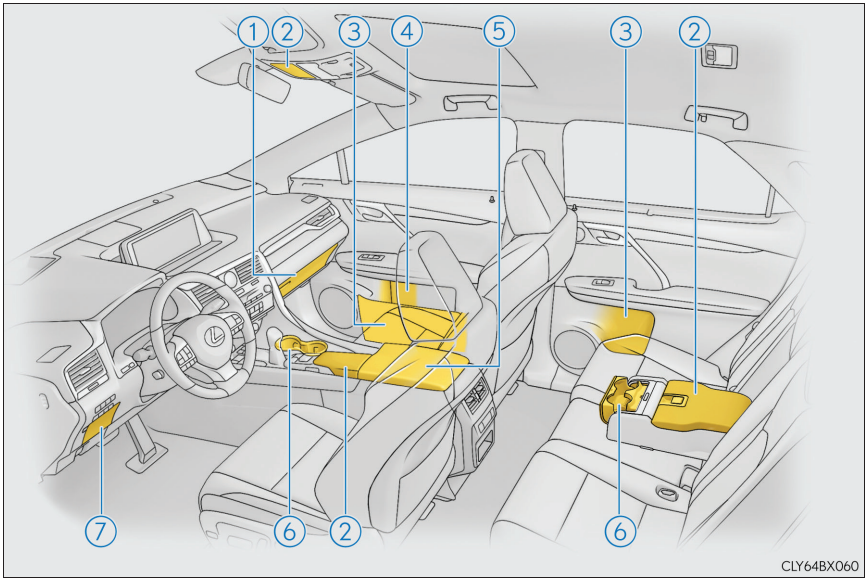


- Illuminated entry system: The lights automatically turn on/off according to engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.
- If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.
- In the following cases, the interior lights and front personal lights may not respond as normal.
  - When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
  - When operated with a wet hand
  - When wearing gloves, etc.
- Some functions can be customized. (→P. 734)

NOTICE

- Never remove the lens for the front interior light and front personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged. If the lens need to remove, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

List of storage features



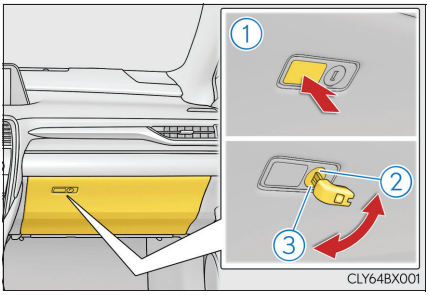
① Glove box (→P. 555)
② Auxiliary boxes (if equipped) (→P. 559)
③ Door pockets (→P. 557)
④ Bottle holders (→P. 558)
⑤ Console box (→P. 555)
⑥ Cup holders (→P. 556)
⑦ Coin box (→P. 558)

⚠ WARNING

- Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:
  - Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
  - Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.
- When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use, keep the lids closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

Glove box

① Open (press the button)
② Unlock with the mechanical key
③ Lock with the mechanical key

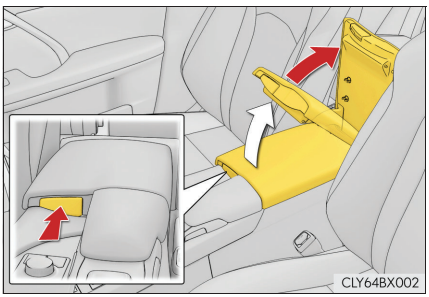


The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

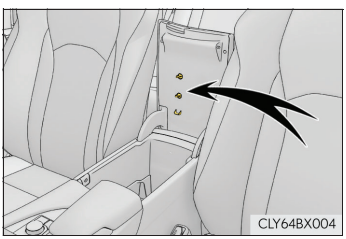
Console box

Push the knob.

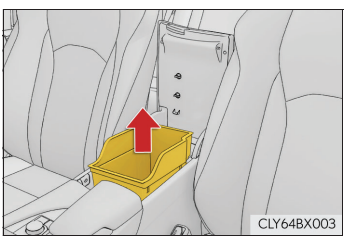
Lift by hand to fully open the console box.



- The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.
- A pen can be stored in the pen holder on the underside of the lid.

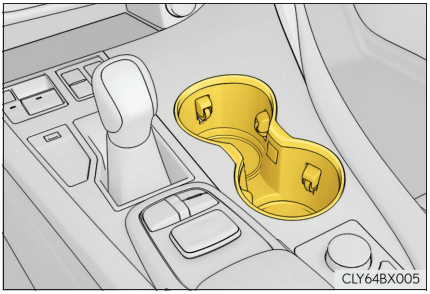


- Remove the tray to access a storage space under the tray.

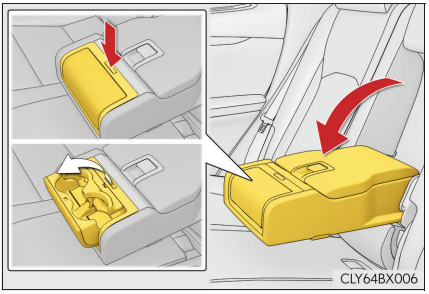


Cup holders

▶ Front



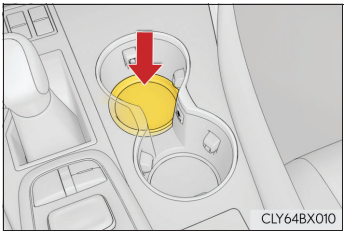
▶ Rear



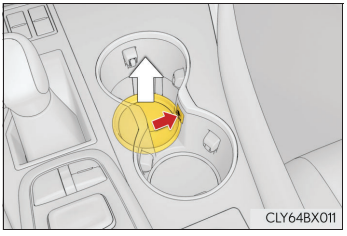
Pull down the armrest and then press down the button.

The depth of the front cup holder can be changed.

1 To store a water bottle, push down the bottom of the cup holder.



2 To return the bottom to its original position, press the button.



⚠ WARNING

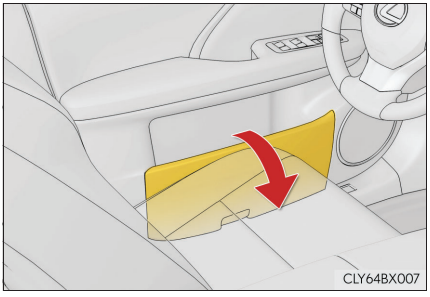
- Do not place anything other than cups, aluminum cans, or water bottles in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, possibly causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.
- Rear cup holder: When not in use, keep the cup holders are closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

NOTICE

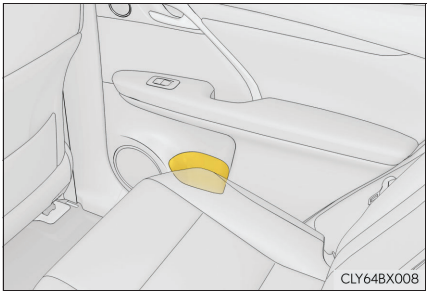
To prevent damage to the rear cup holder, stow the cup holder before stowing the armrest.

Door pockets

▶ Front



▶ Rear

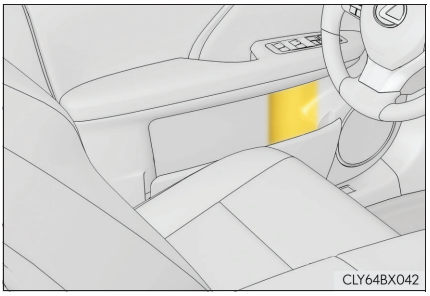


The door pockets can be opened and closed.

WARNING

Front door pockets: Keep the door pockets closed while driving.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Bottle holders



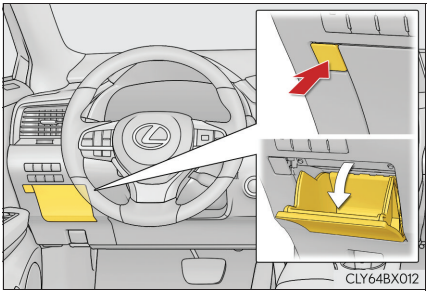
- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

NOTICE

Do not place open bottle, glass or paper cups containing liquid in the bottle holders. Otherwise, contained liquid may be spilled. Glass cups may break if used in the bottle holders.

Coin box

Press in the button.

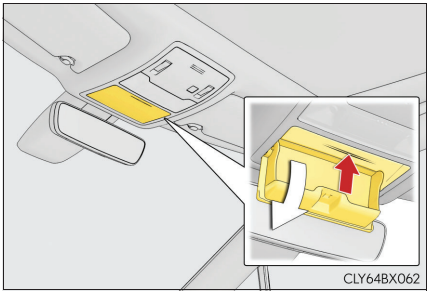


WARNING

Keep the coin box closed while driving.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

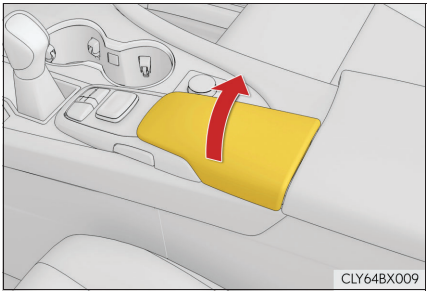
Auxiliary boxes

▶ Type A



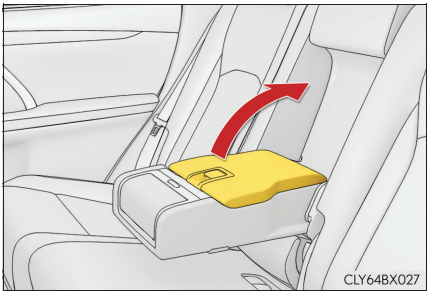
Press in the lid.

▶ Type B



Lift the lid.

▶ Type C (if equipped)



Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the lid.

⚠ WARNING

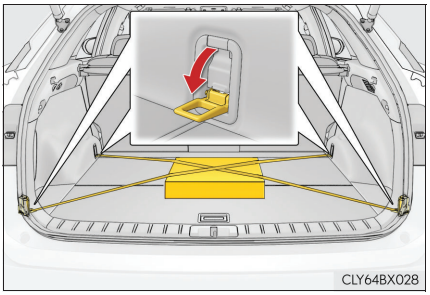
Type A: Do not store items heavier than 200 g (0.44 lb.).
Doing so may cause the auxiliary box to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.

Luggage compartment features

Cargo hooks

Pull down the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

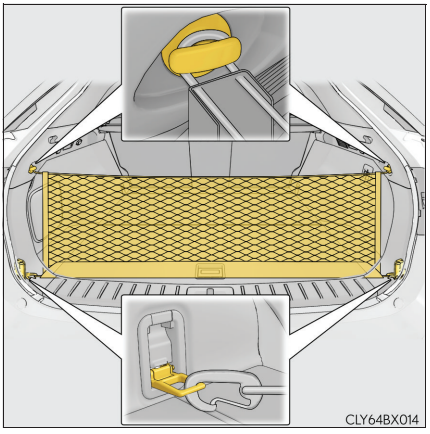


⚠ WARNING

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

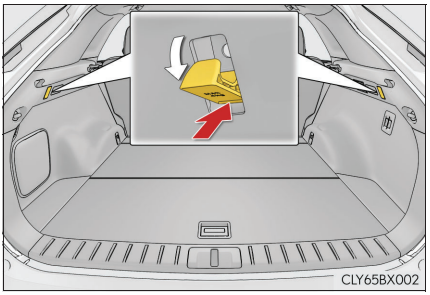
Cargo net hooks

To hang the cargo net, use the cargo net hooks and rear cargo hooks.



Grocery bag hooks

To use the grocery bag hook, push it in.



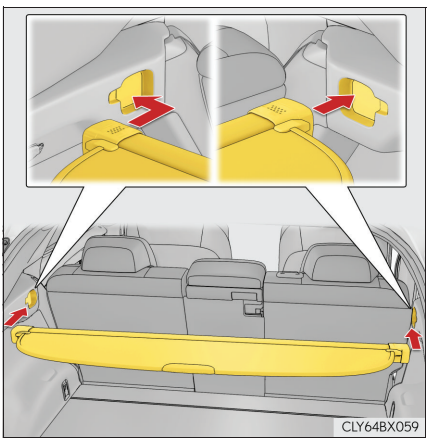
NOTICE

Do not hang any object heavier than 4 kg (8.8 lb.) on the grocery bag hooks.

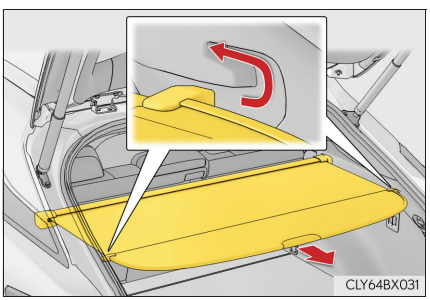
Luggage cover

Using the luggage cover

1 Insert either end of the luggage cover into the recess, then compress the other end of the luggage cover and insert it into the recess.

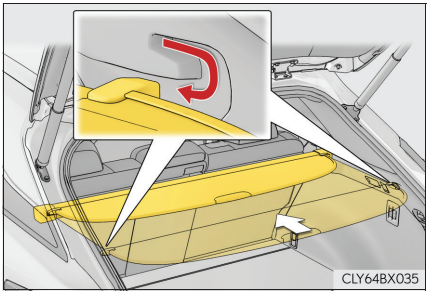


2 Pull out the luggage cover and hook it onto the anchors.



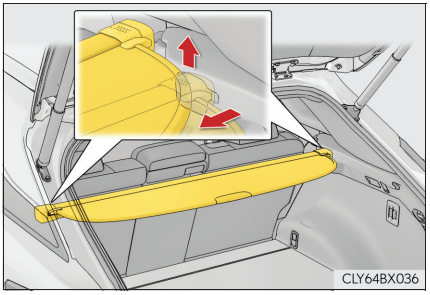
Removing the luggage cover

1 Release the cover from the left and right anchors and allow it to retract.



2 Compress the end of the luggage cover and lift the luggage cover up.

After removing the luggage cover, place it somewhere other than the passenger compartment.

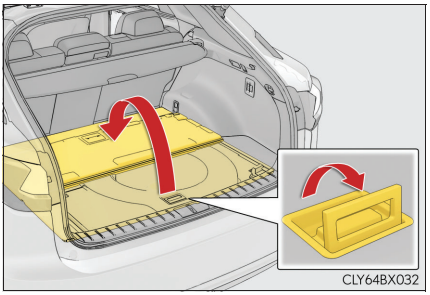


WARNING

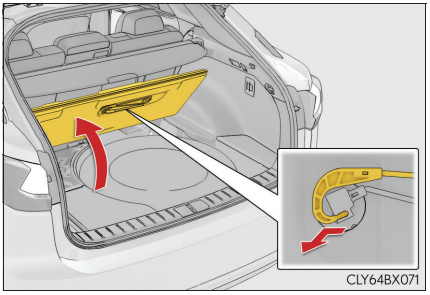
- Do not place anything on the luggage cover. In the event of sudden braking or turning, the item may go flying and strike an occupant. This could lead to an unexpected accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not allow children to climb on the luggage cover. Climbing on the luggage cover could result in damage to the luggage cover, possibly causing death or serious injury to the child.

Auxiliary boxes

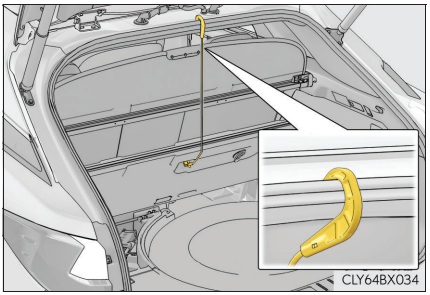
1 Pull the lever up and fold the flap of the deck board.



2 Lift the deck board and disengage the hook on the underside of the deck board.

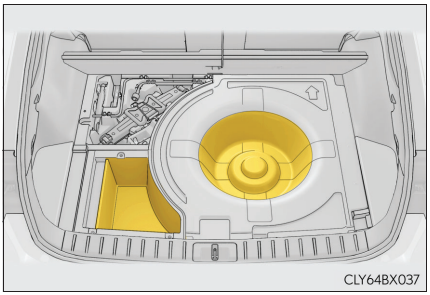


3 Attach the hook to the upper edge of the back door opening as shown.

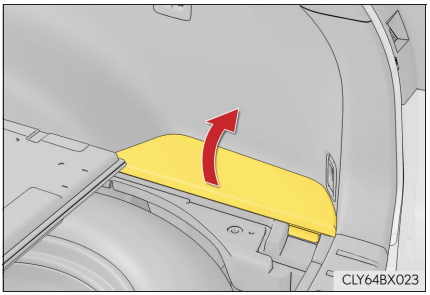


■ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

▶ Deck Floor box

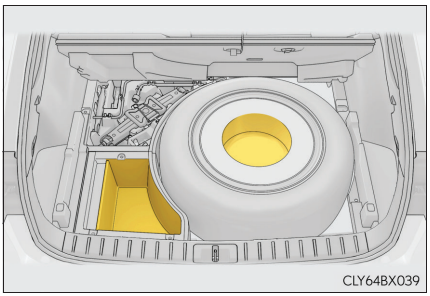


▶ Deck side box

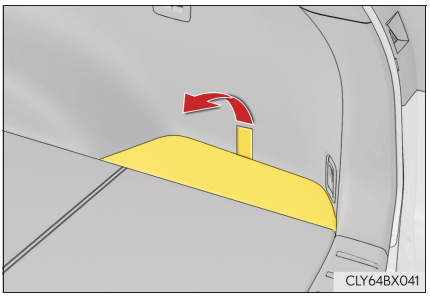


Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

▶ Deck Floor box



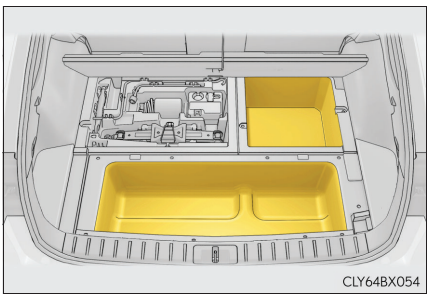
▶ Deck side box



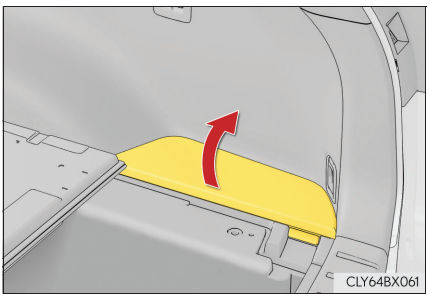
Pull the strap upwards when lifting the cover up.

Vehicles without a spare tire

▶ Deck Floor box



▶ Deck side box



WARNING

If the deck board is opened or removed, return it to its original position before driving. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the deck board or the items stored in the deck under tray.

NOTICE

When closing the back door, do not leave the deck board hook hooked on the edge of the back door. The deck board hook may get damaged.

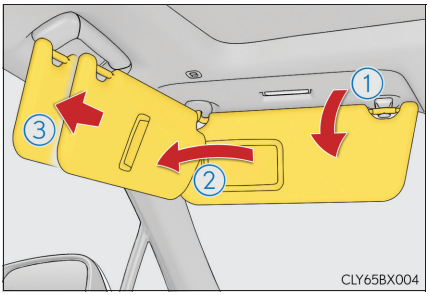
Other interior features

Sun visors

① To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

② To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

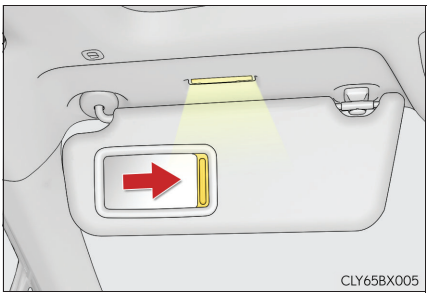
③ To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.



Vanity mirrors

Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



If the vanity lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the light will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

NOTICE

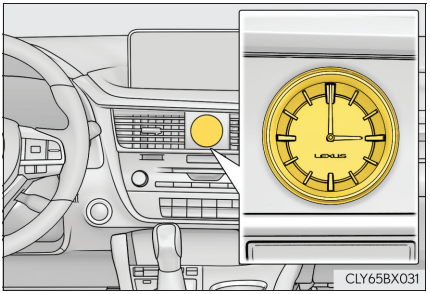
To prevent battery discharge, do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Clock

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information.

For details, refer to "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

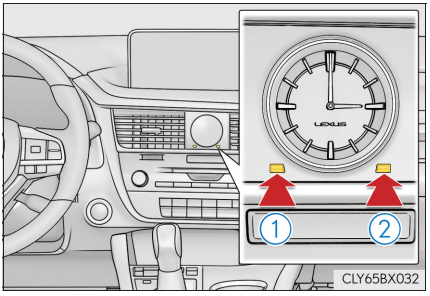


▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.

① Pressing and holding will move the clock hands backward.

② Pressing and holding will move the clock hands forward.



Wireless charger (if equipped)

A portable device, such as a smartphone or mobile battery, can be charged by just placing it on the charging area, provided the device is compatible with the Qi wireless charging standard created by the Wireless Power Consortium.

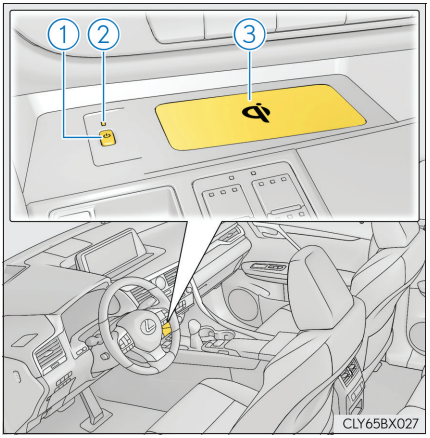
The wireless charger cannot be used with a portable device that is larger than the charging area. Additionally, depending on the portable device, the wireless charger may not operate properly. Refer to the operation manual of the portable device.

■ The "Qi" symbol

The "Qi" symbol is a trademark of the Wireless Power Consortium.

Name for all parts

① Power supply switch
② Operation indicator light
③ Charge area



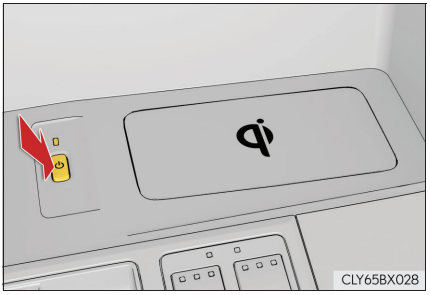
Using the wireless charger

1 Press the power supply switch of the wireless charger.

Pressing the switch again turns the wireless charger off.

When turned on, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.

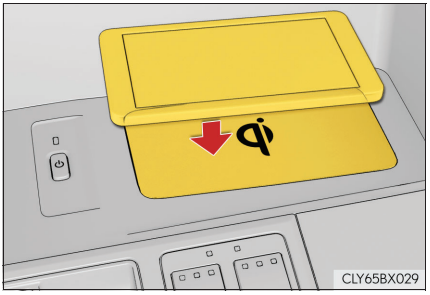
When the engine switch is turned off, the on/off state of the wireless charger will be memorized.



2 Place a portable device on the charging area with its charging surface facing down.

While charging, the operation indicator light (orange) will be illuminated.

If charging does not begin, move the portable device as close to the center of the charging area as possible.



When charging is complete, the operation indicator light (green) will illuminate.

● Recharging function

- If a certain amount of time has elapsed since charging completed and the portable device has not been moved, the wireless charger will restart charging.
- If the portable device is moved within the charging area, charging will stop temporarily then restart.

■ Operation indicator light status

Operation indicator light	State
Off	The Wireless charger is off
Green (illuminated)	Standby (charging is possible)
	Charging is complete*
Orange (illuminated)	A portable device has been placed on the charging area (identifying the portable device)
	Charging in progress

*: Depending on the portable device, the operation indicator light may stay illuminated (orange) after charging has completed.

● If the operation indicator light blinks

If an error is detected, the operation indicator light will blink (orange). Take the appropriate measures according to the table below.

Operation indicator light	Suspected causes	Measure
Blinks (orange) at a one second interval continuously	Vehicle to charger communication failure.	Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Blinks (orange) 3 times repeatedly	A foreign object exists between the portable device and charging area.	Remove the foreign object.
	Portable device is not positioned properly on the charging area.	Move the portable device toward the center of the charging area.
Blinks (orange) 4 times repeatedly	The temperature of the wireless charger is excessively high.	Stop charging immediately and continue charging after a while.

■ **The wireless charger can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Portable devices that can be charged**

- Portable devices compatible with the Qi wireless charging standard can be charged by the wireless charger. However, compatibility with all devices which meet the Qi wireless charging standard is not guaranteed.
- The wireless charger is designed to supply low power electricity (5 W or less) to a cellular phone, smartphone, or other portable device.

■ **If a cover or accessory is attached to the portable device**

Do not charge a portable device if a cover or accessory which is not Qi compatible is attached. Depending on the type of cover and/or accessory attached, it may not be possible to charge the portable device. If the portable device is placed on the charging area and does not charge, remove the cover and/or accessories.

■ **If interference is heard in AM radio broadcasts while charging**

Turn off the wireless charger and check if the noise is reduced. If noise is reduced, press and hold the power supply switch of the wireless charger for 2 seconds. The frequency of the wireless charger is changed and noise may be reduced. When the frequency is changed, the operation indicator light will blink (orange) 2 times.

■ **Charging precautions**

- If the electronic key cannot be detected in the cabin, charging cannot be performed. When a door is opened and closed, charging may be temporarily suspended.
- While charging, the wireless charger and the portable device will become warm. This is not a malfunction.
  If a portable device becomes warm while charging and charging stops due to the protection function of the portable device, wait until the portable device cools down and charge it again.

■ **Sound generated during operation**

When the power supply switch is turned on or while a portable device is being identified, operation sounds may be heard. This is not a malfunction.

■ **Cleaning the wireless charger**

→P. 584

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

When charging a portable device while driving, for safety reasons, the driver should not operate the portable device.

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators, as well as any other electrical medical device, should consult their physician about the usage of the wireless charger.

Operations of the wireless charger may have an affect on medical devices.

■ **To prevent damage or burns**

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in the possibility of fire, equipment failure or damage, or burns due to heat.

- Do not put any metallic objects between the charging area and the portable device while charging.
- Do not attach metallic objects, such as aluminum stickers, to the charging area.
- Do not cover the wireless charger with a cloth or other object while charging.
- Do not attempt to charge portable devices which are not compatible with the Qi wireless charging standard.
- Do not disassemble, modify or remove the wireless charger.
- Do not apply force or impact to the wireless charger.

NOTICE

■ **Conditions in which the wireless charger may not operate correctly**

In the following situations, the wireless charger may not operate correctly:

- When a portable device is fully charged
- When there is a foreign object between the charging area and portable device
- When a portable device becomes hot while charging
- When a portable device is placed on the wireless area with its charging surface facing up
- When a portable device is not centered on the charging area
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the portable device is in contact with, or is covered by any of the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Metal hand warmers
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When wireless keys (that emit radio waves) other than those of your vehicle are being used nearby.

If in situations other than above the wireless charger does not operate properly or the operation indicator light is blinking, the wireless charger may be malfunctioning. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **To prevent failure or damage to data**

- Do not bring magnetic cards, such as a credit card, or magnetic recording media, close to the wireless charger while charging. Otherwise, data may be erased due to the influence of magnetism.
  Additionally, do not bring precision instruments such as wrist watches, close to the wireless charger, as such objects may malfunction.
- Do not leave portable devices in the cabin. The temperature inside the cabin may become high when parked in the sun, and cause damage to the device.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the wireless charger for a long period of time with the engine is stopped.

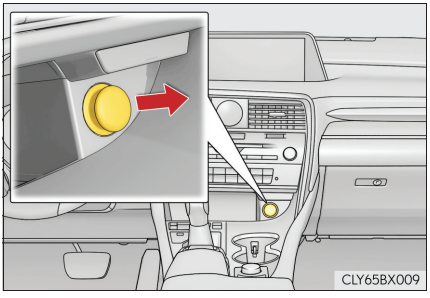
Power outlets

Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC /10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

Observe the following when using electronic goods:

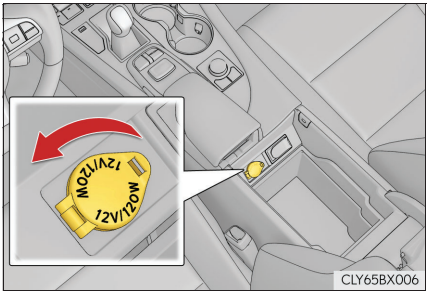
- Make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets on the instrument panel and in the luggage compartment is less than 120 W.
- Make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets inside the console box and on the rear console is less than 120 W.

▶ On the instrument panel



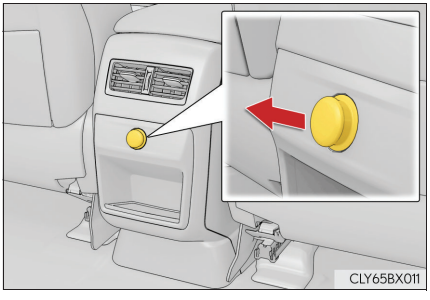
Remove the cap.

▶ Inside the console box



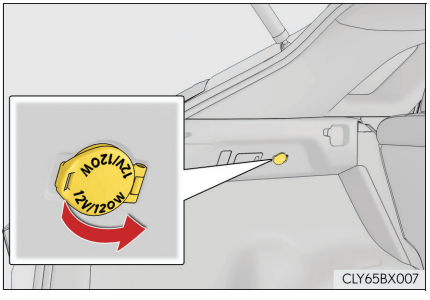
Open the lid.

▶ On the rear console



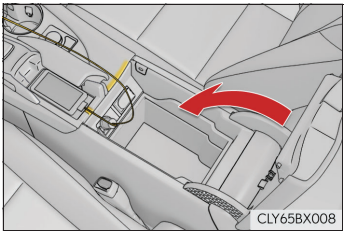
Remove the cap.

▶ In the luggage compartment



Open the lid.

- The power outlets can be used when the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.
- The shape of the console box rim allows power cables to be passed through when the console box lid is closed.



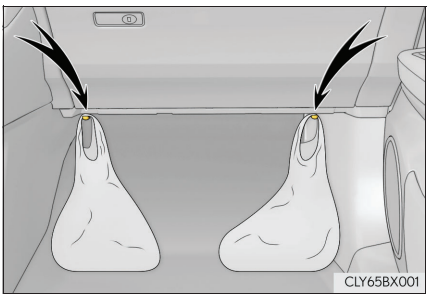
- RX200t: When the engine restarts after having been stopped by the Stop & Start system, the power outlets may be temporarily unusable, but this is not a malfunction.

NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the power outlets, install the cap or close the lid when the power outlets is not in use.
  Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlets may cause a short circuit.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Front passenger footwell hooks

Use the front passenger footwell hooks to help support and prevent objects placed on the floor, such as a grocery bag, from overturning.



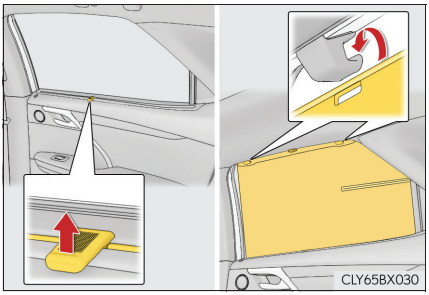
NOTICE

To prevent the hooks from being damaged, do not hang anything from a hook or apply excessive force to it.

Rear door sunshades (if equipped)

Pull the sunshade up using the tab and hook the sunshade on to the anchors.

To lower the sunshade, pull it up slightly using the tab, unhook it from the anchors, and lower it slowly.



⚠ WARNING

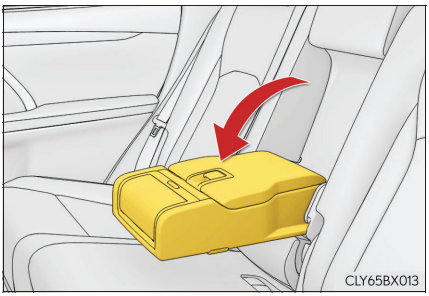
When a rear door sunshade is in use, do not put fingers, etc. on the anchors or in the groove of the rear door sunshade. Otherwise, a finger, etc. may get caught, possibly causing an injury.

⚠ NOTICE

- Do not put anything in an area where it may interfere with the operation of a rear door sunshade.
- To prevent damage to the rear door sunshades, do not apply excessive load or attach items to the rear door sunshades.

Armrest

Fold down the armrest for use.

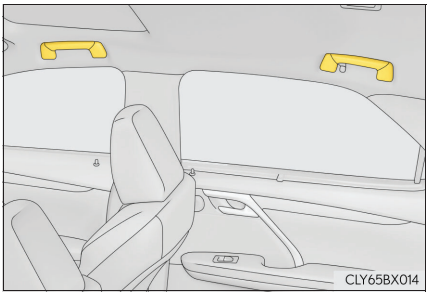


⚠ NOTICE

To prevent damage to the armrest, do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



WARNING

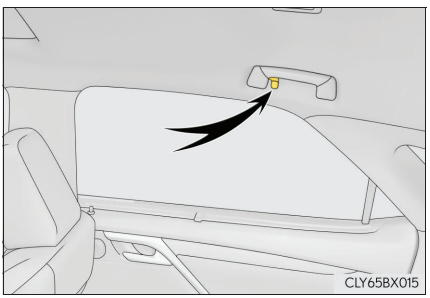
Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the assist grip, do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Coat hooks

The coat hooks are provided with the rear assist grips.



WARNING

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

Maintenance and care 7

7-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 578

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 583

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 586

7-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 589

Hood 591

Positioning a floor jack 592

Engine compartment 593

Tires 606

Tire inflation pressure 623

Wheels 625

Air conditioning filter 627

Windshield wiper inserts 630

Electronic key battery 632

Checking and replacing fuses 634

Light bulbs 637

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Self-restoring coat

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash, etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature. The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc., cannot be restored.
- Do not use wax that contain abrasives.

Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
  - Fold the mirrors
  - Turn off the power back door (if equipped)

  Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rear spoiler may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.

High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ Note for a smart entry & start system

- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 169)

■ Aluminum wheels

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners.
  Use the same mild detergent as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ Front side windows water-repellent coating

- The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.
  - Remove any dirt, etc., from the front side windows regularly.
  - Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period.
    Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
  - Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
  - Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.
- When the water-repellent performance has become insufficient, the coating can be repaired. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

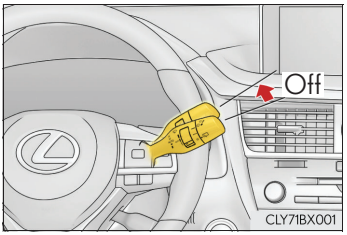
⚠ WARNING

■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components, etc. to catch fire.

■ When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes and diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

■ Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels, etc.)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

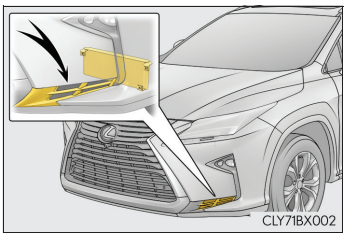
■ **When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Set the wiper switch to the off position.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

NOTICE

■ When using a high pressure car wash

- When washing the vehicle, do not let water of the high pressure washer hit directly or the vicinity of the camera. Due to the shock from the high pressure water, it is possible the device may not operate as normal.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts. The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
  - Traction related parts
  - Steering parts
  - Suspension parts
  - Brake parts
- Do not point the nozzle of a high pressure washer at the areas shown in the illustration, as high pressure water may damage the oil cooler.



Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

⚠ WARNING

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components, etc., to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 42)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Vehicles with wireless charger:
  Do not let the wireless charger (→P. 567) get wet. Failure to do so may cause the charger to become hot and cause burns or could cause electric shock resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning detergents**

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ **When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with Lexus Safety System+)**

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens.
(→P. 311, 322)

■ **Cleaning the inside of the rear window**

- Do not use a glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For full details of your maintenance schedule, refer to the "Lexus Service Booklet" or "Lexus Warranty Booklet".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you're an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer will keep a record of maintenance, which could be useful should you ever require Warranty Service. Should you choose to select a qualified and equipped professional other than an authorized Lexus repairer to service or maintain your vehicle, we recommend that you request that a record of maintenance be kept.

■ **Where to go for maintenance service?**

In order to maintain your vehicle in the best possible condition, Lexus recommends that maintenance service operations as well as other inspections and repairs be carried out by authorized Lexus dealers or repairers or other duly qualified and equipped professionals. For repairs and services covered by your warranty, please visit an authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, who will use genuine Lexus parts in repairing any difficulties you may encounter. There can also be advantages in utilizing authorized Lexus dealers or repairers for non-warranty repairs and services, as members of the Lexus network will be able to expertly assist you with any difficulties you may encounter.

Your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically due to their experience with Lexus vehicles.

■ **Does your vehicle need repairs?**

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P. 95)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

WARNING

■ **If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ **Handling of the battery**

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 601)

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 601)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine/intercooler coolant level (→P. 599)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 595)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 634)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P. 637)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator (→P. 601)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 623)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 605)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ **When working on the engine compartment**

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc., right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately. If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ **When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille**

Be sure the engine switch is off.
With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 601)

■ **Safety glasses**

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc., from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

■ **If you remove the air cleaner filter**

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

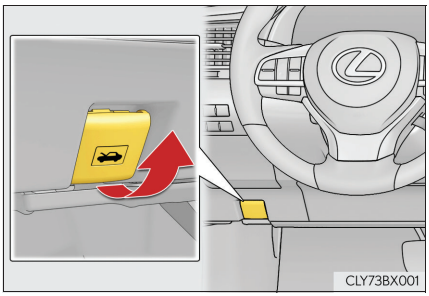
■ **If the fluid level is low or high**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

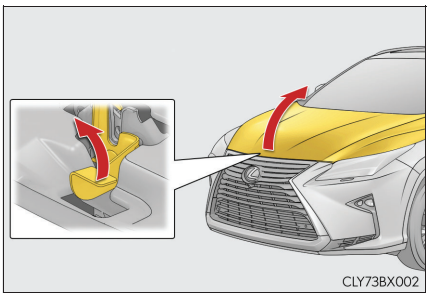
Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.
The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



WARNING

■ **Pre-driving check**

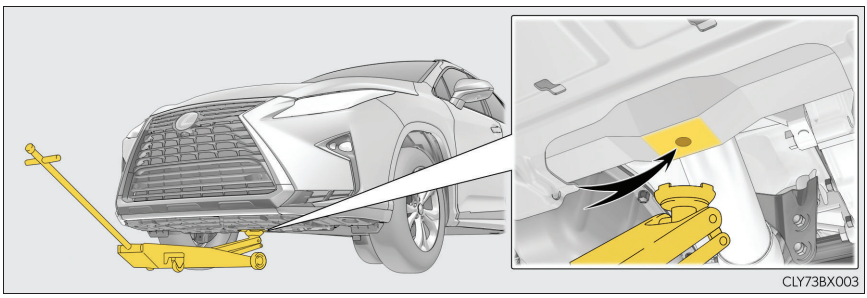
Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Positioning a floor jack

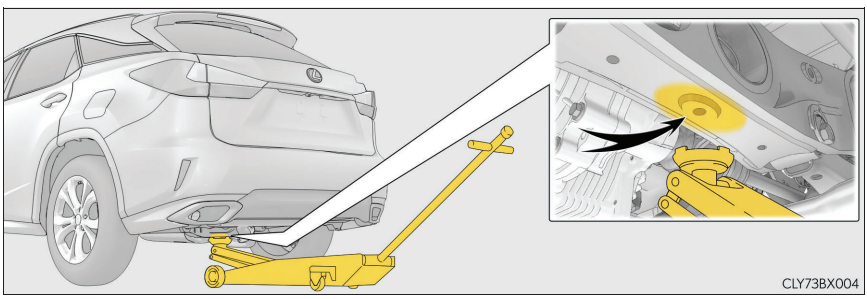
When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Front

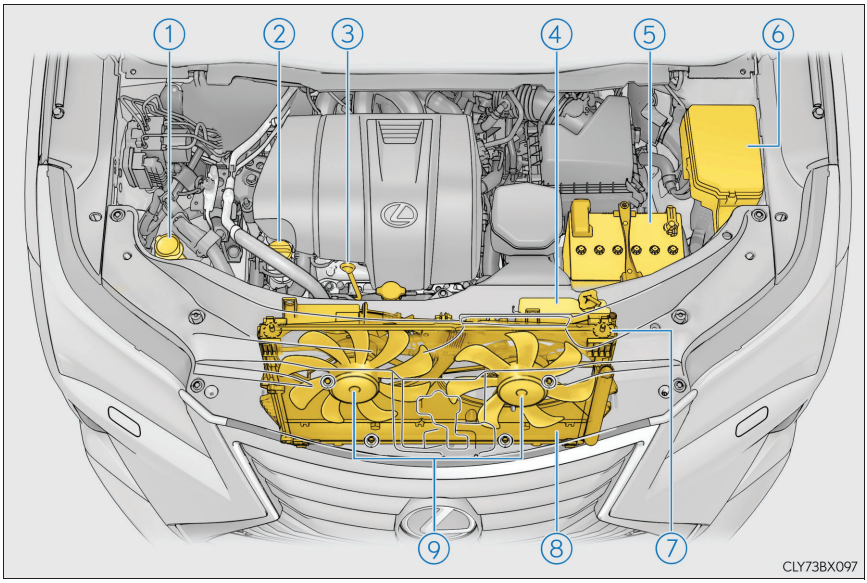


Rear



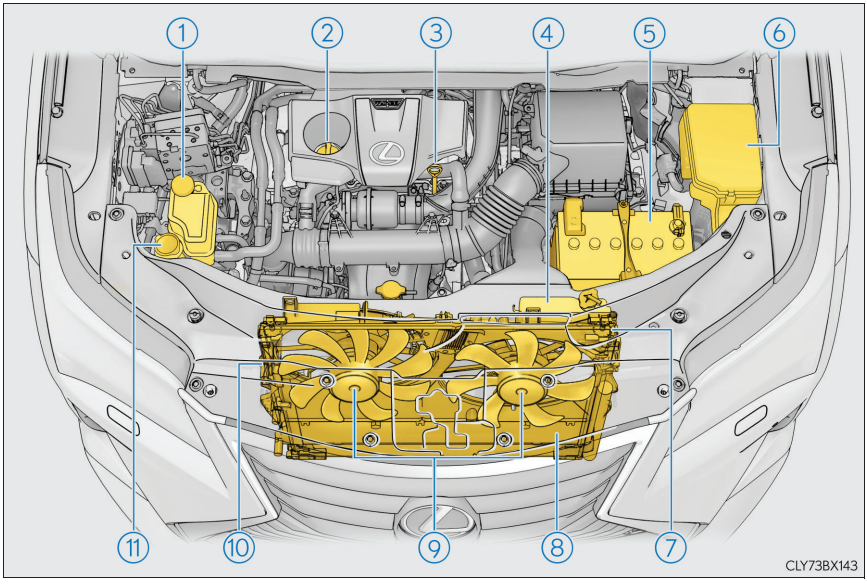
Engine compartment

▶ RX350



① Washer fluid tank (→P. 605)
② Engine oil filler cap (→P. 597)
③ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 595)
④ Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 599)
⑤ Battery (→P. 601)
⑥ Fuse box (→P. 634)
⑦ Radiator (→P. 601)
⑧ Condenser (→P. 601)
⑨ Electric cooling fans

▶ RX200t



① Intercooler coolant reservoir (→P. 599)
② Engine oil filler cap (→P. 597)
③ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 595)
④ Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 599)
⑤ Battery (→P. 601)
⑥ Fuse box (→P. 634)
⑦ Radiator (→P. 601)
⑧ Condenser (→P. 601)
⑨ Electric cooling fans
⑩ Intercooler radiator (→P. 601)
⑪ Washer fluid tank (→P. 605)

Engine oil

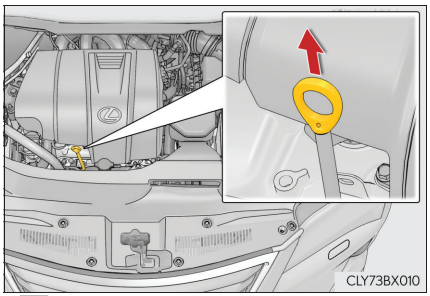
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

Checking the engine oil

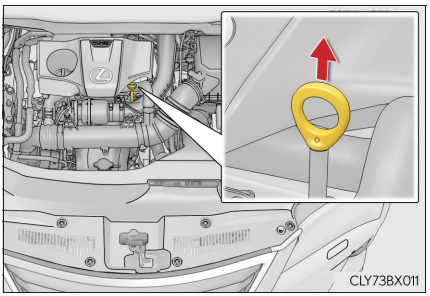
1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

▶ RX350



▶ RX200t



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

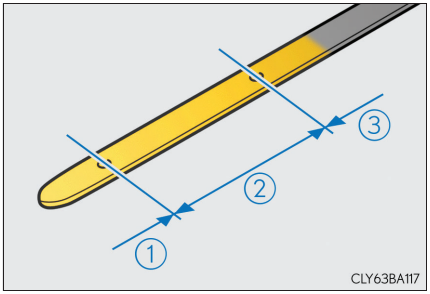
5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

① Low

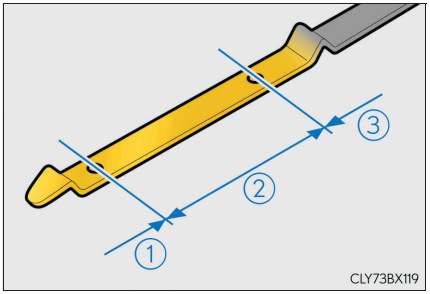
② Normal

③ Excessive

▶ Flat dipstick



▶ Non-flat dipstick



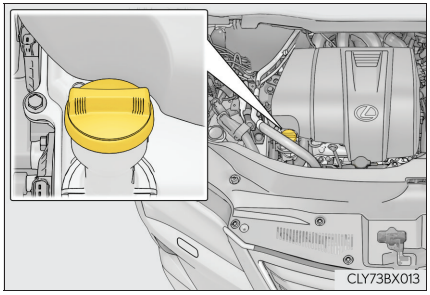
The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

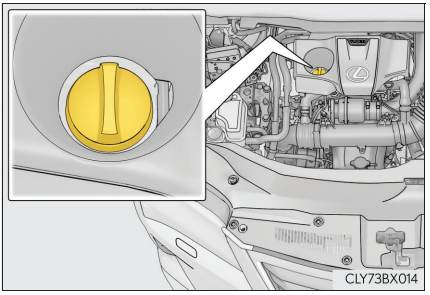
Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

▶ RX350



▶ RX200t



Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 724
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	▶ RX350 1.8 L (1.9 qt., 1.6 Imp. qt.) ▶ RX200t 1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, when towing, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

■ After changing the engine oil

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

1 Select  on the multi-information display. (→P. 109)

2 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switch, select the "Oil Maintenance" screen and then press and hold the ·.

3 Select the "Yes" and push ·.

4 A message is displayed on the multi-information display.

⚠ WARNING

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

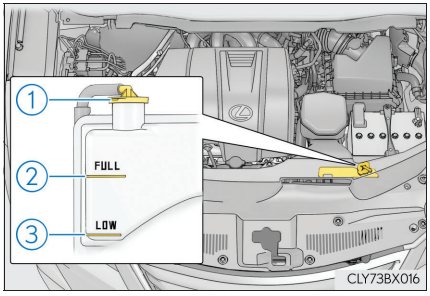
- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Coolant

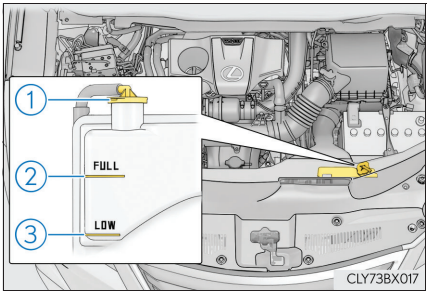
The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

■ Engine coolant reservoir

▶ RX350



▶ RX200t



① Reservoir cap

② “FULL” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 712)

③ “LOW” line

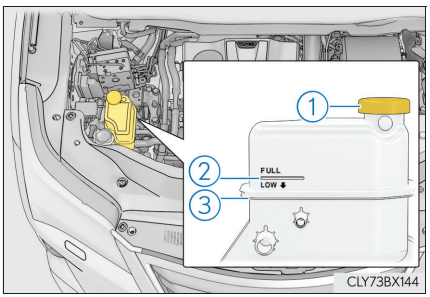
■ Intercooler coolant reservoir

① Reservoir cap

② “FULL” line

③ “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 712)



■ **Coolant selection**

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing**

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap, intercooler coolant reservoir cap and radiator cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When adding coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator

Check the radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator and clear away any foreign objects.

If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

Caution symbols

The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

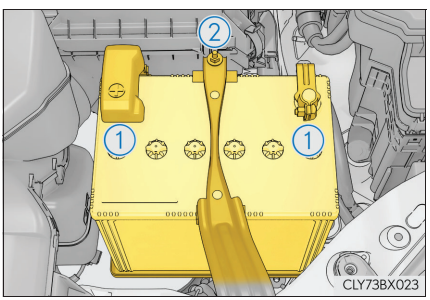
	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks		Battery acid
	Shield eyes		Note operating instructions
	Keep away from children		Explosive gas

Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

① Terminals

② Hold-down clamp



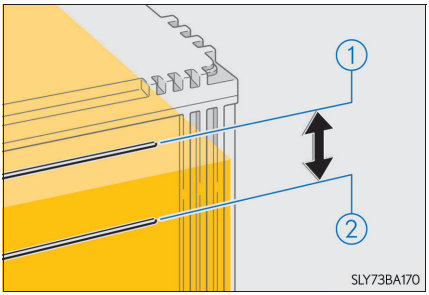
Checking battery fluid

Check that the level is between the “UPPER LEVEL” and “LOWER LEVEL” lines.

① “UPPER LEVEL” line

② “LOWER LEVEL” line

If the fluid level is at or below the “LOWER LEVEL” line, add distilled water.

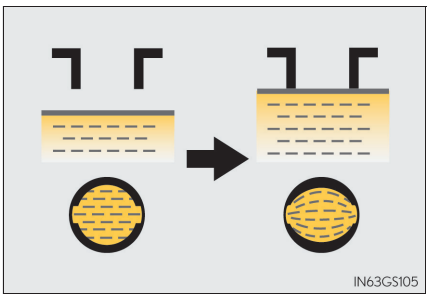


Adding distilled water

1 Remove the vent plug.

2 Add distilled water.

If the “UPPER LEVEL” line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.



3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

- The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.
  1. Shift the shift lever to P.
  2. Open and close any of the doors.
  3. Restart the engine.
- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is disconnected and reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine switch before disconnecting the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to the battery being disconnected is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at all the methods above, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

Chemicals in the battery

Battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

When there is insufficient battery fluid

Do not use if there is insufficient fluid in the battery. There is a possible danger that the battery may explode.

NOTICE

When recharging the battery

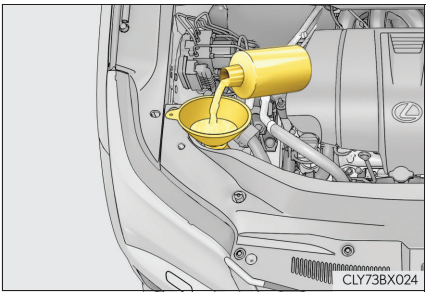
Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

When adding distilled water

Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Washer fluid

If none of the washer do not work or the "Windshield Washer Fluid Low" appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



WARNING

When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or operating as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine, etc.

NOTICE

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

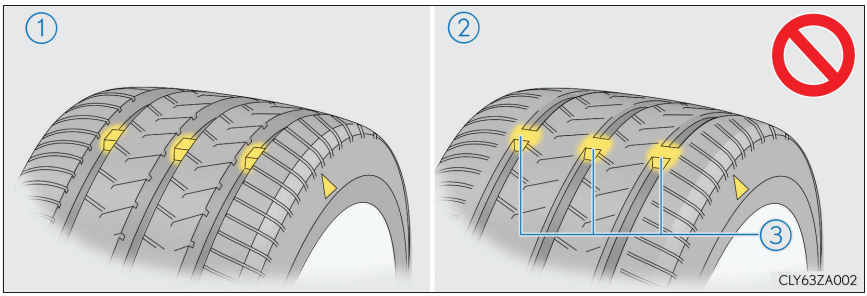
Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.

Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



① New tread

② Worn tread

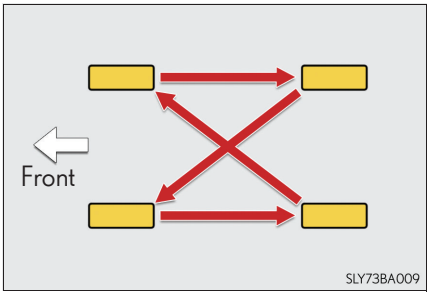
③ Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or "Δ" mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

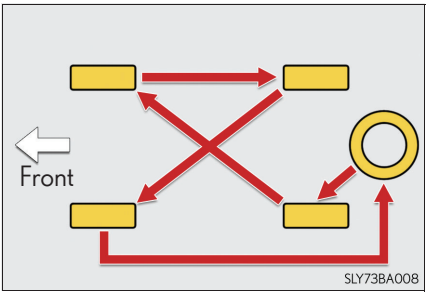
Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

Tire rotation

- Vehicles with a compact spare tire or an emergency puncture repair kit



- Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models:
Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

AWD models:
Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

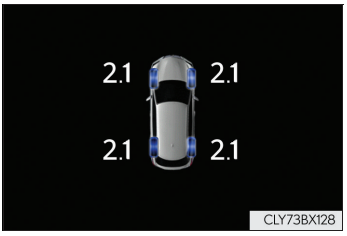
Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

Tire pressure warning system

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

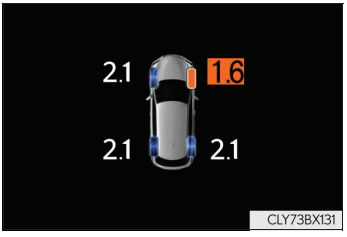
- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display.

  The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display.



- If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a screen display and a warning light. (→P. 663)

  The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display.



Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 611)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when the tire size is changed.
- When rotating the tires

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

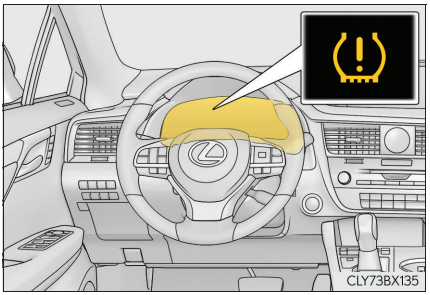
2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 731)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

4 Select  on the multi-information display. (→P. 109)

5 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switch, select the "TPMS" screen and then press and hold the ⊡ until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.



"- -" will be displayed for inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information display while the tire pressure warning system determines the position of each tire.

When position of each tire is determined, the inflation pressure of each tire will be displayed on the multi-information display.

6 Drive the vehicle at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes until the inflation pressure of each tire is displayed on the multi-information display.

If tire inflation pressure becomes low before the inflation pressure is displayed, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

Depending on the vehicle and driving conditions, initialization may take up to approximately 1 hour to complete.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

If you press the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

■ Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains, etc., are equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If wheel without the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.

- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise.
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device.

If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

■ The initialization operation

● Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure.
Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.

● If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to restart the initialization again as initialization will restart automatically when the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode for the next time.

● If you accidentally restart the initialization when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

● While the position of each tire is being determined and the inflation pressures are not being displayed on the multi-information display, if the inflation pressure of a tire drops, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system**

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ **When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization may take longer to complete if the vehicle is driven on an unpaved road. When performing initialization, drive on a paved road if possible. Depending on the driving environment and condition of the tires, initialization will be completed in approximately 10 to 30 minutes. If initialization is not complete after driving approximately 10 to 30 minutes, continue driving for a while.

If the inflation pressure of each tire is not displayed after driving for approximately 1 hour, perform the following procedure.

- Park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 20 minutes. Then drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

However, in the following situations, the tire inflation pressure will not be recorded and the system will not operate properly. Perform initialization again.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After performing initialization, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on while driving.

If the inflation pressure of each tire is still not displayed, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Certification for tire pressure warning system

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html
Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 23AAR is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 23AAR tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 23AAR in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 23AAR est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 23AAR står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 23AAR overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 23AAR in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 23AAR ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 23AAR è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 23AAR cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 23AAR está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 23AAR jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 23AAR vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 23AAR megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 23AAR spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 23AAR je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 23AAR v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 23AAR atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 23AAR atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 23AAR jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 23AAR er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 23AAR er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 23AAR е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 23AAR este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 23AAR je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 23AAR u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 23AAR u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Nepermjet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky 23AAR eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY "(DoC) is available at the following:DoC address : http://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/ CE 0891
Hereby, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declares that this PMV-C215 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa täten että PMV-C215 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dat het toestel PMV-C215 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. déclare que l'appareil PMV-C215 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. att denna PMV-C215 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framg år av direktiv 1999/5/EG
Undertegnede PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr PMV-C215 overholder de væ sentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., dass sich das Gerät PMV-C215 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigeneinschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. ΔΗΛΩ ΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ PMV-C215 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dichiara che questo PMV-C215 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que el PMV-C215 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que este PMV-C215 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposiç ões da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., jiddikjara li dan PMV-C215 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. seadme PMV-C215 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõ uetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a PMV-C215 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelmé nyeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že PMV-C215 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento PMV-C215 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími př íslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. izjavlja, da je ta PMV-C215 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določ ili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis PMV-C215 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka PMV-C215 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. oświadcza, że PMV-C215 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. yfir því að PMV-C215 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret PMV-C215 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og ø vrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., декларира, че PMV-C215 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declară că aparatul PMV-C215 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim , PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj PMV-C215 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., deklariše da je PMV-C215 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da je PMV-C215 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Me anë të kësaj, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO, LTD., Deklaron se ky PMV-C215 është në përputhje me kërkesat themelore dhe dispozitat e tjera përkatëse të direktivës 1999/5/EC.
 И 005 14

⚠ WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: Do not tow anything if a tire that has been repaired using the emergency tire puncture repair kit is installed. The load on the tire may cause unexpected damage to the tire.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not initializing tire inflation pressure without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P. 609)

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks. (→P. 731)

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.
Replacement wheels are available at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

When replacing wheels

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 609)

WARNING

When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

Use of defective wheels prohibited

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.
Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

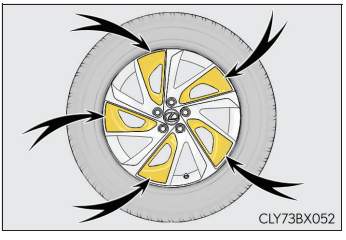
NOTICE

Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Selectable Color Trim (if equipped)

- If rattles, noise, or other problems occur while Selectable Color Trim are installed, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not remove or install Selectable Color Trim yourself, as it may be damaged. Have the Selectable Color Trim removed and installed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.



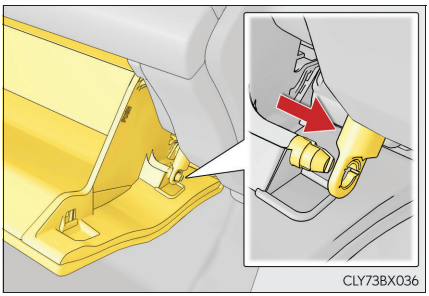
Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

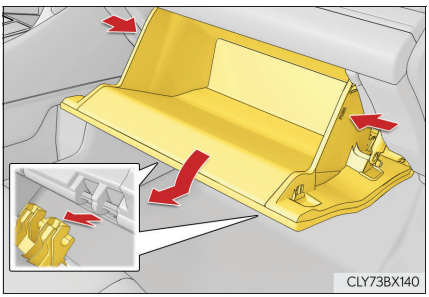
Removal method

1 Turn the engine switch off.

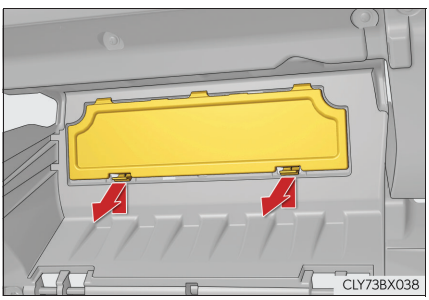
2 Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.



3 Push in the glove box on the vehicle's outer side to disconnect the claws. Then pull out the glove box and disconnect the lower claws.



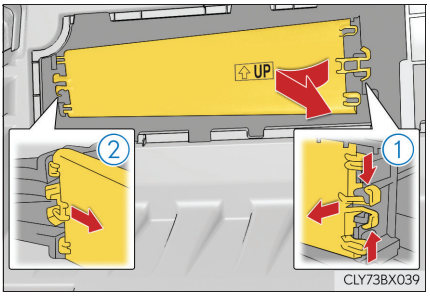
4 Remove the cover.



5 Remove the filter cover.

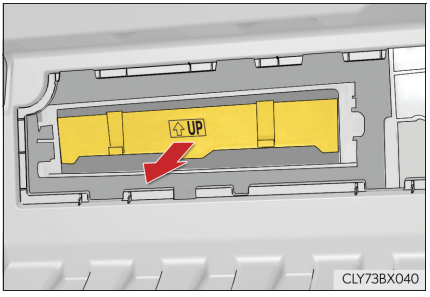
① Unlock the filter cover.

② Move the filter cover in the direction of the arrow, and then pull it out of the claws.



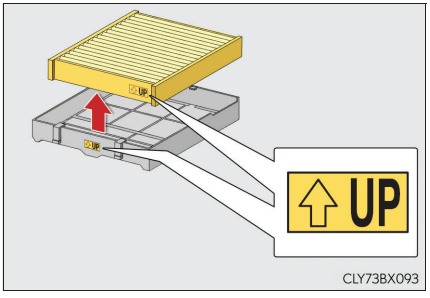
6 Remove the filter case.

There may be foreign objects on top of the air conditioning filter.



7 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.



Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Lexus Service Booklet" or "Lexus Warranty Booklet".)

If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

Air conditioning filter with deodorizing function

When fragrances are placed in your vehicle, the deodorizing effect may become significantly weakened in a short period.

When an air conditioning odor comes out continuously, replace the air conditioning filter.

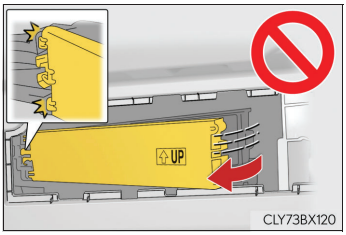
NOTICE

■ **When using the air conditioning system**

Make sure that a filter is always installed.
Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

■ **To prevent damage to the filter cover**

When moving the filter cover in the direction of arrow to release the fitting, pay attention not to apply excessive force to the claws. Otherwise, the claws may be damaged.



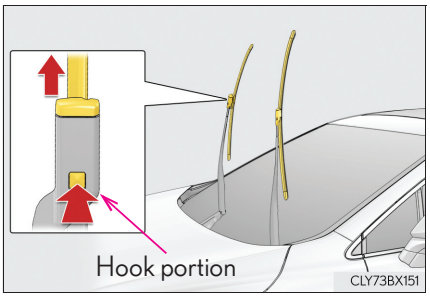
Windshield wiper inserts

Replacing a windshield wiper insert

1 Change the rest position of the windshield wipers to the service position using the wiper lever and then lift a windshield wiper. (→P. 281)

2 While pressing and holding the wiper blade lock release button, remove the wiper blade.

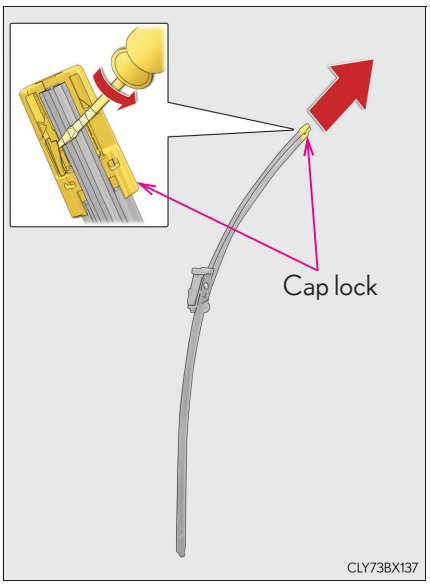
When performing this operation, make sure to hold the hook portion of the wiper arm securely.



3 While disengaging the cap lock, using a tool such as a flathead screwdriver if necessary, remove the wiper insert.

Hold the cap on the end of the wiper insert when removing the wiper insert. (The cap is integrated into the wiper insert.)

If using a screwdriver, make sure to wrap its tip with tape to protect the wiper blade.



4 Install a new wiper insert.

Make sure to push the wiper insert firmly until the cap lock is engaged.

After installation, check that the cap lock is locked securely.

5 Install the wiper blade to the wiper arm.

Make sure to push the wiper blade until it is locked.

When performing this operation, make sure to hold the hook portion of the wiper arm securely.

After installation, check that the wiper blade is locked securely.

6 After replacing the wiper inserts, place the windshield wipers on the windshield and lower them to the retracted position. (→P. 282)

Do not drive the vehicle with the windshield wipers lifted.

■ **Replacing the rear wiper insert**

Have the rear wiper insert replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Handling of the windshield wiper blades and inserts**

Improper handling of the windshield wiper blades and inserts may cause them to be damaged. If it is difficult to follow the wiper blade and insert replacement procedure precisely, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Electronic key battery

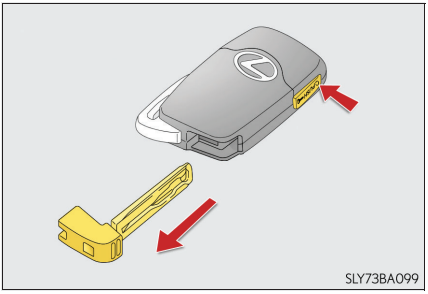
Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

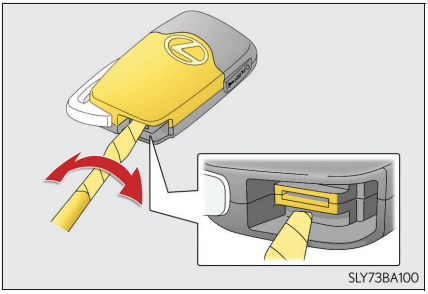
Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.

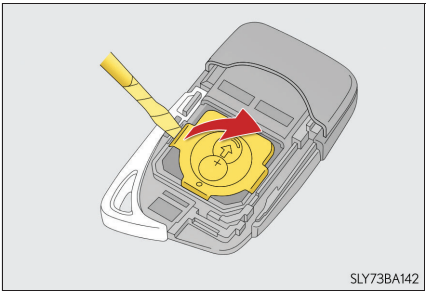

SLY73BA099

2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a tape.

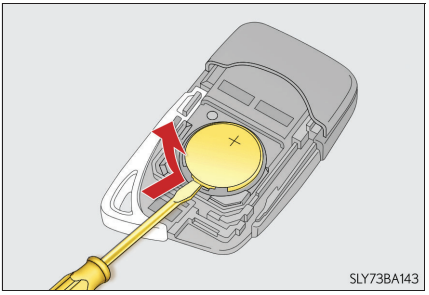

SLY73BA100

3 Remove the battery cover.


SLY73BA142

4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



■ **Use a CR2032 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ **When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)**

The battery for the card key is available only at your Lexus dealer. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

WARNING

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

■ **Certification for the smart entry & start system**

CAUTION: RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.
DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

NOTICE

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

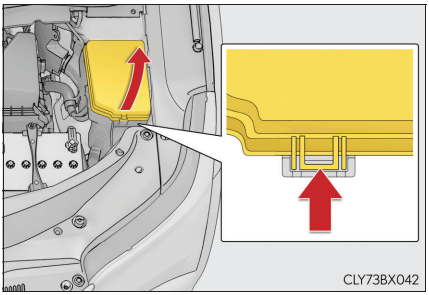
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the fuse box cover.

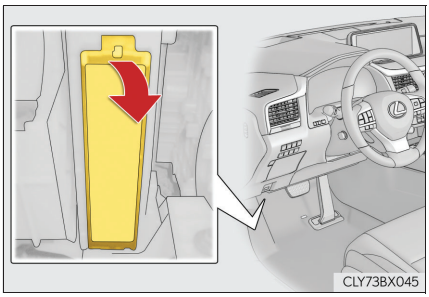
▶ Engine compartment

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



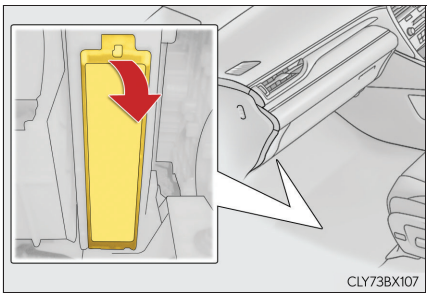
▶ Left side instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the lid.



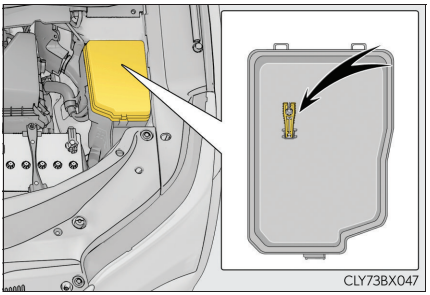
▶ Left side instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the lid.



3 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

Only some fuses can be removed using the pullout tool.



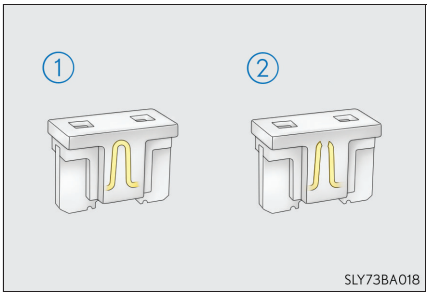
4 Check if the fuse is blown.

① Normal fuse

② Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Many types of fuse are used on this vehicle. This illustration shows a common type of fuse used on this vehicle.



■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 637)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If there is an overload in a circuit**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ **When replacing light bulbs**

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Preparing for light bulb replacement

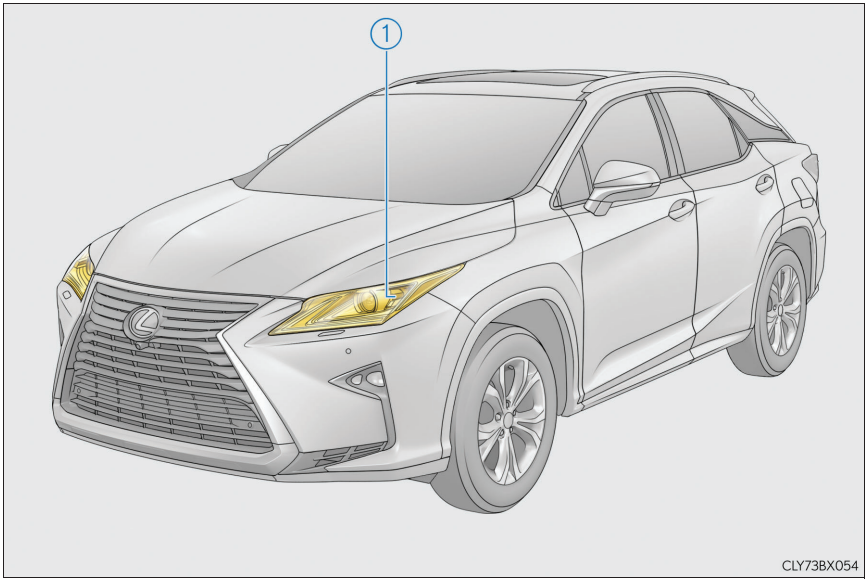
Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P. 732)

Canceling the power back door system

→P. 155

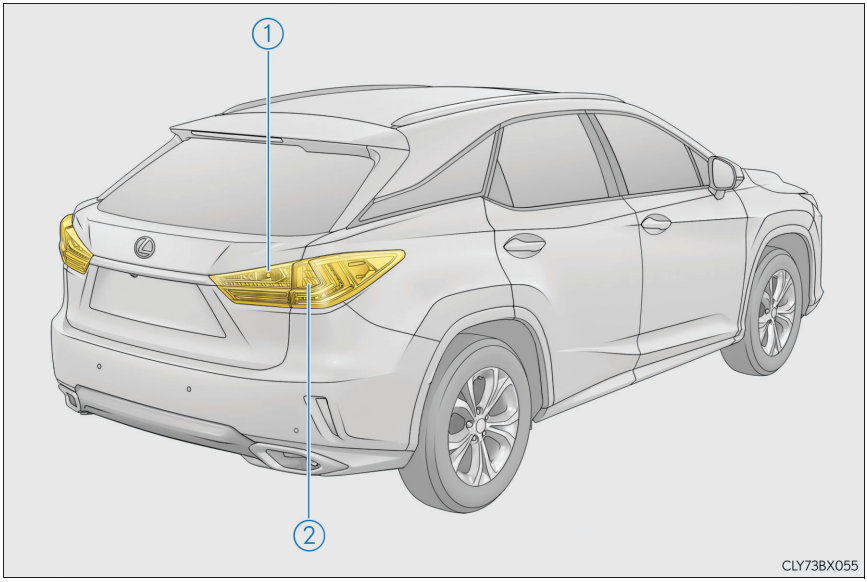
Bulb locations

Front



① Front turn signal light (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

■ Rear



① Back-up light

② Rear turn signal light (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

Replacing light bulbs

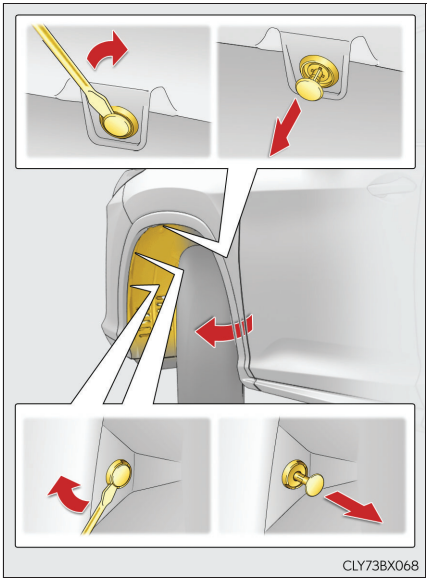
■ Front turn signal lights (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

1 To ensure enough space to perform work, turn the steering wheel to rotate the front wheel away from the bulb to be replaced.

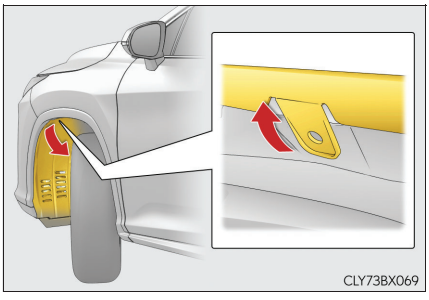
Remove the 3 fender liner clips.

Turn the steering wheel to the left when replacing the right side light bulb, and turn the steering wheel to the right when replacing the left side light bulb.

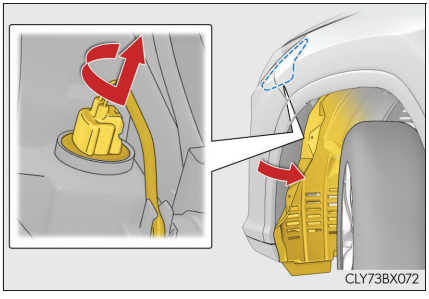
When removing a fender liner clip, use a flathead screwdriver to pry the center portion out and then remove the whole clip.


CLY73BX068

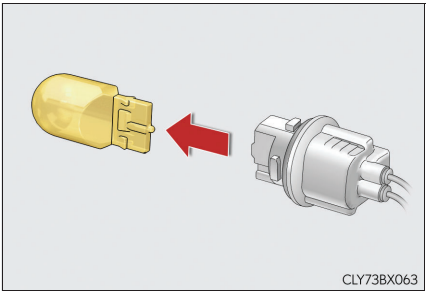
2 Pull back the fender liner until the connector is visible.


CLY73BX069

3 Partially remove the fender liner and turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.

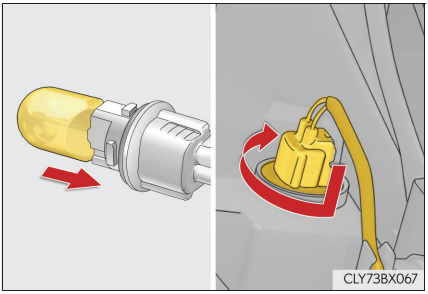

CLY73BX072

4 Remove the light bulb.

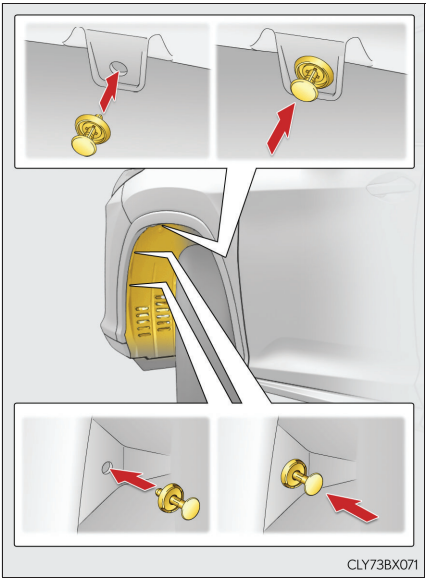


5 Install a new light bulb and then install the bulb base to the light unit by inserting it and turning it clockwise.

After installing the bulb base, wiggle it lightly to make sure it is securely installed and turn on the turn signal lights to visually check that there is no light leaking from between the bulb base and light unit.



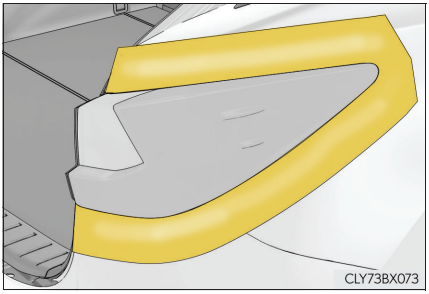
6 Reinstall the fender liner and install the 3 fender liner clips.



■ Rear turn signal lights (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

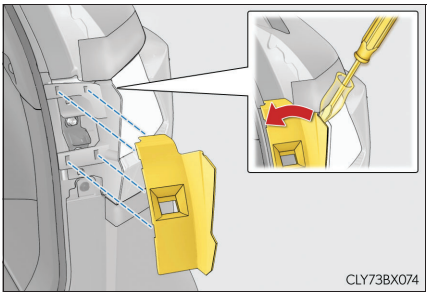
1 Open the back door and apply protective tape to the vehicle body around the taillight.

Use masking tape, etc. Do not use duct tape, as it may leave residue or damage the paint when removed.

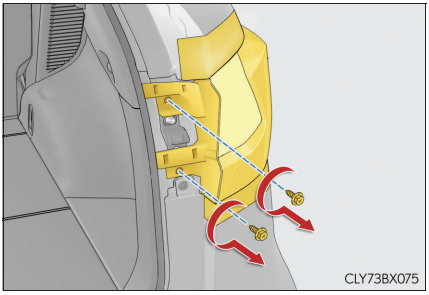


2 Using a flathead screwdriver, remove the cover.

To prevent scratching the vehicle, wrap the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a cloth, etc.



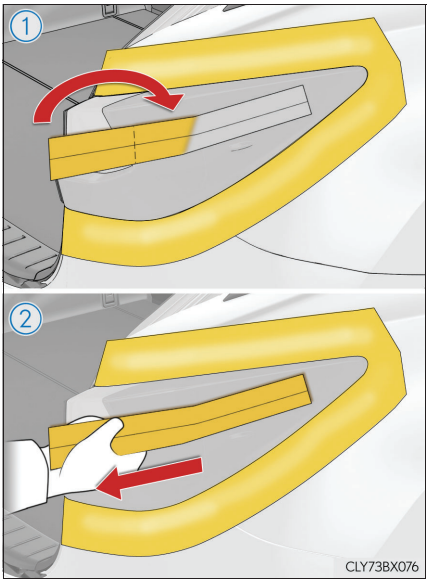
3 Remove the 2 screws.



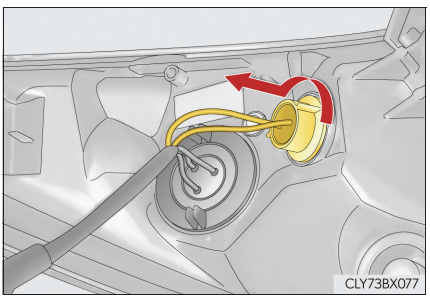
4 Remove the taillight unit.

① Attach 2 long pieces of masking tape to the taillight unit and fold the excess in half.

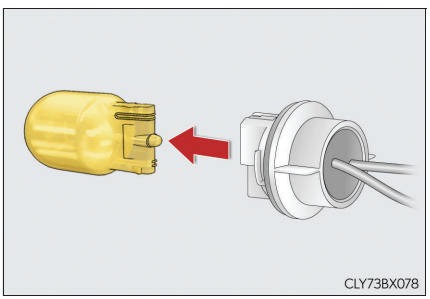
② Hold the folded portion and pull it toward the rear of the vehicle to remove the light unit.



5 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.

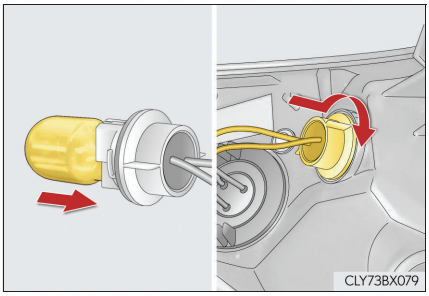


6 Remove the light bulb.



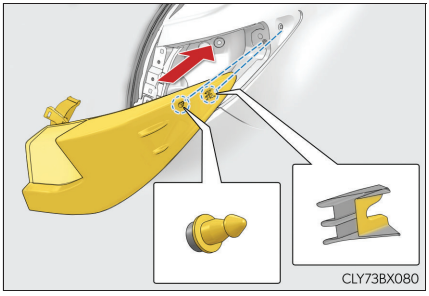
7 Install a new light bulb and then install the bulb base to the light unit by inserting it and turning it clockwise.

After installing the bulb base, wiggle it lightly to make sure it is securely installed and turn on the rear turn signal lights to visually check that there is no light leaking from between the bulb base and light unit.

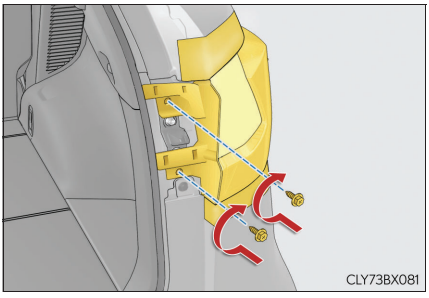


8 Install the light unit.

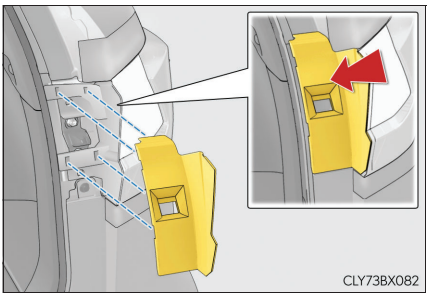
Align the tabs and push the light unit toward the front of the vehicle to install it.



9 Install the 2 screws.



10 Install the cover.



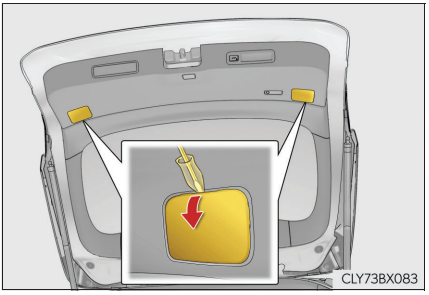
11 Remove the protective tape.

Back-up lights

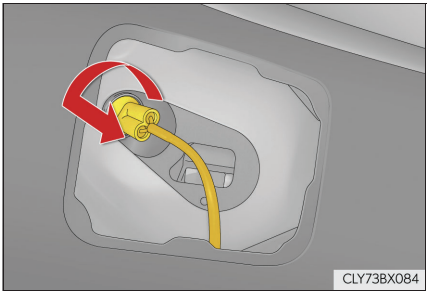
1 Open the back door and remove the cover.

Using a flathead screwdriver, remove the cover.

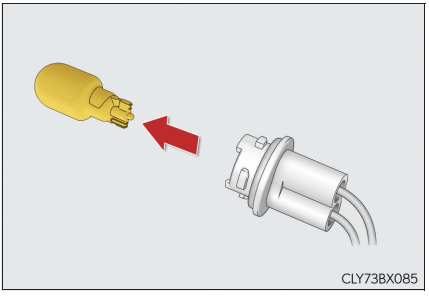
To prevent scratching to the vehicle, wrap the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a cloth, etc.



2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.

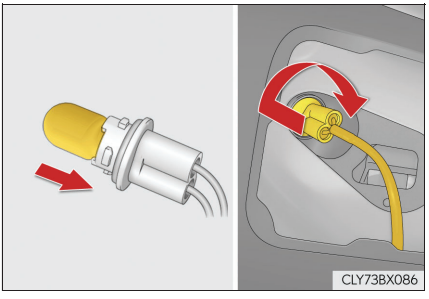


3 Remove the light bulb.



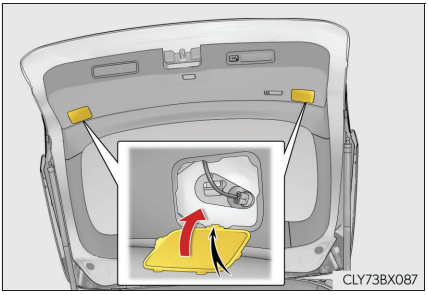
4 Install a new light bulb and then install the bulb base to the light unit by inserting it and turning it clockwise.

After installing the bulb base, wiggle it lightly to make sure it is securely installed and turn on the back-up lights to visually check that there is no light leaking from between the bulb base and light unit.



5 Install the cover.

Align the tabs of the cover with the grooves and install the cover.



Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Headlight low beams
- Headlight high beams
- Front turn signal lights (vehicles with triple-beam headlights)
- Front position lights and daytime running lights
- Front fog lights
- Cornering lights (if equipped)
- Rear fog lights
- Rear turn signal light (vehicles with triple-beam headlights)
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop/tail lights
- Rear side marker lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights
- Outer foot lights

■ LED lights

The headlight low beams, headlight high beams, front turn signal lights (vehicles with triple-beam headlights), front position lights and daytime running lights, front fog lights, cornering lights (if equipped), rear fog lights, rear turn signal light (vehicles with triple-beam headlights), side turn signal lights, stop/tail lights, rear side marker lights, high mounted stoplight, license plate lights, and outer foot lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs has burned out, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional to have the light replaced.

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of a lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of a lens.
- Water has built up inside a headlight.

■ When replacing light bulbs

→P. 636

⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent injury

Before performing any light bulb replacement procedure, be sure to turn the engine switch off. Failure to do so may result in burns from hot components or a part of your body may get caught on an operating component, possibly causing serious injury.

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble the light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts.
  Doing so may result in death or serious injury due to electric shock.

■ To prevent damage or fire

- Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.
- Check the wattage of the bulb before installing to prevent heat damage.

When trouble arises 8

8-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers..... 650

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 651

8-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed..... 652

If you think something is wrong..... 658

Fuel pump shut off system..... 659

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds..... 660

If a warning message is displayed..... 667

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)..... 673

If you have a flat tire (vehicles without a spare tire)..... 687

If the engine will not start..... 701

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P..... 703

If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 704

If the vehicle battery is discharged..... 708

If your vehicle overheats..... 712

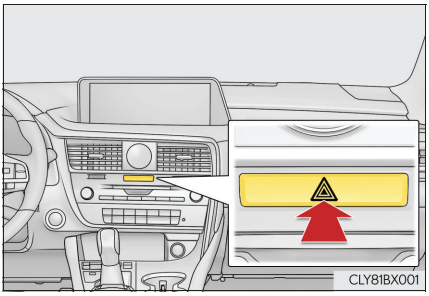
If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 716

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.



Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

CLY81BX003

5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

WARNING

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

2WD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck from the front, the vehicle's rear wheels and axles must be in good conditions. (→P. 653, 656) If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

AWD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck, use a towing dolly. (→P. 653, 656)

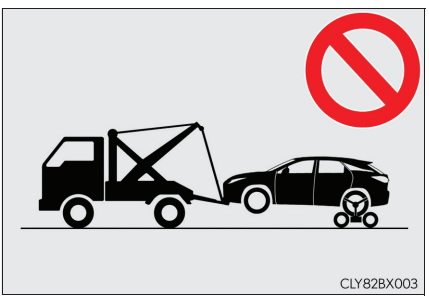
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

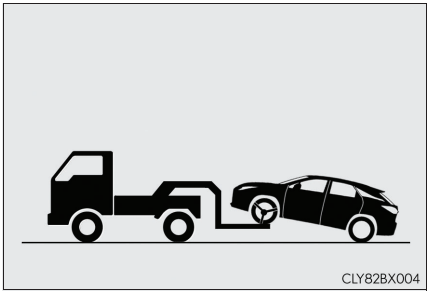
Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.



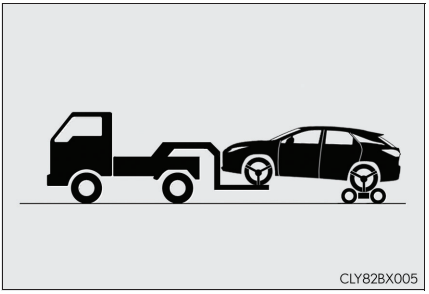
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front (2WD models)



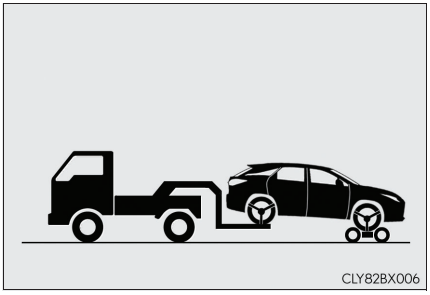
Release the parking brake.

▶ From the front (AWD models)



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

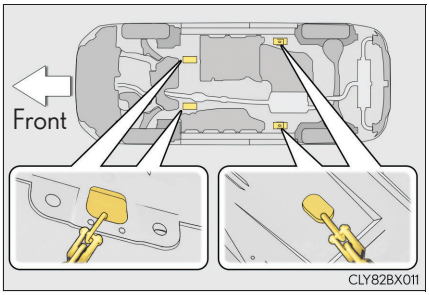
▶ From the rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

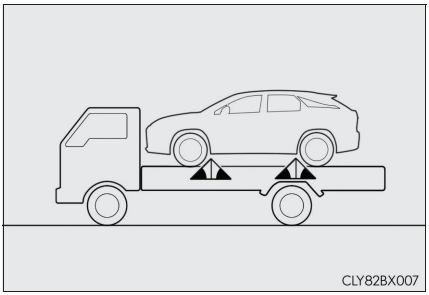
Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.



Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph).

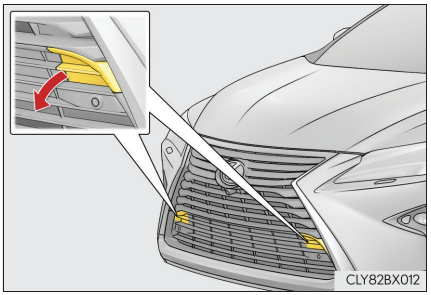
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing procedure

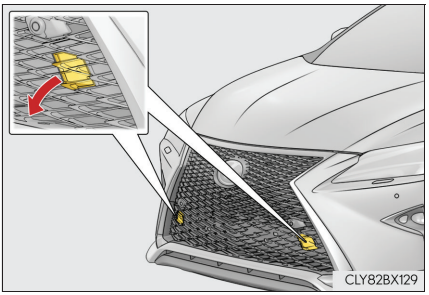
1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P. 674, 688)

2 Remove the eyelet cover.

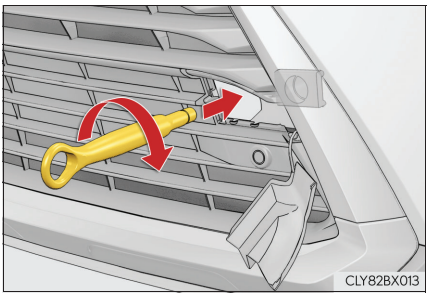
▶ Except F SPORT models



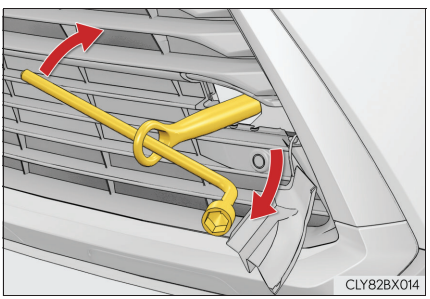
▶ F SPORT models



3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench or hard metal bar.



5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.
Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.
If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

7 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.
When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P. 703

■ **While towing**

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ **Wheel nut wrench**

Wheel nut wrench is installed in luggage compartment. (→P. 674, 688)

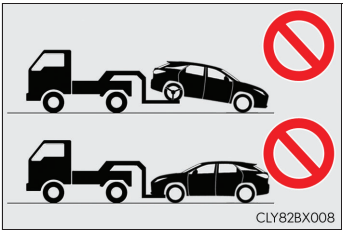
⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When towing the vehicle**

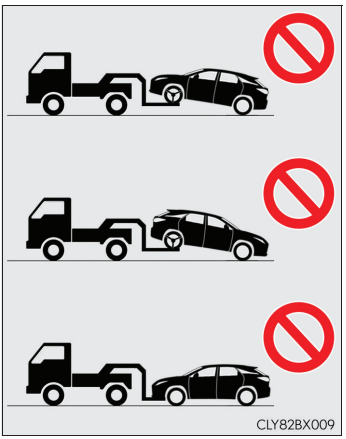
▶ 2WD models

Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.


CLY82BX008

▶ AWD models

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck.


CLY82BX009

WARNING

■ **While towing**

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the engine switch off.
  There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ **Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**

Make sure that towing eyelets is installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck**

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the power switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ **To prevent body damage to the vehicle towing with a sling-type truck**

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing**

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

■ **When towing a vehicle equipped with the Stop & Start system (RX200t)**

When it is necessary to tow the vehicle with all 4 wheels contacting the ground, perform the following procedure before towing the vehicle to protect the system.
Turn the engine switch off once, and then start the engine. If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning light and warning buzzer list

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Brake system warning light** Indicates that: • The brake fluid level is low; or • The brake system is malfunctioning → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**
	**Brake system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (If equipped)	**Charging system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**
	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic automatic transmission control system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**SRS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**ABS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (Flashes)	**Parking brake indicator** It is possible that the parking brake is not fully engaged or released → **Operate the parking brake switch once again.** This light comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.
 (Flashes)	**Brake hold operated indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)** Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (If equipped)	**LKA indicator/LDA indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)/LDA Lane Departure Alert with steering control) → **When "Lane Keeping Assist Unavailable" or "Lane Departure Alert Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display, turn the LKA/LDA system off, drive the vehicle for a short time, and then turn the LKA/LDA system back on. (→P. 316, 325)** **When a message other than above is displayed, follow the instructions displayed in the message.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Slip indicator** When the warning light is illuminated: Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC system; • The TRC system; • The Trailer Sway Control; or • The hill-start assist control system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.** When the warning light flashes: Indicates that the VSC, TRC or Trailer Sway Control system is operating
 (If equipped)	**PCS warning light** When the warning light flashes (and a buzzer sounds): Indicates a malfunction in the PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.** When the warning light flashes (and a buzzer does not sound): Indicates that the PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to either of the following: • An area around the radar sensor or camera sensor being dirty, fogged up or covered with condensation, ice, stickers, etc. → **Clear the dirt, fog, condensation, ice, stickers, etc.** **(→P. 292, 293)** • Radar sensor or camera sensor temperature being outside of its operational range → **Wait for a while until the area around the front sensor has cooled down sufficiently.** When the warning light is illuminated: Either the VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system or PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) is disabled or both are disabled. → **To enable the PCS, enable both the VSC system and PCS.** **(→P. 302, 423)**
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Stop & Start cancel indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the Stop & Start system (The Stop & Start cancel indicator will come on when the system is canceled.: →P. 367) → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**Low fuel level warning light** Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 10.8 L (2.8 gal., 2.3 Imp. gal.) or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*** Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**
 (If equipped)	**Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*** Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.**
	**Tire pressure warning light** Indicates the following: • Low tire pressure due to flat tire; • Low tire pressure due to natural causes; or • The tire pressure warning system is malfunctioning → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place.** **Handling method (→P. 664)**
	**Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → P. 667

*: Seat belt warning buzzer:
The seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver, front passenger and rear passengers (if equipped) that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Inspect the tires to check if a tire is punctured.

If a tire is punctured: →P. 673, 687

If none of the tires are punctured:
Turn the engine switch off then turn it to IGNITION ON mode. Check if the tire pressure warning light comes on or blinks.

▶ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

1 After the temperature of the tires has lowered sufficiently, check the inflation pressure of each tire and adjust them to the specified level.

2 If the warning light does not turn off even after several minutes have elapsed, check that the inflation pressure of each tire is at the specified level and perform initialization. (→P. 610)

If the warning light does not turn off several minutes after the initialization has been performed, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

▶ If the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on

There may be a malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire**

Vehicles with a compact spare tire: The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: The spare tire is also equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly**

→P. 612

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

⚠ WARNING

■ **If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on**

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted. When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy. When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

WARNING

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- Vehicles with a spare tire: If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, repair the flat tire by using emergency tire puncture repair kit.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

NOTICE

■ To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

▶ Except F SPORT models



▶ F SPORT models



① Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

② Multi-information display

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the following actions have been performed, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

If a message instructing to refer to the Owner's Manual is displayed

- If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction.
  Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.
  - "Braking Power Low Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual"
  - "Oil Pressure Low Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual"
  - "Charging System Malfunction See Owner's Manual"
- If the following message is shown, there may be a malfunction.
  Immediately have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual"
- If "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown, following the instructions, accordingly. (→P. 712)
- If "Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" is shown, the automatic transmission fluid temperature may be too high.
  Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to P with the engine running and wait until the message is cleared.
  If the message is not cleared, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Other messages displayed on the multi-information display

Take the appropriate actions as instructed in the message displayed.

If any of the following messages are displayed, also refer to this Owner's Manual.

If "Shift to P Before Exiting Vehicle" is shown

Message is displayed when the driver's door is opened without turning the engine switch off with the shift lever in any position other than P.
Shift the shift lever to P.

If "Power Turned Off to Save Battery" is displayed

This message is displayed when the power was cut off due to the automatic power off function.

The next time the engine is started, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain it at that speed for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.

If "AWD System Overheated Switching to 2WD Mode" or "AWD System Overheated 2WD Mode Engaged" is displayed (AWD models)

This message may be displayed when driving under extremely high load conditions.
Drive the vehicle at low speeds or stop the vehicle in a safe place with the engine running until the message is cleared.
If the message is not cleared, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If "A New Key has been Registered Contact Your Dealer for Details" is displayed

This message will be displayed each time the driver's door is opened when the doors are unlocked from the outside for approximately one week after a new electronic key has been registered.

If this message is displayed but you have not had a new electronic key registered, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. to check if an unknown electronic key (other than those in your possession) has been registered.

■ **When "Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed**

The following systems may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

- The LED headlight system
- The automatic headlight leveling system
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)

■ **If "Forward Camera System Unavailable" or "Forward Camera System Unavailable Clean Windshield" is displayed (if equipped)**

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved.

- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range
- Dynamic radar cruise control
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)
- Automatic High Beam
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)

■ **If "Oil Maintenance Required Soon" is shown**

Indicates that the engine oil is scheduled to be changed. (The indicator will not work properly unless the message has been reset.)
Check the engine oil, and change if necessary. After changing the engine oil, the message should be reset. (→P. 598)

■ **If "Oil Maintenance Required" is shown**

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed. (After the engine oil is changed and the message has been reset.)
Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. After changing the engine oil, the message should be reset. (→P. 598)

■ **System warning lights**

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on along with a message shown on the multi-information display.

- "Antilock Brake System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer":
  The ABS warning light comes on. (→P. 661)
- "Charging System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" (F SPORT models):
  The charging system warning light comes on. (→P. 660)

■ **Warning buzzer**

→P. 665

⚠ NOTICE

■ **"High Power Consumption Partial Limit On AC/Heater Operation" is frequently shown**

There is a possible malfunction relating to the charging system or the battery may be deteriorating. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.
For details about tires: →P. 606

⚠ WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

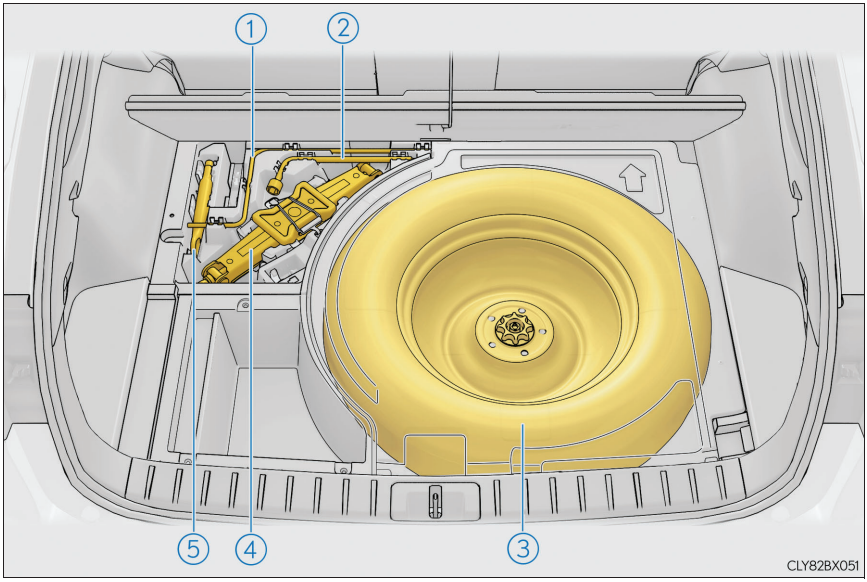
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 650)

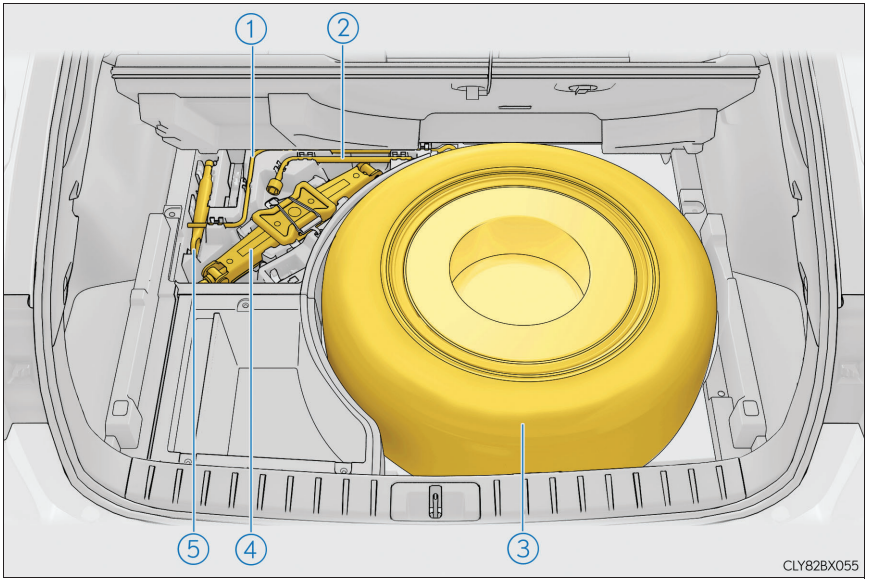
Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



① Jack handle
② Wheel nut wrench
③ Spare tire
④ Jack
⑤ Towing eyelet

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



① Jack handle
② Wheel nut wrench
③ Spare tire
④ Jack
⑤ Towing eyelet

WARNING

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions.
Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

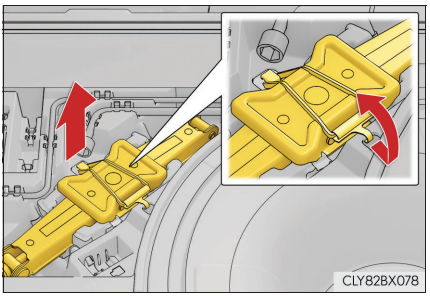
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire.
  Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

Taking out the jack

1 Secure the deck board using the hook. (→P. 563)

2 Disengage the hook and take out the jack.

Remove the wheel nut wrench and then the jack.

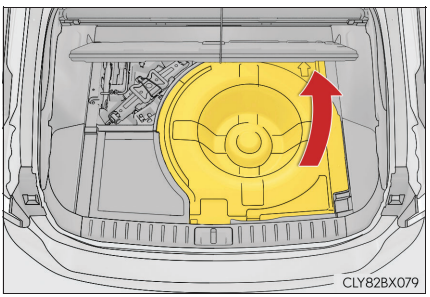


Taking out the spare tire

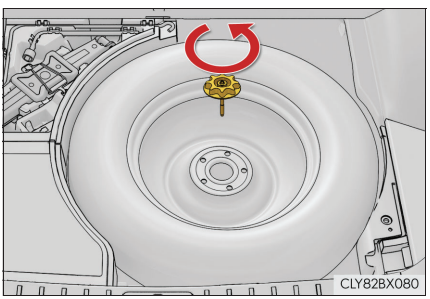
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

1 Secure the deck board using the hook. (→P. 563)

2 Remove the spare tire cover.



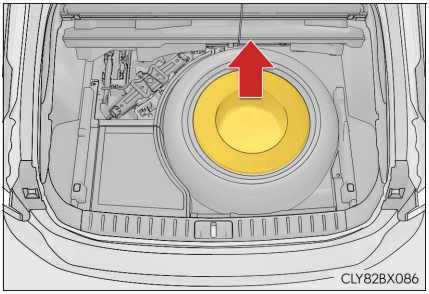
3 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

1 Secure the deck board using the hook. (→P. 563)

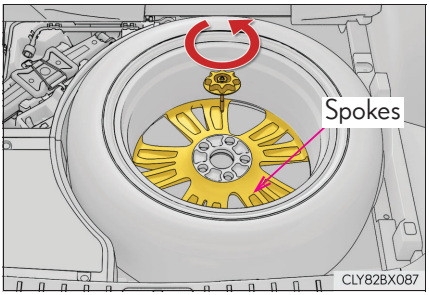
2 Remove the spare tire cover.



3 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

When taking out the spare tire, wear working gloves, firmly hold the spokes, and take out the tire with the proper posture.

With Selectable Color Trim: Hold the spare tire by the metal portion of the wheel (not the Selectable Color Trim). (→P. 681)



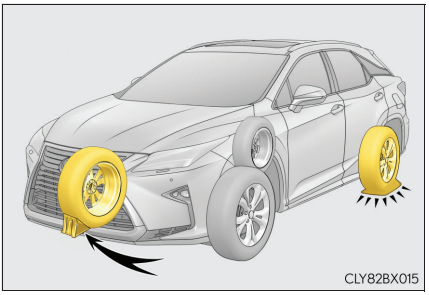
⚠ WARNING

■ When storing the spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

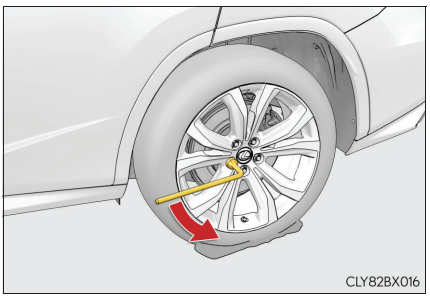
Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.


CLY82BX015

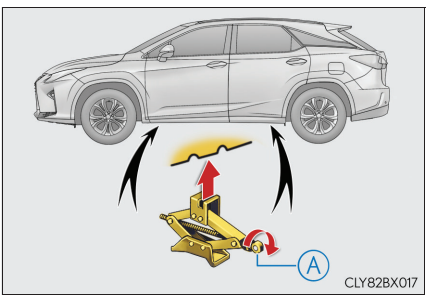
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).


CLY82BX016

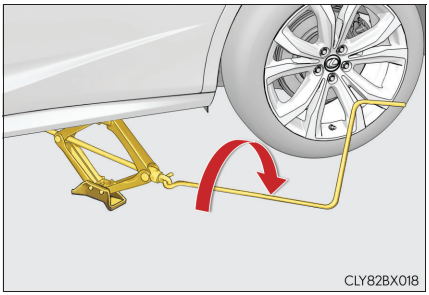
3 Turn the tire jack portion Ⓐ by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.



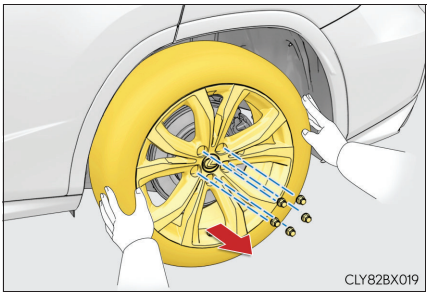
CLY82BX017

4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

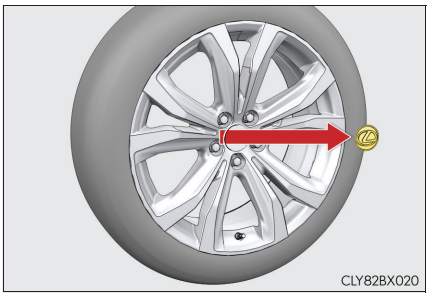


5 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



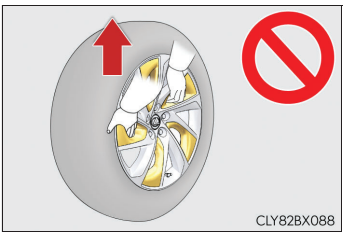
6 Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: Remove the wheel ornament by pushing from the reverse side.



WARNING

When holding a tire with Selectable Color Trim (if equipped)

Do not hold the tire by the Selectable Color Trim. Otherwise, the Selectable Color Trim may be damaged or may fall off causing the tire to drop, possibly causing injury.



Replacing a flat tire

- Observe the following precautions.
  Failure to do so may result in serious injury:
  - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
  - Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
    After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc., may result in burns.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
    Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident.
    Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
  - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
  - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.

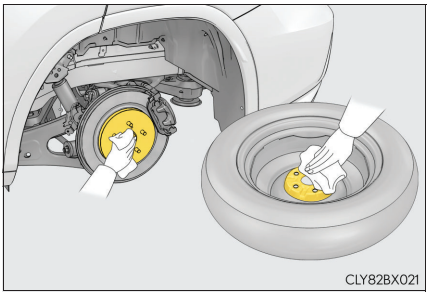
Replacing a flat tire for vehicles with power back door

In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to canceling the power back door system (→P. 114). Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

Installing the spare tire

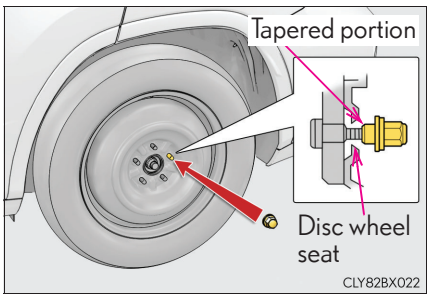
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.


CLY82BX021

2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

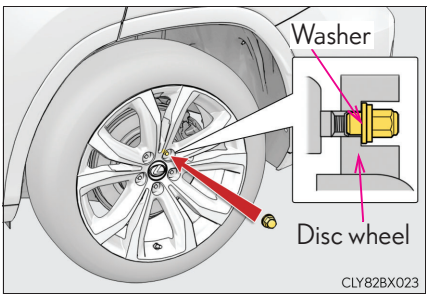
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



CLY82BX022

Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.

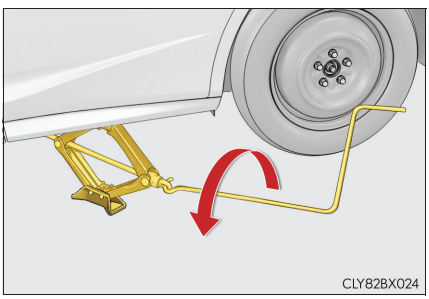
▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



CLY82BX023

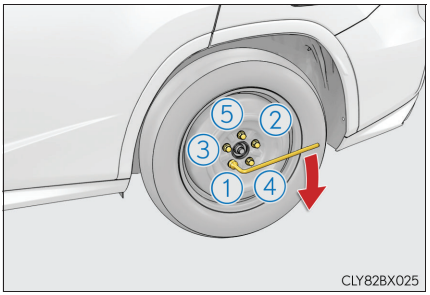
Turn the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the disc wheel.

3 Lower the vehicle.

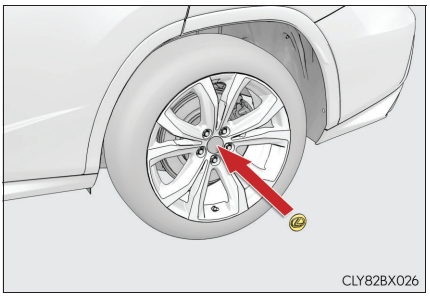

CLY82BX024

4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf)



5 Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: Reinstall the wheel ornament.



6 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ **The compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 731)

■ **When using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

■ **When the compact spare tire is equipped (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

When driving with the compact spare tire installed, the vehicle height will be different than when driving with standard tires.

■ **If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

1 Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.
2 Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.
3 Fit tire chains to the front tires.

Certification for the jack

EC Declaration of Conformity

We, WAKO INDUSTRY CO., LTD. , 1823 Shinmachi Takasaki Gumma 370-1301 Japan, hereby declare that the machine described below.
This declaration shall cease to be valid if modifications, that includes disassemble and re-built, are made to the product. If usage is other than specific model of vehicle this declaration shall cease also.

Product:	Portable Screw Jacks for Automobiles
Model:	Jack Sub-assy, Pantograph, applied to the specific vehicle
Part Number:	09111-48020

Applicable EU directives covered by this declaration is the Machinery Directive 89/392/EEC. The products identified above complies with the requirements of the Machinery above by applied standard is "JIS D8103-2006". It is ensured through internal measures that production units confirm at all times to requirement of current EC Directives and relevant standards.
A sample of the products has been tested by our quality assurance department.

Signed by: Tamotsu Sekiguchi
Tamotsu Sekiguchi
General Manager, Quality Assurance

Date of Issue: 2015. 04. 17

WARNING

When using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

When the compact spare tire is attached (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- Trailer Sway Control
- EPS
- VDIM (if equipped)
- Adaptive Variable Suspension System (if equipped)
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)
- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) (if equipped)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (if equipped)
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Tire pressure warning system
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist monitor (if equipped)
- Panoramic view monitor (if equipped)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)
- Navigation system (if equipped)

Also, not only can the following system not be utilized fully, but it may even negatively affect the drive-train components:

- AWD system (AWD models)

Speed limit when using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ **Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

When driving with the compact spare tire installed, the vehicle height will be different than when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces, etc.

■ **Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.
Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ **When replacing the tires**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

If you have a flat tire (vehicles without a spare tire)

Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead is equipped with an emergency tire puncture repair kit.
A puncture caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

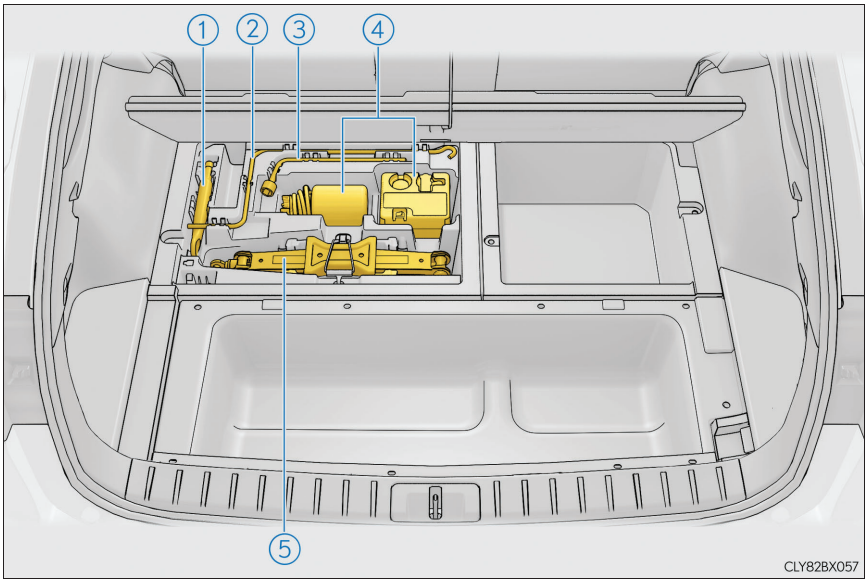
Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before repairing the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 650)

Location of the emergency tire puncture repair kit, jack and tools



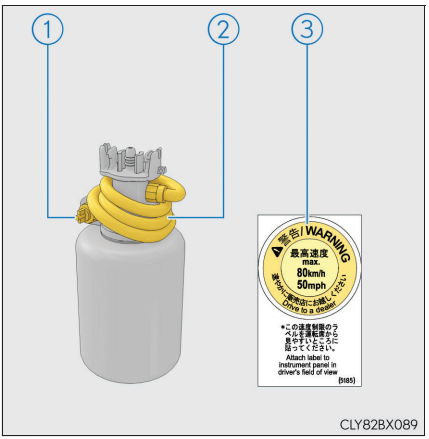
1. Towing eyelet
2. Jack handle
3. Wheel nut wrench
4. Emergency tire puncture repair kit
5. Jack*

*: Use of the jack (→P. 676, 677)

Emergency tire puncture repair kit components

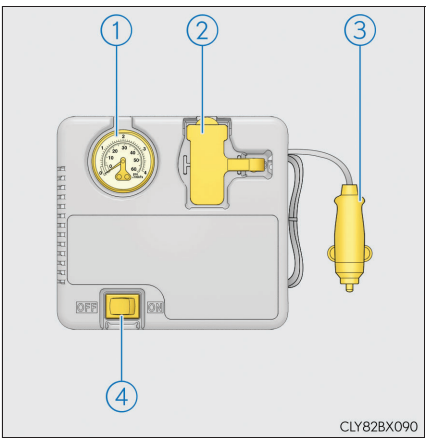
Bottle

① Air release cap
② Hose
③ Sticker



Compressor

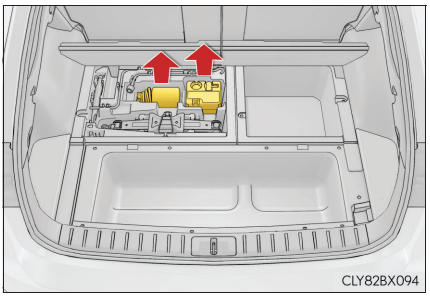
① Air pressure gauge
② Rubber stopper
③ Power plug
④ Compressor switch



Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kit

1 Secure the deck board using the hook. (→P. 563)

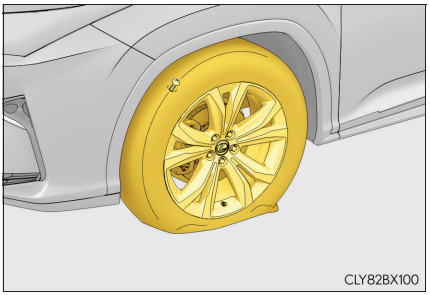
2 Take out the emergency tire puncture repair kit.


CLY82BX094

Before performing emergency repair

Check the degree of the tire damage.

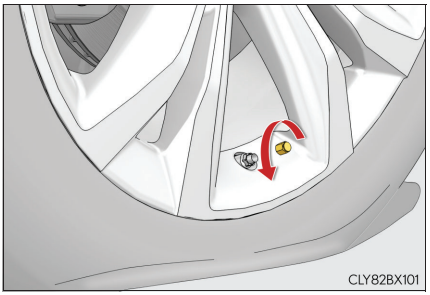
A tire should only be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit if the damage is caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread.


CLY82BX100

- Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and disenable emergency repair with the kit.
- To avoid sealant leakage, move the vehicle until the area of the puncture, if known, is positioned at the top of the tire.

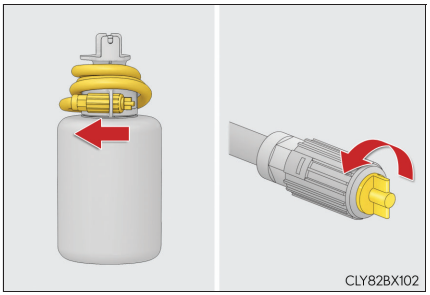
Emergency repair method

1 Remove the valve cap from the valve of the punctured tire.



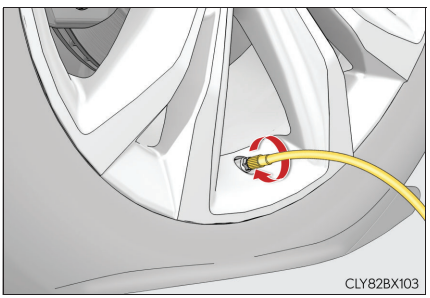
2 Extend the hose. Remove the air release cap from the hose.

You will use the air release cap again. Therefore keep it in a safe place.

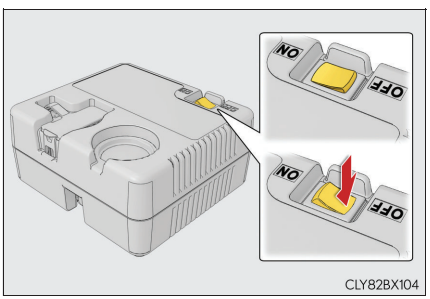


3 Connect the hose to the valve.

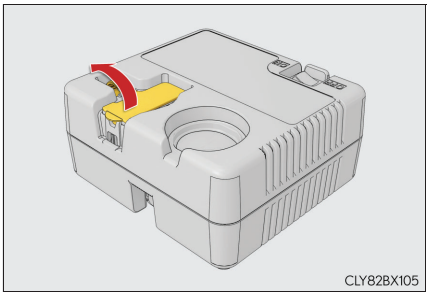
Screw the end of hose clockwise as far as possible.



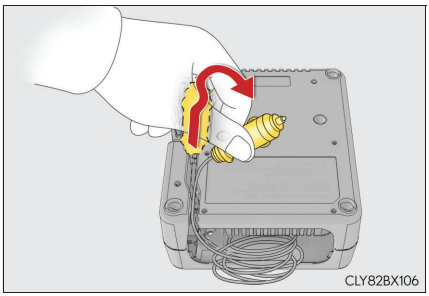
4 Make sure that the compressor switch is off.



5 Lift the rubber stopper on the compressor.


CLY82BX105

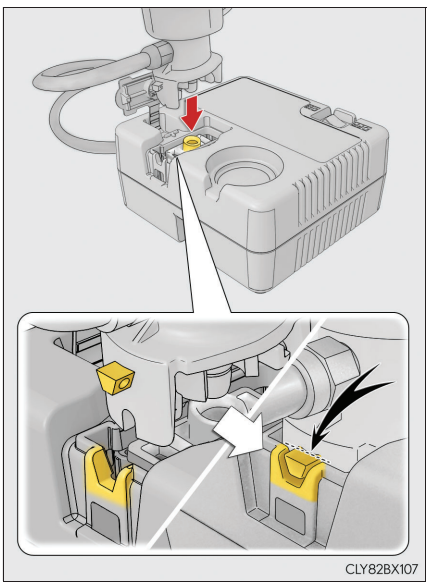
6 Remove the power plug from the compressor.


CLY82BX106

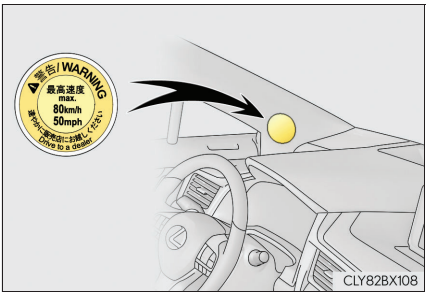
7 Connect the power plug to the power outlet socket. (→P. 572)

8 Connect the bottle to the compressor.

Make sure that the bottle is securely connected.


CLY82BX107

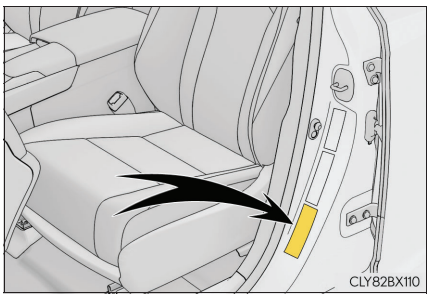
9 Attach the sticker as shown.



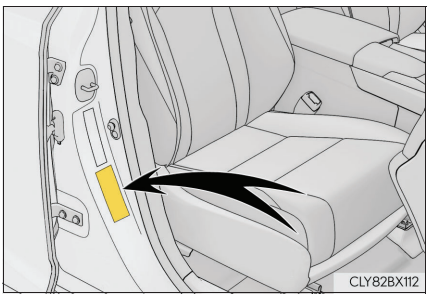
10 Check the specified tire inflation pressure.

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label as shown. (→P. 731)

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

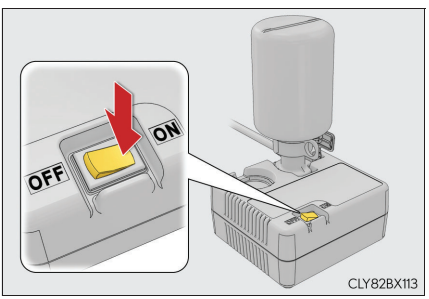


▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



11 Start the engine. (→P. 245)

12 To inject the sealant and inflate the tire, turn the compressor switch on.

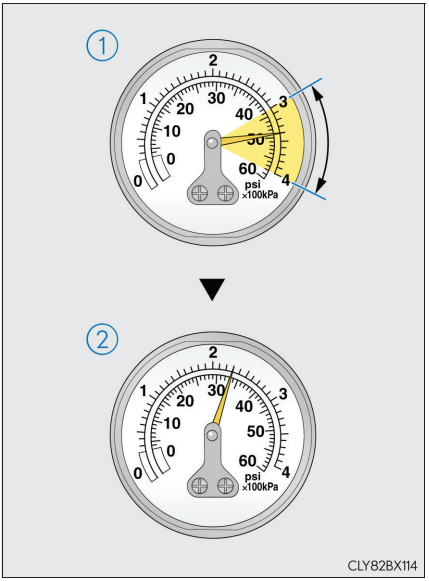


13 Inflate the tire until the recommended pressure is reached.

① The sealant will be injected and the pressure will spike to between 300 kPa (3.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 44 psi) and 400 kPa (4.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 58 psi), then gradually decrease.

② The air pressure gauge will display the actual tire inflation pressure about 1 to 5 minutes after the switch is turned on.

- Turn the compressor switch off and then check the tire inflation pressure. Being careful not to over inflate, check and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached.



- If the tire inflation pressure is still lower than the recommended level after inflation for 25 minutes with the switch on, the tire is too damaged to be repaired. Turn the compressor switch off and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- If the tire inflation pressure exceeds the recommended level, let out some air to adjust the tire inflation pressure. (→P. 697)

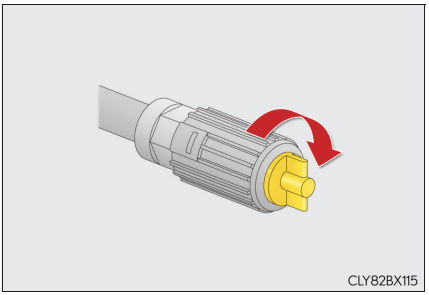
14 With the compressor switch off, disconnect the hose from the valve on the tire and then pull out the power plug from the power outlet socket.

Some sealant may leak when the hose is removed.

15 Install the valve cap onto the valve of the emergency repaired tire.

16 Attach the air release cap to the end of the hose.

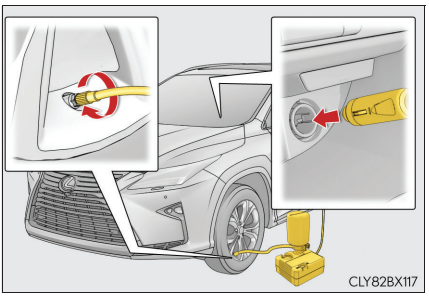
If the air release cap is not attached, the sealant may leak and the vehicle may get dirty.


CLY82BX115

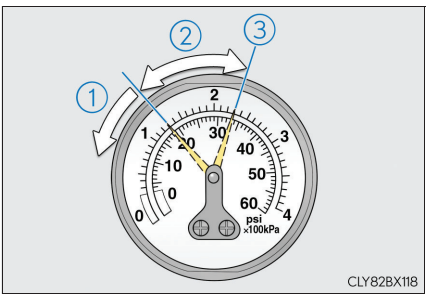
17 Temporarily store the bottle in the luggage compartment while it is connected to the compressor.

18 To spread the liquid sealant evenly within the tire, immediately drive safety for about 5 km (3 miles) below 80 km/h (50 mph).

19 After driving, stop your vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface and reconnect the compressor.


CLY82BX117

20 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check the tire inflation pressure.



CLY82BX118

① If the tire inflation pressure is below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi): The puncture cannot be repaired. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

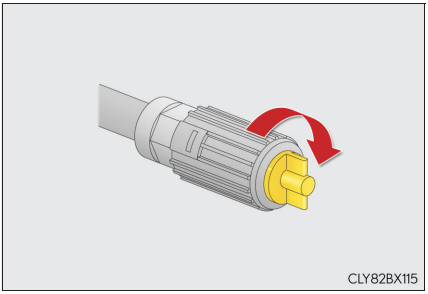
② If the tire inflation pressure is between 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) and a point below the recommended level: The tire can be repaired. Proceed to step 21.

③ If the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level: Proceed to step 22.

21 Turn the compressor switch on to inflate the tire until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached. Drive for about 5 km (3 miles) and then perform step 19.

22 Attach the air release cap to the end of the hose.

If the air release cap is not attached, the sealant may leak and the vehicle may get dirty.



23 Store the bottle in the luggage compartment while it is connected to the compressor.

24 Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking, sudden acceleration and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 80 km/h (50 mph) to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional that is less than 100 km (62 miles) away for tire repair or replacement.

Make sure to tell any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional when you have them repair or replace the tire that sealant is injected.

■ **In the following cases, the tire cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**

- When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient air pressure
- When the tire lost air pressure due to a crack or damage in the tire sidewall
- When the tire is visibly separated from the wheel
- When the cut or damage to the tread is 4 mm (0.16 in.) long or more
- When the wheel is damaged
- When 2 or more sharp objects, such as nails or screws, have passed through the tread on a single tire
- When there is more than one hole or cut in the damaged tire
- When the sealant has expired

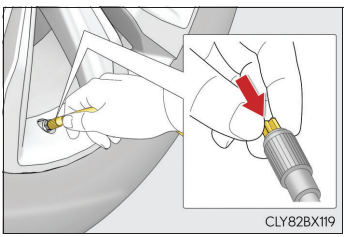
■ **Emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The sealant has a limited life span. The expiry date is marked on the bottle. The sealant should be replaced before the expiry date. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for replacement.
- The sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit can be used only once to temporarily repair a single tire. If the sealant has been used and needs to be purchased, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The compressor is reusable.
- The compressor can be used repeatedly.
- The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -40°C (-40°F) to 60°C (140°F).
- The kit is exclusively designed for size and type of tires originally installed on your vehicle. Do not use it for tires that a different size than the original ones, or for any other purposes.
- If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may stain.
- If the sealant adheres to a wheel or the surface of the vehicle body, the stain may not be removable if it is not cleaned at once. Immediately wipe away the sealant with a wet cloth.
- During operation of the kit, a loud operation noise is produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.
- Do not use to check or to adjust the tire pressure.

■ **If the tire is inflated to more than the recommended level**

1 Disconnect the hose from the valve.

2 Install the air release cap to the end of the hose and push the protrusion on the air release cap into the valve to let some air out.



3 Disconnect the hose from the valve, remove the air release cap from the hose and then reconnect the hose.

4 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check that the air pressure indicator shows the recommended level. (→P. 731)
If the air pressure is lower than the recommended level, turn the compressor switch on again and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended pressure is reached.

■ **After a tire repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter should be replaced.
- Even if the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level, the tire pressure warning light may come on/flash.

Note for checking the emergency tire puncture repair kit

Check the sealant expiry date occasionally.
The expiry date is shown on the bottle. Do not use sealant whose expiry date has already passed. Otherwise, repairs conducted using the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be performed properly.

WARNING

Caution while driving

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident.

- The emergency tire puncture repair kit is made exclusively for your vehicle. Do not use it on other vehicles.
- Do not use the emergency tire puncture repair kit for tires that are a different size than the specified ones or for any other purpose. Doing so may cause the tires to not be repaired properly.

Precautions for use of the sealant

- Ingesting the sealant is hazardous to your health. If you ingest sealant, consume as much water as possible, then immediately consult a doctor.
- If sealant gets in eyes or adheres to skin, immediately wash it off with water. If discomfort persists, consult a doctor.

WARNING

When fixing the flat tire

- Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.
- Do not touch the wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven, the wheels and the area around the brakes may be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts may result in burns.
- Connect the valve and hose securely with the tire installed on the vehicle.
- If the hose is not properly connected to the valve, air leakage may occur or sealant may be sprayed out.
- If the hose comes off the valve while inflating the tire, there is a risk that the hose will move abruptly due to air pressure.
- After inflation of the tire has completed, the sealant may splatter when the hose is disconnected or some air is let out of the tire.
- Follow the operation procedure to repair the tire. If the procedure is not followed, the sealant may spray out.
- Keep back from the tire while it is being repaired, as there is a chance of it bursting while the repair operation is being performed. If you notice any cracks or deformation of the tire, turn off the compressor switch and stop the repair operation immediately.
- The kit may overheat if operated for a long period of time. Do not operate the compressor continuously for more than 40 minutes.
- Parts of the kit become hot during operation. Be careful handling the kit during and after operation. Do not touch the metal part around the connecting area between the bottle and compressor. It will be extremely hot.
- Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS air bag from operating properly.

Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly

- Drive the vehicle carefully at a low speed. Be especially careful when turning and cornering.
- If the vehicle does not drive straight or you feel a pull through the steering wheel, stop the vehicle and check the following:
  - Tire condition. The tire may have separated from the wheel.
  - Tire inflation pressure. If tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) or below, this may indicate severe tire damage.

NOTICE

■ When performing an emergency repair

- Perform the emergency repair without removing the nail or screw that has punctured the tread of the tire. If the object that has punctured the tire is removed, repair by the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be possible.
- The kit is not waterproof. Make sure that the kit is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
- Do not put the kit directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the kit vacuums up dust, etc., a malfunction may occur.
- Make sure to stand the kit with the bottle vertical. The kit cannot work properly if it is laid on its side.

■ Handling the emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The compressor power source should be 12 V DC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the compressor to any other source.
- If gasoline splatters on the kit, the kit may deteriorate. Take care not to allow gasoline to contact it.
- Store the kit in its assigned place out of reach of children.
- Do not disassemble or modify the kit. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P. 609)

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 245), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P. 245)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 77)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 708)

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 702)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 708)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

  Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally.

1. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and check that the parking brake is set. (→P. 246, 257)
2. Shift the shift lever to P.
3. Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.
4. Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

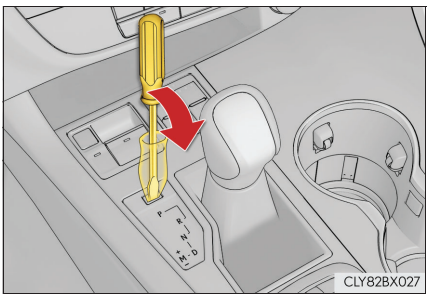
1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and check that the parking brake is set. (→P. 246, 257)

2 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.

3 Depress the brake pedal.

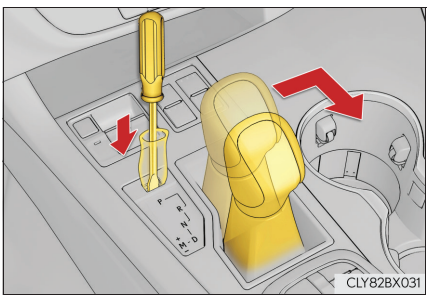
4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.


CLY82BX027

5 Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.


CLY82BX031

If the electronic key does not operate properly

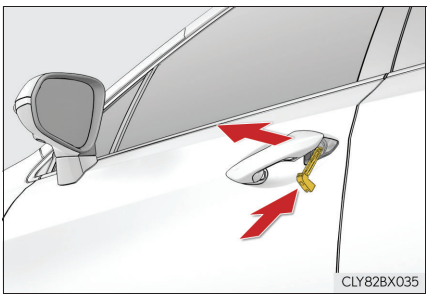
If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 170) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors

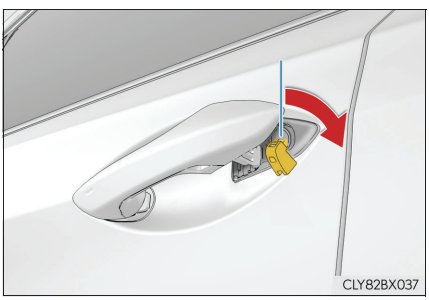
■ Unlocking the door

Use the mechanical key (→P. 135) in order to perform the following operations:

1 Insert the mechanical key while pulling on the driver's door handle.



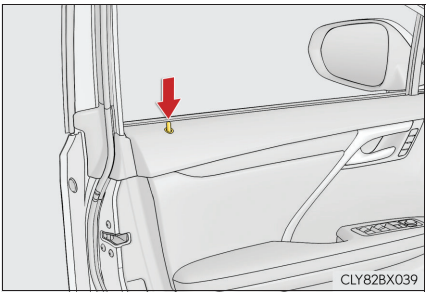
2 Unlocking the door.



3 Remove the key, return the handle, and then pull the handle again.

Locking the door

1 With the door open, push down the inside lock button.



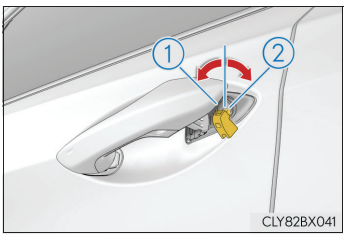
2 Close the door.

Key linked functions

① Closes the windows and the moon roof* or panoramic moon roof* (turn and hold)

② Opens the windows and the moon roof* or panoramic moon roof* (turn and hold)

These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.



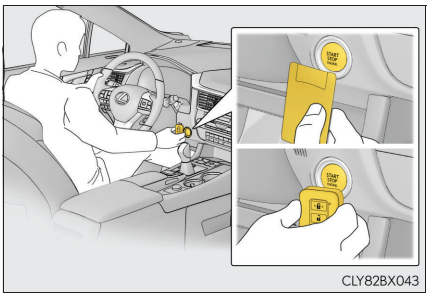
*: If equipped

Starting the engine

1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.
When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.


CLY82BX043

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that  is shown on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch.

In the event that the engine still cannot be operated, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake, and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P. 632)

■ **Alarm (if equipped)**

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.

If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P. 83)

■ **Changing engine switch modes**

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step 3 above.

The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 246)

■ **When the electronic key does not work properly**

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on.
  (Customizable features →P. 737)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P. 170)

⚠ WARNING

■ **When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof**

Operate the power window or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof.
Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof.

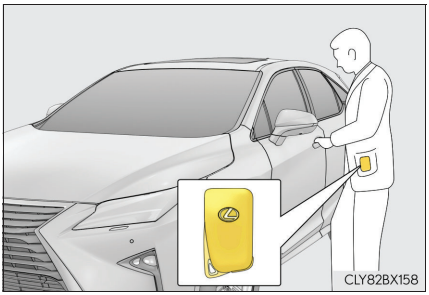
If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

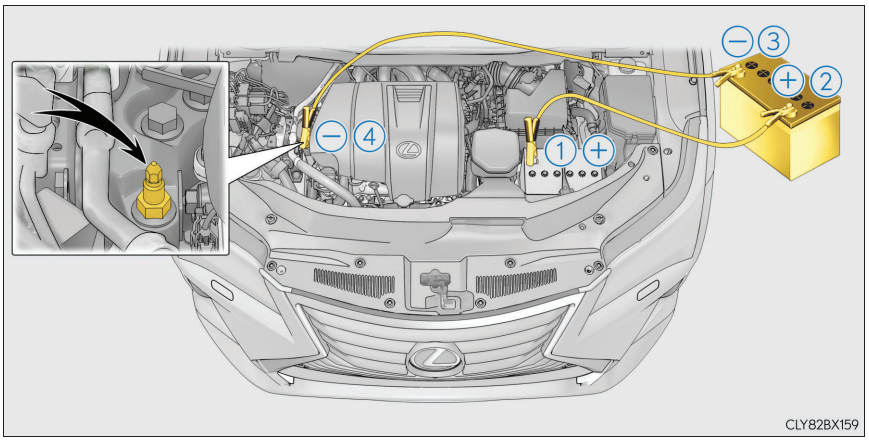
Vehicles with an alarm: When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and doors locked.
(→P. 84)



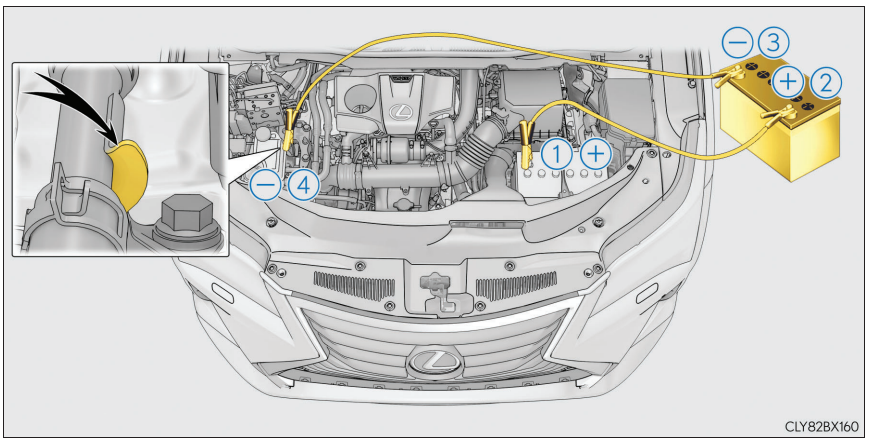
2 Open the hood (→P. 591).

3 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:

▶ RX350



▶ RX200t



① Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.

② Connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

③ Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

④ Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.

4 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

5 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the engine switch off.

6 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

7 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off. (RX200t: except when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system.)
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ **When the battery is removed or discharged**

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off.
  If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.
- Vehicles with power back door: The power back door must be initialized. (→P. 159)
- RX200t: After charging the battery or reconnecting the battery terminals, the Stop & Start system may not automatically stop the engine for approximately 5 to 60 minutes.

When exchanging the battery (RX200t)

Use a battery specified for use with the Stop & Start system and equivalent to a genuine battery. If an unsupported battery is used, Stop & Start system functions may be restricted to protect the battery.

Also, battery performance may decrease and the engine may not be able to restart. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

NOTICE

When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or engine drive belt.

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge (→P. 95) enters the red zone, or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.

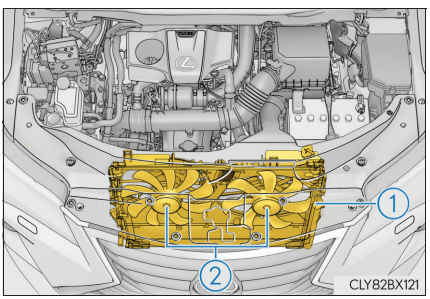
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

① Radiator

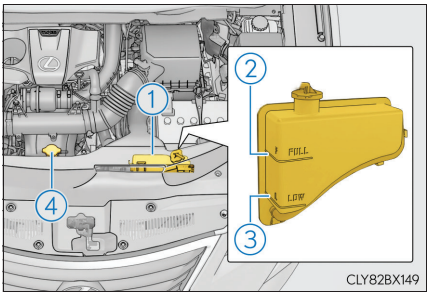
② Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

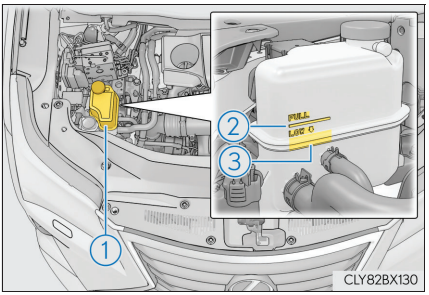


4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir.

▶ Engine



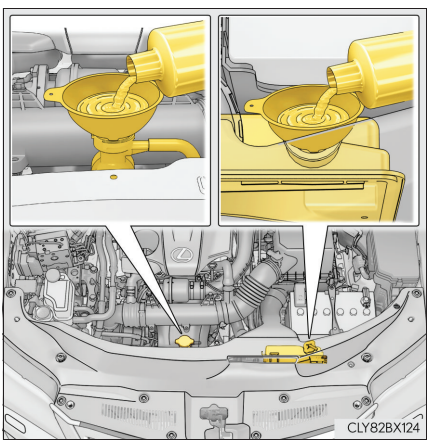
▶ Intercooler (RX200t only)



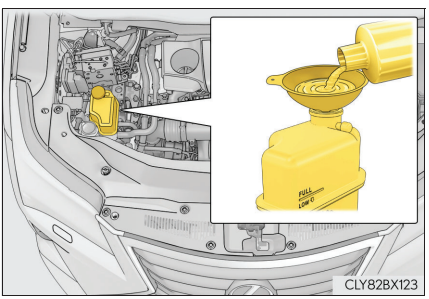
① Reservoir
② “FULL” line
③ “LOW” line
④ Radiator cap

5 Add coolant if necessary.

▶ Engine



▶ Intercooler (RX200t only)



Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.

6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fans operate when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fans are operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fans are not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the fans are operating:

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

8 Check if "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.

If the message does not disappear:

Stop the engine and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the message is not displayed:

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap and the coolant reservoir caps while the engine and radiator are hot.
  High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

NOTICE

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ **To prevent damage to the cooling system**

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust, etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

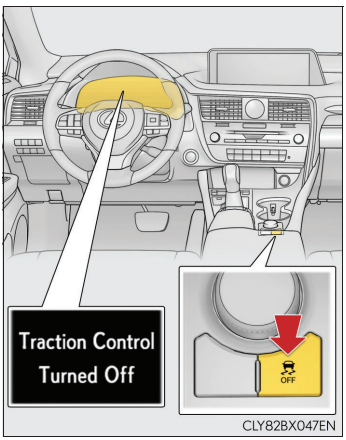
If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

1. Stop the engine. Shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the engine.
5. AWD models: Activate all-wheel drive lock mode. (→P. 419)
6. Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press  to turn off TRC.



WARNING

When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.
- When a warning message for the automatic transmission fluid temperature is displayed while attempting to free a stuck vehicle, immediately remove your foot from the accelerator pedal and wait until the warning message disappears. Otherwise, the transmission may become damaged. (→P. 669)

Vehicle specifications 9

9-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 720
Fuel information 733
9-2. Customization
Customizable features 734
9-3. Initialization
Items to initialize 746

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weights

Overall length		4890 mm (192.5 in.)
Overall width		1895 mm (74.6 in.)
Overall height*1		1690 mm (66.5 in.)*2 1710 mm (67.3 in.)*3
Wheelbase		2790 mm (109.8 in.)
Tread	Front	1640 mm (64.6 in.)
	Rear	1630 mm (64.2 in.)
Gross vehicle mass		2500 kg (5511 lb.)*4 2575 kg (5676 lb.)*5
Maximum permissible axle capacity	Front	1360 kg (2998 lb.)
	Rear	1590 kg (3505 lb.)
Drawbar load*6		80 kg (176 lb.)
Towing capacity*6	Without brake	750 kg (1653 lb.)
	With brake	1500 kg (3307 lb.)*7 2000 kg (4409 lb.)*8

*1: Unladen vehicle

*2: Vehicles without roof antenna

*3: Vehicles with roof antenna

*4: 2WD models

*5: AWD models

*6: Vehicles with towing package

*7: RX200t

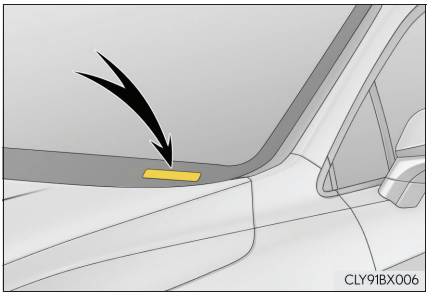
*8: RX350

Vehicle identification

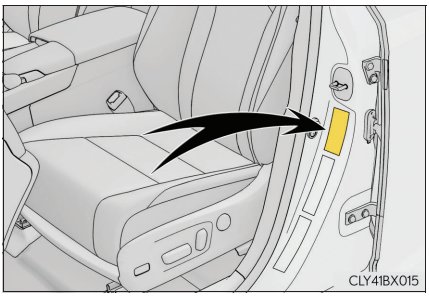
Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

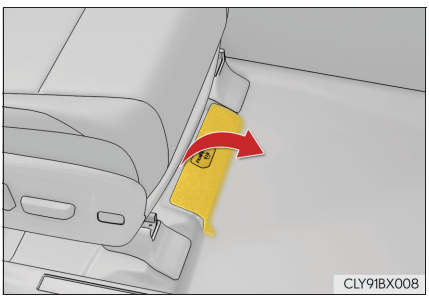
This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the manufacturer's label.



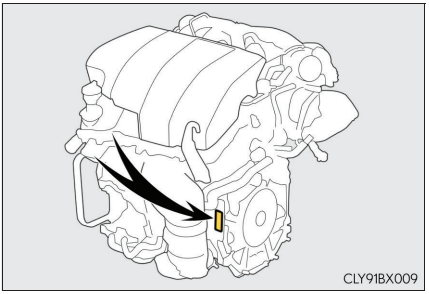
This number is also stamped under the right-hand front seat.



Engine number

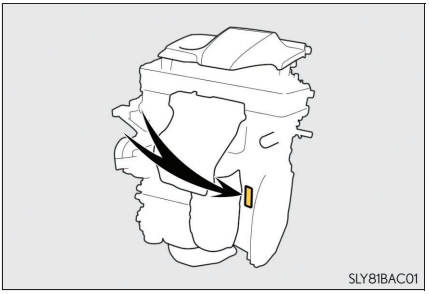
▶ RX350

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



▶ RX200t

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



Engine

▶ RX350

Model	2GR-FKS
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 83.0 mm (3.70 × 3.27 in.)
Displacement	3456 cm^3 (210.9 cu. in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

▶ RX200t

Model	8AR-FTS
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline (with turbocharger)
Bore and stroke	86.0 × 86.0 mm (3.39 × 3.39 in.)
Displacement	1998 cm^3 (121.9 cu. in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	▶ EU area Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only ▶ Except EU area Unleaded gasoline only
Research octane number	95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	72 L (19.0 gal., 15.8 Imp. gal.)

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*)	
With filter	▶ RX350 5.5 L (5.8 qt., 4.8 Imp. qt.) ▶ RX200t 4.9 L (5.2 qt., 4.3 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	▶ RX350 5.3 L (5.6 qt., 4.7 Imp. qt.) ▶ RX200t 4.7 L (5.0 qt., 4.1 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up the engine and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

RX350

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Lexus recommends the use of approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil". Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving" or SN "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

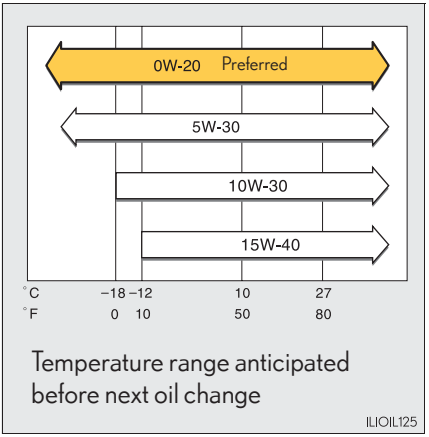
15W-40:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

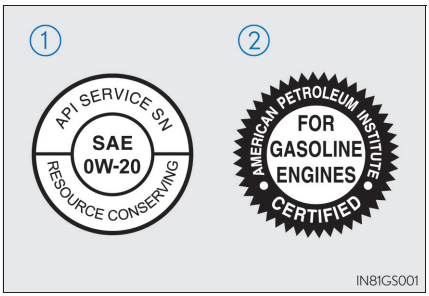
ILIOIL125

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



① API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

▶ RX200t

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

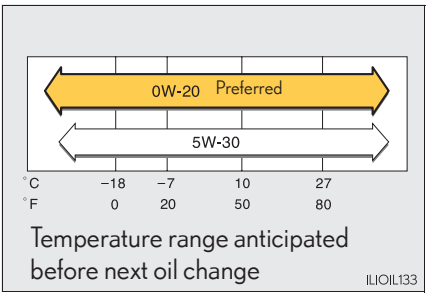
"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines" or API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving" or SN "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Viscosity grade:
SAE 0W-20 and 5W-30

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines" is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

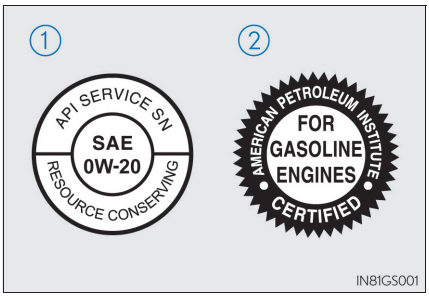


Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



① API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity*	RX350	9.9 L (10.5 qt., 8.7 Imp. qt.)
	RX200t	▶ Gasoline engine 8.7 L (9.2 qt., 7.7 Imp. qt.) ▶ Intercooler 3.2 L (3.4 qt., 2.8 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*: The coolant capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Ignition system (spark plug)

Make	▶ RX350 DENSO FK20HBR8 ▶ RX200t NGK DILFR7K9G
Gap	▶ RX350 0.8 mm (0.03 in.) ▶ RX200t 0.9 mm (0.04 in.)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**
Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system

Battery Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	 1.250 – 1.290 Fully charged 1.160 – 1.200 Half charged 1.060 – 1.100 Discharged
Charging rates Quick charge Slow charge	 15 A max. 5 A max.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	RX350	6.8 L (7.2 qt., 6.0 Imp. qt.)
	RX200t	6.7 L (7.1 qt., 5.9 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

Transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.8 L (0.8 qt., 0.7 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.
Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

Rear differential (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.5 L (0.5 qt., 0.4 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.
Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*	Left-hand drive vehicles	86 mm (3.4 in.) Min.
	Right-hand drive vehicles	105 mm (4.1 in.) Min.
Pedal free play		1.0 – 6.0 mm (0.04 – 0.24 in.)
Fluid type		SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4

*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 490 N (50.0 kgf, 110 lbf) while the engine is running.

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Tires and wheels

▶ Type A

Tire size	235/65R18 106V		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	260 (2.6, 38)	260 (2.6, 38)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	250 (2.5, 36)	250 (2.5, 36)
Wheel size	18 × 8 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Type B

Tire size	235/55R20 102V		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	300 (3.0, 44)	300 (3.0, 44)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	20 × 8 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Compact spare tire (if equipped)

Tire size	T165/90D18 107M
Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	18 × 4 T
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

■ **When installing a compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Front turn signal lights*1	21	A
	Rear turn signal lights*1	21	A
	Back-up lights	16	B
Interior	Door courtesy lights*2	5	B
	Vanity lights	8	B
	Luggage compartment lights	5	B

A: Wedge base bulbs (amber)

B: Wedge base bulbs (clear)

*1: Vehicles with single-beam headlights

*2: Vehicles without door trim ornament lights

Fuel information

EU area:
You must only use unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228.
Select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher for optimum engine performance.

Except EU area:
You must only use unleaded gasoline.
Select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher for optimum engine performance.

If your engine knocks

- Consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly.
- EU area: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as "E50" or "E85" and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle's fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Except EU area: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as "E50" or "E85" and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. Your vehicle can use gasoline mixed with 10% max ethanol. The use of fuel with more than 10% ethanol content (E10) will damage the vehicle's fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100. The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed using the multi-information display, on the audio system screen, or at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Customizing vehicle features

When customizing vehicle features, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place with the shift lever in P and the parking brake set.

■ Changing on the audio system screen

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch.

2 Select  on the "Menu" screen and select  .

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Lexus Display Audio controller.

2 Select "Setup" on the "MENU" screen and select "Vehicle".

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

■ Changing using the multi-information display

→P. 109

Customizable Features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

① Settings that can be changed on the audio system screen

② Settings that can be changed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – =Not available

■ Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P. 95, 99)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Units*1	km (L/100km)	km (km/L)	O	–
		miles (MPG)		
Color*2	Color 1	Color 2	O	–
Suggestion function	On	Off	–	O

*1: The default setting varies according to countries.

*2: Except F SPORT models

■ Door lock (→P. 140, 704)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Unlocking using a mechanical key	All doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two step	–	O
Speed linked door locking function	On	Off	O	O
Shift position linked door locking function	Off	On	O	O
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Off	On	O	O
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	On	Off	O	O

■ Power back door* (→P. 151)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Power back door switch operation	Press for 1 second	One short press	–	O
Automatic closing of the back door when lowered	On	Off	–	O
Automatic opening of the back door using the back door opener switch	On	Off	–	O
Power back door opening position	5	1 to 5	O	O
Buzzer volume	Level 3	Level 1	–	O
		Level 2		
Power back door/touchless sensor*	On	Power back door: On Touchless sensor: Off	–	O
		Off		
Power back door open/close buzzer	When the back door begins to operate: On While the back door is operating: Off	Off	–	O
		When the back door begins to operate: Off While the back door is operating: On		
		On		
Sound pattern of the buzzer when the power back door begins to operate	Sound pattern A	Sound pattern B	–	O
		Sound pattern C		
Touchless sensor* sensitivity	Level 1 (standard)	Level 1 (standard) to level 3 (highest)	–	O

*: If equipped

■ **Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P. 140, 168)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	O
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds	–	O
		120 seconds		
Open door warning buzzer	On	Off	–	O

■ **Smart entry & start system (→P. 140, 168)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	O	O
Smart door unlocking	All the doors	Driver's door	O	O

■ **Wireless remote control (→P. 134, 140, 151)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Wireless remote control	On	Off	–	O
Unlocking operation	All doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two step	O	O
Opening/closing of the power back door* using the switch of the wireless remote control	Open: Press for 1 second with the back door unlocked Close: Press for 1 second	Off	–	O
		Open: One short press with the back door unlocked Close: One short press		
		Open: Press twice with the back door unlocked Close: Press twice		

*: If equipped

■ Driving position memory* (→P. 195)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Standard	Off	○	○
		Partial		
Selecting doors linked to the memory recall function	Driver's door	All doors	–	○

*: If equipped

■ Steering wheel (→P. 202)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Auto tilt away function	On	Off	–	○

■ Outside rear view mirrors (→P. 206)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Automatic mirror folding and extending operation	Linked to the locking/unlocking of the doors	Off	–	○
		Linked to operation of the engine switch		

■ Power windows, and moon roof* or panoramic moon roof* (→P. 210, 214, 218)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	–	O
Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On	–	O
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer)	On	Off	–	O

*: If equipped

■ Moon roof* (→P. 214)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used (open only)	Slide only	Tilt only	–	O
Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used (open only)	Slide only	Tilt only	–	O

*: If equipped

■ Turn signal lever (→P. 256)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change	3	5	–	O
		7		
		Off		

■ Automatic light control system (→P. 263)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	O
Time elapsed before headlights turn off (follow me home system)	30 seconds	60 seconds	–	O
		90 seconds		
		120 seconds		

■ Lights (→P. 263)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Welcome lighting	On	Off	–	O

■ AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*1 (→P. 267)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Adaptive High-beam System	On	Off*2	–	O
Clearance between a vehicle ahead and the shaded high beams	Standard	Narrow	–	O
		Wide		
Vehicle speed at which the brightness and illuminated area adjustment of the high beams changes mode	Approximately 120 km/h (75 mph) or more	Approximately 100 km/h (63 mph) or more	–	O
		Approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) or more		
Intensity adjustment of the high beams when driving around a curve (illuminates the area in the direction vehicle is turning more brightly)	On	Off	–	O
Projection distance adjustment of the low beams according to the distance to a preceding vehicle	On	Off	–	O

*1: If equipped

*2: The headlights will operate under Automatic High Beam control. (→P. 272)

■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers* (→P. 277)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Wiper operation when the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position	Rain-sensing operation	Intermittent operation linked to vehicle speed (with interval adjuster)	–	O

*: If equipped

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor*1 (→P. 374)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Detection distance of the front center sensor	Far	Near	○	○
Detection distance of the rear center sensor	Far	Near	○	○
Buzzer volume	3	1 to 5	○	○
Display setting*2	All sensors displayed	Display off	○	○

*1: If equipped

*2: When Lexus parking assist-sensor is operating.

■ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)* (→P. 399)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Outside rear view mirror indicator brightness	Bright	Dim	○	○
Alert timing for presence of approaching vehicle (BSM function only)	Intermediate	Early	○	○
		Late		
		Only when in blind spot		
RCTA buzzer volume	Level 2	Level 1	○	–
		Level 3		

*: If equipped

■ Driving mode select switch (→P. 415)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Powertrain control in customized mode*	Normal	Power	○	–
		Eco		
Chassis control in customized mode*	Normal	Sport	○	–
Air conditioning operation in customized mode*	Normal	Eco	○	–

*: If equipped

■ Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 534)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	On	Off	○	○
A/C auto switch operation	On	Off	○	○
Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity*	Standard	-3 to 3	○	○

*: If equipped

■ Seat heaters*/seat ventilators* (→P. 548, 549)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Driver's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	○
Front passenger's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	○

*: If equipped

■ Illumination (→P. 550)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	O
		7.5 seconds		
		30 seconds		
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	–	O
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	O
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	O
Footwell lights and front center console light	On	Off	–	O
Instrument panel ornament light* and door trim ornament lights*	On	Off	–	O
Time elapsed before the outer foot lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	O
		7.5 seconds		
		30 seconds		
Operation of the outer foot lights when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	O
Operation of the outer foot lights when the doors are unlocked with the power door lock switch	On	Off	–	O
Operation of the outer foot lights when a door is opened	On	Off	–	O
Fading out of the outer foot lights when they turn off	Long	Short	–	O

*: If equipped

■ Vehicle customization

- When the speed linked door locking function and the shift position linked door locking function are both on, the door lock operates as follows.
  - When shifting the shift lever to any position other than P, all the doors will be locked.
  - If the vehicle is started with all the doors locked, the speed linked door locking function will not operate.
  - If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed linked door locking function will operate.
- When the smart entry & start system is off, smart door unlocking cannot be customized.
- When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operational signal (Emergency flashers) function setting.
- Some settings can be changed using a switch or the audio system screen. If a setting is changed using a switch, the changed setting will not be reflected on the audio system screen until the engine switch is turned off and then to IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ WARNING

■ Cautions during customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system	• When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed • When changing the tire size • When rotating the tires	P. 609
Oil maintenance	• After the maintenance is performed	P. 598
Power back door*	• After reconnecting or changing the battery	P. 159

*: If equipped

Index

What to do if...
(Troubleshooting).....748
Alphabetical index.....752

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Audio/visual system
- Lexus parking assist monitor
- Panoramic view monitor

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 136)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately. (→P. 138)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P. 632)
- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?
  When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P. 246)
- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P. 170)



The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?
  The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P. 143)

If you think something is wrong

The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P. 245)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P. 247)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P. 168)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P. 247)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?
  In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P. 706)
- Is the battery discharged? (→P. 708)

The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

  If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode (→P. 703)

The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P. 247)

The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?
  The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P. 210)

The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P. 247)



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

  Are the driver and the passengers wearing the seat belts? (→P. 663, 663)
- The parking brake indicator is on

  Is the parking brake released? (→P. 257)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P. 660, 667)



An alarm is activated and the horn sounds (vehicles with an alarm)

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door or anything move inside the vehicle during setting the alarm?

  The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P. 83)

Do one of the following to stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Start the engine.



A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?

  Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P. 667)



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P. 660, 667.

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Vehicles without a spare tire
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and repair the flat tire temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P. 687)
- Vehicles with a spare tire
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P. 673)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P. 716)

Alphabetical index

A

A/C 534
Air conditioning filter 627
Automatic air conditioning system 534
Blower customization 541
S-FLOW mode 536
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 420
Warning light 661
Adaptive High-beam System 267
Adaptive Variable Suspension System 421
Air conditioning filter 627
Air conditioning system 534
Air conditioning filter 627
Automatic air conditioning system 534
Blower customization 541
S-FLOW mode 536
Airbag manual on-off system 51
Airbags 40
Airbag manual on-off system 51
Airbag operating conditions 47
Airbag precautions for your child 43
Airbag warning light 661
Correct driving posture 34
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 47
Curtain shield airbag precautions 45
General airbag precautions 43
Locations of airbags 40
Modification and disposal of airbags 46
Seat cushion airbag 40
Side airbag operating conditions 47
Side airbag precautions 43
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 47
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 43
SRS airbags 40

Alarm 83
All-wheel drive lock mode 419
Anchor brackets 58
Antenna
Radio 463
Smart entry & start system 168
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 420
Warning light 661
Approach warning 343, 355
Armrest 574
Assist grips 575
Audio system (with Lexus Display Audio System) 436
Antenna 463
Audio input 443
AUX port 443
Bluetooth® audio 488
CD player 464
iPod 470
MP3/WMA disc 464
Optimal use 454
Portable music player 479
Radio 462
Setup menu 446
Steering wheel audio switches 442
USB memory 474
Audio system (with navigation system)*
Automatic air conditioning system 534
Air conditioning filter 627
Blower customization 541
S-FLOW mode 536
Automatic headlight leveling system 265
Automatic High Beam 272
Automatic light control system 263
Automatic transmission 250
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 703
M mode 252
Paddle shift switches 251, 252
AUX port 443
Auxiliary boxes 559, 563

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

B

Back door
- Back door ... 146
- Power back door ... 151
- Touchless power back door ... 153
- Wireless remote control ... 151

Back-up lights
- Replacing light bulbs ... 637
- Wattage ... 732

Battery
- Battery checking ... 601
- If the battery is discharged ... 708
- Preparing and checking before winter ... 427
- Warning light ... 660

Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) ... 399
- Blind Spot Monitor function ... 405
- Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function ... 409

Bluetooth® ... 511
- Audio system ... 488
- Hands-free system (for cellular phone) ... 490

Boost gauge ... 106

Bottle holders ... 558

Brake
- Brake Hold ... 261
- Fluid ... 730
- Parking brake ... 257
- Warning light ... 660

Brake assist ... 420

Brake Hold ... 261
- Warning light ... 661

Break-in tips ... 228

Brightness control
- Instrument panel light control ... 97

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) ... 399
- Blind Spot Monitor function ... 405
- Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function ... 409

C

Card key ... 134

Care
- Aluminum wheels ... 579
- Exterior ... 578
- Interior ... 583
- Seat belts ... 584
- Self-restoring coat ... 578

Cargo hooks ... 560

Cargo net hooks ... 560

CD player ... 464

Chains ... 428

Child restraint system 54
Child seats definition 54
Child seats installation 62, 69
Installing a CRS to the passenger seat 59
Installing CRS with ISOFIX rigid anchors 74
Installing CRS with seat belts 66
Installing CRS with top strap 75
Child safety 54
Airbag precautions 43
Back door precautions 148
Battery precautions 604, 711
Child restraint system 54
How your child should wear the seat belt 37
Installing child restraints 54
Moon roof precautions 217
Panoramic moon roof precautions 221
Power back door precautions 161
Power window lock switch 210
Power window precautions 213
Rear door child-protectors 143
Removed key battery precautions 633
Seat belt precautions 39
Seat heater precautions 547
Child-protectors 143
Cleaning 578, 583
Aluminum wheels 579
Exterior 578
Interior 583
Seat belts 584
Clock 95, 566
Coat hooks 575
Condenser 601
Console box 555
Consumption screen 104, 127
Coolant
Capacity 728
Checking 599
Preparing and checking before winter 427
Cooling system 599
Engine overheating 712
Cornering lights 264
Cruise control
Cruise control 360
Dynamic radar cruise control 348
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 336
Cup holders 556
Curtain shield airbags 41
Customizable features 734
Customized mode 415

D

Daytime running light system 265
Defogger
- Outside rear view mirrors 540
- Rear window 540
- Windshield 540

Differential 730
Dimension 720
Display
- Dynamic radar cruise control 348
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 336
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 326
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 317
- Multi-information display 99
- Warning messages 667

Do-it-yourself maintenance 589
Doors
- Automatic door locking and unlocking system 143
- Back door 146
- Door lock 142
- Outside rear view mirrors 206
- Power back door 151
- Rear door child-protectors 143
- Side doors 140
- Side windows 210

Double locking system 82
Drive information 104
Drive-start control 227, 254
Driver's seat belt reminder light 663
Driver's seat position memory 195
Driving
- Break-in tips 228
- Correct posture 34
- Driving mode select switch 415
- Procedures 226
- Winter drive tips 427

Driving position memory 195
- Memory recall function 198
- Power easy access system 195

Dynamic radar cruise control 348
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 336
Dynamic Torque Control AWD system 421

E

Eco drive mode 415
Eco Driving Indicator 119
Electric Power Steering (EPS) 421
- Warning light 661

Electronic key 134
- Battery-saving function 169
- If the electronic key does not operate properly 704
- Replacing the battery 632

Electronic sunshade 218
Jam protection function 219
Operation 218
Emergency brake signal 421
Emergency flashers 650
Emergency tire puncture repair kit 687
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds 660
If a warning light turns on 660
If a warning message is displayed 667
If the battery is discharged 708
If the electronic key does not operate properly 704
If the engine will not start 701
If you have a flat tire 673, 687
If you lose your keys 136, 138
If you think something is wrong 658
If your vehicle becomes stuck 716
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 651
If your vehicle needs to be towed 652
If your vehicle overheats 712
Engine
ACCESSORY mode 246
Compartment 593
Engine switch 245
Hood 591
How to start the engine 245
Identification number 722
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 651
Ignition switch (engine switch) 245
Overheating 712
Engine coolant
Capacity 728
Checking 599
Preparing and checking before winter 427
Engine coolant temperature gauge 95
Engine immobilizer system 77
Engine oil
Capacity 723
Checking 595
Preparing and checking before winter 427
Engine oil pressure gauge 106
Engine oil temperature gauge 106
Engine switch 245
EPS (Electronic Power Steering) 421
Warning light 661

F

Flat tire....673, 687
Floor mats....32
Fluid
- Automatic transmission....729
- Brake....730
- Washer....605

Fog lights
- Replacing light bulbs....637
- Switch....276

Follow me home system....264
Front fog lights
- Replacing light bulbs....637
- Switch....276

Front passenger footwell hooks....573
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light....663
Front position lights
- Light switch....263
- Replacing light bulbs....637

Front seat heaters....548
Front seats
- Adjustment....185
- Cleaning....583
- Correct driving posture....34
- Driving position memory....195
- Head restraints....200
- Power easy access system....195
- Seat heaters....548
- Seat position memory....195

Front turn signal lights
- Replacing light bulbs....637
- Turn signal lever....256
- Wattage....732

Fuel
- Capacity....723
- Fuel gauge....95
- Information....733
- Refueling....285
- Type....723

Fuel consumption information....127
Fuel filler door....285
- Refueling....285
- When the fuel filler door cannot be opened....287

Fuses....634

G

Gauges 95
Glove box 555
Grocery bag hooks 561

H

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 490
Head restraints 200
Head-up display 121
Headlight cleaner 277
Headlights 263
- Adaptive High-beam System 267
- Automatic headlight leveling 265
- Automatic High Beam 272
- Follow me home system 264
- Light switch 263
- Replacing light bulbs 637
- Wattage 732
- Windshield wiper linked headlight illumination 266

Heated steering wheel 548
Heated Windshield Defroster 541
Heaters
- Automatic air conditioning system 534
- Heated steering wheel 548
- Outside rear view mirrors 540
- Seat heaters 548, 549

High mounted stoplight
- Replacing 637

Hill-start assist control 420
Hood 591
Hooks
- Cargo hooks 560
- Cargo net hooks 560
- Front passenger footwell hooks 573
- Grocery bag hooks 561
- Retaining hooks (floor mat) 32

Horn 202
HUD (Head-up display) 121

I

Identification
- Engine....722
- Vehicle....721

Ignition switch (engine switch)....245
Illuminated entry system....553
Immobilizer system....77
Indicators....90
Initialization
- Engine oil maintenance data....598
- Items to initialize....746
- Power back door....159
- Tire pressure warning system....610

Inside rear view mirror....204
Instrument panel light control....97
Interior lights....550
- Switch....551
- Wattage....732

Intrusion sensor....85
ISOFIX rigid anchors....69

J

Jack
- Positioning a floor jack....592
- Vehicle-equipped jack....674, 688

Jack handle....674, 688
Jam protection function
- Electronic sunshade....219
- Moon roof....215
- Panoramic moon roof....219
- Power back door opener and closer....159
- Power windows....211

K

Keyless entry
- Smart entry & start system....168
- Wireless remote control....134, 151

Keys....134
- Battery-saving function....170
- Electronic key....134
- Engine switch....245
- If the electronic key does not operate properly....704
- If you lose your keys....136, 138
- Key number plate....134
- Keyless entry....134
- Mechanical key....135
- Replacing the battery....632
- Warning buzzer....141
- Wireless remote control....134

Knee airbags....40

L

Lane Departure Alert with steering control (LDA) 322
Lane-Keeping Assist (LKA) 311
Language (multi-information display) 115
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 322
Lever
- Auxiliary catch lever 591
- Hood lock release lever 591
- Shift lever 250
- Turn signal lever 256
- Wiper lever 277, 283

Lexus Climate Concierge 533
Lexus Display Audio controller 438
Lexus Display Audio system 436
Lexus parking assist monitor 383
- Display 384
- Precautions 390

Lexus parking assist-sensor 374
Lexus Safety System+ 289
- Adaptive High-beam System 267
- Automatic High Beam 272
- Dynamic radar cruise control 348
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 336
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 322
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 311
- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 298
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) 331

License plate lights
- Light switch 263
- Replacing light bulbs 637

Light
- Adaptive High-beam System 267
- Automatic High Beam 272
- Cornering lights 264
- Fog light switch 276
- Follow me home system 264
- Headlight switch 263
- Illuminated entry system 553
- Interior light list 550
- Interior lights 551
- Luggage compartment light 157
- Personal lights 552
- Replacing light bulbs 637
- Turn signal lever 256
- Vanity lights 565
- Wattage 732
- Welcome lighting 265

Light bulbs
- Replacing 637
- Wattage 732

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 311
Lock steering column 247
Luggage cover 561

M

Maintenance
- Do-it-yourself maintenance 589
- Maintenance data 720
- Maintenance requirements 586

Malfunction indicator lamp 660
Memory recall function 198
Meter
- Head-up display 121
- Indicators 90
- Instrument panel light control 97
- Meters 95
- Multi-information display 99
- Settings 109
- Warning lights 660
- Warning messages 667

Microphone 491
Mirrors
- Inside rear view mirror 204
- Outside rear view mirror defoggers 540
- Outside rear view mirrors 206
- Vanity mirrors 565

Moon roof
- Door lock linked moon roof operation 215
- Jam protection function 215
- Operation 214

MP3 disc 464

Multi-information display
- AWD Control display 105
- Boost gauge 106
- Clock 95
- Drive information 104
- Dynamic radar cruise control 348
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 336
- Engine oil pressure gauge 106
- Engine oil temperature gauge 106
- G-force display 107
- Language 115
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 326
- Lexus parking assist-sensor 374
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 317
- Outside temperature 95
- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 299
- Settings 109
- Speed warning 117
- Stop & Start system information 108
- Suggestion function 118
- Sway warning display 105
- Warning messages 667

N

Navigation system*

O

Odometer 117
Oil
Engine oil 723
Rear differential oil 730
Transfer oil 730
Opener
Back door 146
Hood 591
Power back door 152
Outside rear view mirrors 206
Adjusting and folding 206
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 399
Linked mirror function when reversing 208
Mirror position memory 195
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 540
Outside temperature display 95
Overheating 712

P

Paddle shift switches 251, 252
Panoramic moon roof 218
Jam protection function 219
Operation 218
Parking assist sensors 374
Parking brake 257
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer/message 259
Warning light 661
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 298
Warning light 662
Personal lights 552
Power back door 151
Touchless power back door 153
Wireless remote control 151
Power back door opener and closer 151
Power easy access system 195
Power outlets 572
Power steering (Electric Power Steering system) 421
Warning light 661
Power windows
Door lock linked window operation 212
Jam protection function 211
Operation 210
Window lock switch 210
Pre-Crash Safety system (PCS) 298
Warning light 662

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

R

Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control) 348
Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range) 336
Radiator 601
Radio 462
Rear Crossing Traffic Alert 399
Rear door sunshades 574
Rear fog light
- Replacing light bulbs 637
- Switch 276

Rear passenger's seat belt reminder light 663
Rear seat
- Folding down the rear seatbacks 186

Rear seat heaters 549
Rear side marker lights
- Light switch 263
- Replacing light bulbs 637

Rear turn signal lights
- Replacing light bulbs 637
- Turn signal lever 256
- Wattage 732

Rear view mirror
- Inside rear view mirror 204
- Outside rear view mirrors 206

Rear window defogger 540
Rear window wiper 283
Refueling 285
- Capacity 723
- Fuel types 723
- Opening the fuel tank cap 285
- When the fuel filler door cannot be opened 287

Remote Touch* 528
Replacing
- Electronic key battery 632
- Fuses 634
- Light bulbs 637
- Tires 673
- Windshield wiper inserts 630

Rev indicator 97
Rev peak 97
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 331

S

S-FLOW mode 536
Seat belts 36
Adjusting the seat belt 36
Child restraint system installation 54
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt 584
Emergency Locking Retractor 37
How to wear your seat belt 36
How your child should wear the seat belt 37
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 38
Reminder light and buzzer 663
Seat belt pretensioners 37
SRS warning light 661
Seat position memory 195
Seat ventilators 549
Seats
Adjustment 185, 186
Adjustment precautions 185
Child seats/child restraint system installation 54
Cleaning 583
Driving position memory 195
Folding down the rear seatbacks 186
Front seat heaters 548
Head restraint 200
Power easy access system 195
Properly sitting in the seat 34
Rear seat heaters 549
Seat position memory 195
Seat ventilators 549

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Sensor
Automatic headlight system.....265
Camera sensor.....291
Inside rear view mirror.....205
Lexus parking assist-sensor.....374
Radar sensor.....291
Rain-sensing windshield wipers.....279
Tilt sensor.....85
Touchless sensor.....153
Service reminder indicators.....90
Shift lever.....250
Side airbags.....41
Side doors.....140
Side marker lights
Light switch.....263
Replacing light bulbs.....637
Side mirrors.....206
Adjusting and folding.....206
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor).....399
Heaters.....540
Side turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs.....637
Turn signal lever.....256
Smart entry & start system.....168
Antenna location.....168
Entry functions.....140, 151
Starting the engine.....245
Snow tires.....429
Spare tire
Inflation pressure.....731
Storage location.....674
Spark plug.....728
Specifications.....720
Speech command system.....524
Speed warning.....117
Speedometer.....95
Sport mode.....415
Steering wheel
Adjustment.....202
Audio switches.....442
Heated steering wheel.....548
Meter control switches.....101
Power easy access system.....195
Telephone switches.....501
Stop & Start system.....364
Replacing battery.....711
Warning light.....662

Stop lights
Emergency brake signal....421
Replacing light bulbs....637
Storage feature....554
Storage precautions....554
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck....716
Sun visors....565
Sunshade
Panoramic moon roof....218
Rear door....574
Roof....215
Switches
Adaptive High-beam System switch....268
All-wheel drive lock switch....419
Audio remote control switches....442
Automatic High Beam switch....272
Brake hold switch....261
Cruise control switch....336, 348, 360
Door lock switch....142
Driving mode select switch....415
Driving position memory switches....195
Electronic sunshade switch....218
Emergency flashers switch....650
Engine switch....245
Fog light switch....276
Heated steering wheel switch....548
HUD (Head-up display) switches....121
Ignition switch....245
Intrusion sensor cancel switch....85
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) switch....325
Light switch....263
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch....316
Meter control switches....101
Moon roof switches....214
"ODO/TRIP" switch....102
Outside rear view mirror switches....206
Paddle shift switches....251, 252
Panoramic moon roof switches....218
Parking brake switch....257
Power back door opener and closer switch....152, 154

Power window switch 210
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch 540
Rear window wiper and washer switch 283
Seat heater switches 548
Seat ventilator switches 549
Stop & Start cancel switch 367
Talk switch 501, 524
Telephone switches 501
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button 336, 348
VSC OFF switch 422
Window lock switch 210
Windshield wipers and washer switch 277

T

Tachometer 95
Tail lights
Light switch 263
Replacing light bulbs 637
Talk switch 501, 524
Telephone switch 501
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 83
Double locking system 82
Engine immobilizer system 77
Intrusion sensor 85
Tilt sensor 85
Tilt sensor 85
Tire inflation pressure
Maintenance data 731
Warning light 663
Tire pressure warning system
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 609
Registering ID codes 611
Warning light 663

Tires 606
Chains 428
Checking 606
Emergency tire puncture repair kit 687
If you have a flat tire 673, 687
Inflation pressure 623, 731
Replacing 673
Rotating tires 607
Size 731
Snow tires 429
Spare tire 673, 687, 731
Tire pressure warning system 608
Warning light 663
Tools 674, 688
Top strap 75
Touchless power back door 153
Towing
Emergency towing 652
Towing eyelet 655
Trailer Sway Control 421
Trailer towing 237, 238
Traction Control (TRC) 420
Trailer Sway Control 421
Trailer towing 237, 238
Transfer 730
Transmission
Automatic transmission 250
Driving mode select switch 415
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 703
M mode 252
Paddle shift switches 251, 252
TRC (Traction Control) 420
Trip meters 117
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 637
Turn signal lever 256
Wattage 732

U

USB memory 474
USB port 443

V

Vanity lights 565
Wattage 732
Vanity mirrors 565
VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) 421
Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management (VDIM) 421
Vehicle identification number 721
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 420
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 420

W

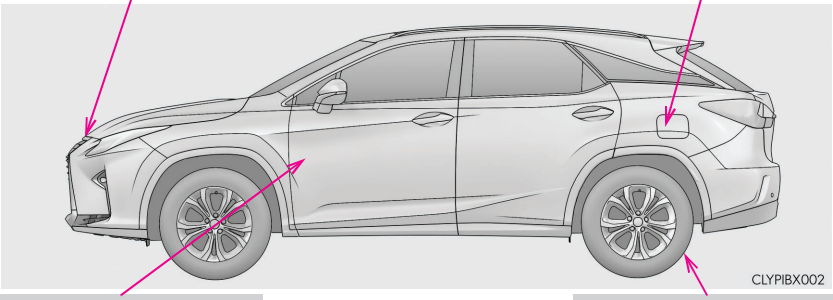
Warning buzzers
Approach warning 343, 355
Downshifting 254
Lane departure alert function 312, 322
Lexus parking assist-sensor 378
Light reminder 265
Open door 144
Pre-crash warning 299
Seat belt reminder 663
Vehicle sway warning 313, 323
Warning lights
ABS 661
Brake hold operated indicator 661
Brake system 660
Charging system 660
Electric power steering 661
LDA indicator 661
LKA indicator 661
Low fuel level 662
Malfunction indicator lamp 660
Master warning light 663
Parking brake indicator 661
PCS warning light 662
Seat belt reminder light 663
Slip indicator 662
SRS 661
Stop & Start cancel indicator 662
Tire pressure 663
Warning messages 667
Washer
Checking 605
Preparing and checking before winter 427
Switch 277, 283
Washing and waxing 578

Wheels 625
Replacing wheels 625
Size 731
Window glasses
Front side windows 579
Power windows 210
Window lock switch 210
Windows
Power windows 210
Rear window defogger 540
Washer 277, 283
Windshield wiper de-icer 541
Windshield wiper inserts 630
Windshield wipers 277
Intermittent windshield wipers 277
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 278
Replacing a windshield wiper insert 630
Winter driving tips 427
Wireless charger 566
Wireless communication 480, 488
Wireless remote control 134
Battery-saving function 169
Locking/Unlocking 134
Replacing the battery 632
WMA disc 464

GAS STATION INFORMATION

Auxiliary catch lever
P. 591

Fuel filler door
P. 287



Hood lock release lever
P. 591

Tire inflation pressure
P. 731

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	72 L (19.0 gal., 15.8 Imp. gal.)
Fuel type	EU area: Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only Except EU area: Unleaded gasoline only P. 723
Cold tire inflation pressure	P. 731
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill – reference)	▶ RX350 With filter 5.5 L (5.8 qt., 4.8 Imp. qt.) Without filter 5.3 L (5.6 qt., 4.7 Imp. qt.) ▶ RX200t With filter 4.9 L (5.2 qt., 4.3 Imp. qt.) Without filter 4.7 L (5.0 qt., 4.1 Imp. qt.)
Engine oil type	P. 724